| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | | | | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | | | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | | | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | | | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | | | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet | 15 | of | 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

| OTHER DOCUMENTS | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
| | 243. | Lowrance HS-3DWN Transducer Assembly and Housing (Eagle IIID); August 1994 | |
| | 244. | Lowrance LCX-18C & LCX-19C Fish-finding Sonar & Mapping GPS; Operation Instructions; ©2002; 200 pages | |
| | 245. | Lowrance Transducers Product Information; 1 page | |
| | 246. | Navico Design Report of Raytheon Electronics Side Looker Transducer; 3/12/2010; 18 pages | |
| | 247. | NOAA: Nautical Charting general information from public records; [Online]; Retrieved on 9/10/2010 from the Internet < URL: http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/csdl/learn_hydroequip.html; 2 pages; http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/csdl/learn_hydroequip.html; 1 page; http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/csdl/PDBS.html; 2 pages; http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/hsd/pub.html; 1 page; http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/hsd/fpm/fpm.htm; 1 page; http://www.ozcoasts.gov.au/geom_geol/toolkit/Tech_CA_sss.jsp; 12 pages | |
| | 248. | ONR Grant N66604-05-1-2983; Final Report; "Cooperative Autonomous Mobile Robots"; Retrieved from the Internet <URL: http://dodreports.com/pdf/ada463215.pdf; Post 2006 | |
| | 249. | Odom Echoscan™: For Sea Floor or Riverbed Surveys; Odom Hydrographic Systems; 04/26/2002 | |
| | 250. | Odom Hydrographic Systems ECHOSCAN Manual; Revision 1.11; 04/26/2002 | |
| | 251. | "Product Survey Side-Scan Sonar"; Hydro International Magazine; Volume 36; April 2004; pp. 36-39 | |
| | 252. | R/V QUICKSILVER; Hydrographic Survey Launch Bareboat or Crewed; F/V Norwind, Inc. | |
| | 253. | R/V TANGAROA; Fact Sheet; Explore lost worlds of the deep; Norfanz Voyage; May 10 to June 8, 2003 | |
| | 254. | SeaBat 8101 Product Specification; 240kHz Multibeam Echo Sounder; ©1999 RESON Inc.; Version 4.0 | |

| Examiner Signature | /James Hulka/ | Date Considered | 12/12/2011 |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**



ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /J.H./

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | | | **Complete if Known** | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | | | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | | | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | | | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | | | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet | 16 | of | 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 255. | SIMRAD EA 500; Hydrographic Echo Sounder; Product Specifications; Revision: September 1993 | |
| | 256. | SonarBeam Underwater Surveying System Using T-150P tow-fish hull mounted; [Online]; [Retrieved on 2/12/2010 from the Internet <URL: http://dsmeu.en.ec21.com/Remotely_Operated_Sonar_Boat_System--618904_2479905.html; 4 pages; http://www.remtechnology.en.ec21.com/Side_Scan_Sonar_Remotely_Operated--2902034.html; 4 pages; [Retrieved on 2/16/2010 from the Internet <URL: http://dsmeu.en.ec21.com/Remotely_Operated_Sonar_Boat_System--618904_2479905.html; 4 pages; http://www.remtechnology.en.ec21.com/Side_Scan_Sonar_Remotely_Operated--2902230.html; 7 pages | |
| | 257. | Starfish 450H; Sidescan System; Tritech International Limited; UK | |
| | 258. | T297-00-01-01 Transducer housing outline drawing; Neptune Sonar Ltd.; ©2002 | |
| | 259. | TECHSONIC INDUSTRIES, INC.; "Mask, Acoustic"; Schematic, May 24, 1996 | |
| | 260. | TECHSONIC INDUSTRIES, INC.; "Element, 455 kHz"; Schematic, June 13, 1996 | |
| | 261. | "Transducers Quad Beam," Prior to August 2, 2003 | |
| | 262. | U-Tech Company Newsletter | |
| | 263. | USACE, "Chapter 11, Acoustic Multibeam Survey Systems for Deep-Draft Navigation Projects," April 1, 2004 | |
| | 264. | Ultra III 3D Installation and Operation Instructions; EAGLE™; ©1994 | |
| | 265. | Westinghouse Publication; "Side-Scan Sonar Swiftly Surveys Subsurface Shellfish"; May 1970; 4 pages | |
| | 266. | Sonar Theory and Applications; Excerpt from Imagenex Model 855 Color Imaging Sonar User's Manual; Imagenex Technology Corp.; Canada; 8 pages | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

| Examiner Signature | /James Hulka/ | Date Considered | 12/12/2011 |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011** RAY-1002



ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /J.H./

| *Search Notes* | Application/Control No. 12460139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | **Examiner** JAMES HULKA | **Art Unit** 3662 |

## SEARCHED

| Class | Subclass | Date | Examiner |
|---|---|---|---|
| 367 | 88 | 9/13/2011 | JH |

## SEARCH NOTES

| Search Notes | Date | Examiner |
|---|---|---|
| EAST (Keyword and Class Limited) | 9/13/2011 | JH |
| PALM (Inventor Name) | 9/13/2011 | JH |
| Google (Keyword) | 9/13/2011 | JH |

## INTERFERENCE SEARCH

| Class | Subclass | Date | Examiner |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |

| *Index of Claims* | Application/Control No.<br>12460139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination<br>MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | Examiner<br>JAMES HULKA | Art Unit<br>3662 |

| ✓ | Rejected | - | Cancelled | N | Non-Elected | A | Appeal |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | Allowed | ÷ | Restricted | I | Interference | O | Objected |

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | 09/13/2011 | 12/08/2011 | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 2 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 4 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 6 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 7 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 8 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 9 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 10 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 11 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 12 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 13 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 14 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 15 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 16 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 17 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 18 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 19 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 20 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 21 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 22 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 23 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 24 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 25 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 26 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 27 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 28 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 29 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 30 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 31 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 32 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 33 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 34 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 35 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |
| | 36 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | | |

| *Index of Claims* | Application/Control No. 12460139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | Examiner JAMES HULKA | Art Unit 3662 |

| ✓ | Rejected | - | Cancelled | N | Non-Elected | A | Appeal |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | Allowed | ÷ | Restricted | I | Interference | O | Objected |

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | 09/13/2011 | 12/08/2011 | | | | | | |
| | 37 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 38 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 39 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 40 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 41 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 42 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 43 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 44 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 45 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 46 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 47 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 48 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 49 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 50 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 51 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 52 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 53 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 54 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 55 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 56 | ÷ | N | - | | | | | | |
| | 57 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 58 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 59 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 60 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 61 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 62 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 63 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 64 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 65 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 66 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 67 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 68 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 69 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 70 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 71 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 72 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |

| *Index of Claims* | Application/Control No. | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination |
|---|---|---|
| | 12460139 | MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
| | **Examiner** | **Art Unit** |
| | JAMES HULKA | 3662 |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ✓ | **Rejected** | - | **Cancelled** | N | **Non-Elected** | A | **Appeal** |
| = | **Allowed** | ÷ | **Restricted** | I | **Interference** | O | **Objected** |

☐ **Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant** ☐ **CPA** ☐ **T.D.** ☐ **R.1.47**

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | 09/13/2011 | 12/08/2011 | | | | | | |
| | 73 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 74 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 75 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 76 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 77 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 78 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 79 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 80 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 81 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 82 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 83 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 84 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 85 | ÷ | ✓ | - | | | | | | |
| | 86 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 87 | ÷ | ✓ | - | | | | | | |
| | 88 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 89 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 90 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 91 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 92 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 93 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 94 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 95 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 96 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 97 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 98 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 99 | ÷ | ✓ | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 100 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 101 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 102 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 103 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 104 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 105 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 106 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 107 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 108 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |

| *Index of Claims* | Application/Control No. 12460139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | Examiner JAMES HULKA | Art Unit 3662 |

| ✓ | Rejected | - | Cancelled | N | Non-Elected | A | Appeal |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | Allowed | ÷ | Restricted | I | Interference | O | Objected |

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | 09/13/2011 | 12/08/2011 | | | | | | |
| | 109 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 110 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 111 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 112 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 113 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 114 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 115 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 116 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 117 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 118 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 119 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 120 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 121 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 122 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 123 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 124 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 125 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 126 | | | - | | | | | | |
| | 127 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 128 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 129 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 130 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 131 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 132 | | | - | | | | | | |
| | 133 | | | - | | | | | | |
| | 134 | | | ✓ | | | | | | |
| | 135 | | | - | | | | | | |
| | 136 | | | - | | | | | | |
| | 137 | | | - | | | | | | |

**EAST Search History**

**EAST Search History (Prior Art)**

| Ref # | Hits | Search Query | DBs | Default Operator | Plurals | Time Stamp |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| S1 | 18 | US-20040184351-$.DID. OR US-20050043619-$.DID. OR US-20050099887-$.DID. OR US-20060002232-$.DID. OR US-20070025183-$.DID. OR US-20070091723-$.DID. OR US-1316138-$.DID. OR JP-57046173-$.DID. OR JP-61116678-$.DID. OR JP-4357487-$.DID. OR WO-9815846-$.DID. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 10:52 |
| S2 | 123 | Stiner.in. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 10:55 |
| S3 | 0 | pd="19920922" | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 10:55 |
| S4 | 7212 | "19920922".pd. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 10:57 |
| S5 | 9713024 | (US-5,850,372 US-5,930,199 US-5,991,239 US-6,002,644 US-6,084,827 US-6,215,730 US-6,335,905 US-6,421,299 US-6,449,215 US-6,537,224 US-6,606,958 US-6,678,403 US-6,738,311 US-6,842,401 US-6,941,226 US-6,980,688 US-7,236,427 US-7,355,924 US-7,405,999 US-7,542,376 US-7,652,952 US-7,710,825 US-7,729,203 US-7,755,974 US-2003/0202426 A S1).pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:00 |
| S6 | 56 | ("5850372" "5930199" "5991239" "6002644" "6084827" "6215730" "6335905" "6421299" "6449215" "6537224" "6606958" "6678403" "6738311" "6842401" "6941226" "6980688" "7236427" "7355924" "7405999" "7542376" "7652952" "7710825" "7729203" "7755974" "20030202426").pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:03 |
| S7 | 25 | ("5850372" "5930199" "5991239" | US-PGPUB; | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | "6002644" "6084827" "6215730" "6335905" "6421299" "6449215" "6537224" "6606958" "6678403" "6738311" "6842401" "6941226" "6980688" "7236427" "7355924" "7405999" "7542376" "7652952" "7710825" "7729203" "7755974" "20030202426").pn. | USPAT | | | 11:04 |
| S8 | 50 | ("5200931" "5214744" "5241314" "5245587" "5243567" "5257241" "5260912" "5303208" "5376933" "5390152" "5412618" "5438552" "5442358" "5455806" "5493619" "5515337" "5537366" "5546356" "5561641" "5574700" "5596549" "5602801" "5612928" "5694372" "5805528").pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:07 |
| S9 | 58 | ("4635240" "4641290" "4642801" "4751645" "4774837" "4796238" "4802148" "4815045" "4855961" "4879697" "4907208" "4912685" "4924448" "4939700" "4958330" "4970700" "4975887" "4982924" "5033029" "5109364" "5113377" "5142502" "6155706" "5182732" "5184330").pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:11 |
| S10 | 58 | ("4635240" "4641290" "4642801" "4751645" "4774837" "4796238" "4802148" "4815045" "4855961" "4879697" "4907208" "4912685" "4924448" "4939700" "4958330" "4970700" "4975887" "4982924" "5033029" "5109364" "5113377" "5142502" "5155706" "5182732" "5184330").pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:13 |
| S11 | 80 | ("3953828" "3964424" "3967234" "4030096" "4047148" "4052693" "4063212" "4068209" "4075599" "4184210" "4197591" "4198702" "4199746" "4200922" "4204281" "4207620" "4216537" "4232380" "4247923" "4262344" "4287578" "4422166" "4456210" "4493064" "4538249").pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:15 |
| S12 | 81 | ("1823329" "2416338" "3005973" "3090030" "3142032" "3144631" "3296579" "3359537" "3381264" "3451038" "3458854" "3484737" "3553638" "3585578" "3585579" "3618006" "3624596" "3716824" "3742436" "3757287" "3895339" "3895340" "3898608" "3949348" "3950723").pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:18 |
| S13 | 136 | (US-20070025183-$ or US-20070091723-$ or US-20060002232-$ or US-20050099887-$ or US-20050043619-$ or US-20040184351-$ or US-20030202426-$).did. or (US-D329616-$ or US-D329615-$ or US-7755974-$ or US-7729203-$ or US-7710825-$ or US-7652952-$ or US-7542376-$ or US-7405999-$ or US- | US-PGPUB; USPAT; JPO; DERWENT | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:19 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 7355924-$ or US-7236427-$ or US-6980688-$ or US-6941226-$ or US-6842401-$ or US-6738311-$ or US-6678403-$ or US-6606958-$ or US-6537224-$ or US-6449215-$ or US-6421299-$ or US-6335905-$ or US-6215730-$ or US-6002644-$ or US-6084827-$ or US-5991239-$ or US-5930199-$ or US-5850372-$).did. or (US-5200931-$ or US-5214744-$ or US-5241314-$ or US-5243567-$ or US-5245587-$ or US-5257241-$ or US-5260912-$ or US-5303208-$ or US-5376933-$ or US-5390152-$ or US-5412618-$ or US-5438552-$ or US-5442358-$ or US-5455806-$ or US-5493619-$ or US-5515337-$ or US-5537366-$ or US-5546356-$ or US-5561641-$ or US-5574700-$ or US-5596549-$ or US-5602801-$ or US-5612928-$ or US-5694372-$ or US-5805528-$ or US-5184330-$ or US-5182732-$).did. or (US-5142502-$ or US-5113377-$ or US-5109364-$ or US-5033029-$ or US-4982924-$ or US-4975887-$ or US-4970700-$ or US-4958330-$ or US-4939700-$ or US-4924448-$ or US-4912685-$ or US-4907208-$ or US-4879697-$ or US-4855961-$ or US-4815045-$ or US-4802148-$ or US-4796238-$ or US-4774837-$ or US-4751645-$ or US-4642801-$ or US-4641290-$ or US-4635240-$ or US-5155706-$ or US-4538249-$ or US-4493064-$ or US-4456210-$ or US-4422166-$).did. or (US-4287578-$ or US-4262344-$ or US-4247923-$ or US-4232380-$ or US-4216537-$ or US-4207620-$ or US-4204281-$ or US-4200922-$ or US-4199746-$ or US-4198702-$ or US-4197591-$ or US-4184210-$ or US-4075599-$ or US-4068209-$ or US-4063212-$ or US-4052693-$ or US-4047148-$ or US-4030096-$ or US-3967234-$ or US-3964424-$ or US-3953828-$ or US-3950723-$ or US-3949348-$ or US-3898608-$ or US-3895340-$ or US-3895339-$ or US-3757287-$).did. or (US-3742436-$ or US-3716824-$ or US-3624596-$ or US-3618006-$ or US-3585579-$ or US-3585578-$ or US-3553638-$ or US-3484737-$ or US-3458854-$ or US-3451038-$ or US-3381264-$ or US-3359537-$ or US-3296579-$ or US-3144631-$ or US-3142032-$ or US-3090030-$ or US-3005973-$ or US-2416338-$ or US-1823329-$).did. or (JP-61116678-$ or JP-57046173-$).did. or (WO-9815846-$).did. | | | | |
| S14 | 102 | S13 and sonar | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:20 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | | | |
| S15 | 60 | S13 and sonar and (down$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:20 |
| S16 | 59 | S13 and sonar and (down$4) and line$4 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:20 |
| S17 | 43 | S13 and line$3 near4 transduc$4 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:25 |
| S18 | 23 | S13 and line$3 near4 transduc$4 and perpendicular | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:25 |
| S19 | 16 | S13 and line$3 near4 transduc$4 and perpendicular and (long$2 or longitud$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:25 |
| S20 | 0 | S13 and line$3 near4 transduc$4 and downscan$4 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 11:26 |
| S22 | 136 | (US-20070025183-$ or US-20070091723-$ or US-20060002232-$ or US-20050099887-$ or US-20050043619-$ or US-20040184351-$ or US-20030202426-$).did. or (US-D329616-$ or US-D329615-$ or US-7755974-$ or US-7729203-$ or US-7710825-$ or US-7652952-$ or US-7542376-$ or US-7405999-$ or US-7355924-$ or US-7236427-$ or US-6980688-$ or US-6941226-$ or US-6842401-$ or US-6738311-$ or US-6678403-$ or US-6606958-$ or US-6537224-$ or US-6449215-$ or US-6421299-$ or US-6335905-$ or US-6215730-$ or US-6002644-$ or US- | US-PGPUB; USPAT; JPO; DERWENT | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 17:50 |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 6084827-$ or US-5991239-$ or US-5930199-$ or US-5850372-$).did. or (US-5200931-$ or US-5214744-$ or US-5241314-$ or US-5243567-$ or US-5245587-$ or US-5257241-$ or US-5260912-$ or US-5303208-$ or US-5376933-$ or US-5390152-$ or US-5412618-$ or US-5438552-$ or US-5442358-$ or US-5455806-$ or US-5493619-$ or US-5515337-$ or US-5537366-$ or US-5546356-$ or US-5561641-$ or US-5574700-$ or US-5596549-$ or US-5602801-$ or US-5612928-$ or US-5694372-$ or US-5805528-$ or US-5184330-$ or US-5182732-$).did. or (US-5142502-$ or US-5113377-$ or US-5109364-$ or US-5033029-$ or US-4982924-$ or US-4975887-$ or US-4970700-$ or US-4958330-$ or US-4939700-$ or US-4924448-$ or US-4912685-$ or US-4907208-$ or US-4879697-$ or US-4855961-$ or US-4815045-$ or US-4802148-$ or US-4796238-$ or US-4774837-$ or US-4751645-$ or US-4642801-$ or US-4641290-$ or US-4635240-$ or US-5155706-$ or US-4538249-$ or US-4493064-$ or US-4456210-$ or US-4422166-$).did. or (US-4287578-$ or US-4262344-$ or US-4247923-$ or US-4232380-$ or US-4216537-$ or US-4207620-$ or US-4204281-$ or US-4200922-$ or US-4199746-$ or US-4198702-$ or US-4197591-$ or US-4184210-$ or US-4075599-$ or US-4068209-$ or US-4063212-$ or US-4052693-$ or US-4047148-$ or US-4030096-$ or US-3967234-$ or US-3964424-$ or US-3953828-$ or US-3950723-$ or US-3949348-$ or US-3898608-$ or US-3895340-$ or US-3895339-$ or US-3757287-$).did. or (US-3742436-$ or US-3716824-$ or US-3624596-$ or US-3618006-$ or US-3585579-$ or US-3585578-$ or US-3553638-$ or US-3484737-$ or US-3458854-$ or US-3451038-$ or US-3381264-$ or US-3359537-$ or US-3296579-$ or US-3144631-$ or US-3142032-$ or US-3090030-$ or US-3005973-$ or US-2416338-$ or US-1823329-$).did. or (JP-61116678-$ or JP-57046173-$).did. or (WO-9815846-$).did. | | | | |
| S23 | 3993773 | S22 and image$2 or display$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 17:50 |
| S24 | 103 | S22 and (image$2 or display$2) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 17:51 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | | | |
| S25 | 29 | S22 and ((image$2 or display$2) same combin$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 17:51 |
| S26 | 1 | (12/319604).APP. | US-PGPUB; USOCR | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 17:52 |
| S27 | 1 | (12/319604).APP. | US-PGPUB; USOCR | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 17:53 |
| S28 | 1 | (11/195107).APP. | US-PGPUB; USOCR | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 17:53 |
| S30 | 136 | (US-20070025183-$ or US-20070091723-$ or US-20060002232-$ or US-20050099887-$ or US-20050043619-$ or US-20040184351-$ or US-20030202426-$).did. or (US-D329616-$ or US-D329615-$ or US-7755974-$ or US-7729203-$ or US-7710825-$ or US-7652952-$ or US-7542376-$ or US-7405999-$ or US-7355924-$ or US-7236427-$ or US-6980688-$ or US-6941226-$ or US-6842401-$ or US-6738311-$ or US-6678403-$ or US-6606958-$ or US-6537224-$ or US-6449215-$ or US-6421299-$ or US-6335905-$ or US-6215730-$ or US-6002644-$ or US-6084827-$ or US-5991239-$ or US-5930199-$ or US-5850372-$).did. or (US-5200931-$ or US-5214744-$ or US-5241314-$ or US-5243567-$ or US-5245587-$ or US-5257241-$ or US-5260912-$ or US-5303208-$ or US-5376933-$ or US-5390152-$ or US-5412618-$ or US-5438552-$ or US-5442358-$ or US-5455806-$ or US-5493619-$ or US-5515337-$ or US-5537366-$ or US-5546356-$ or US-5561641-$ or US-5574700-$ or US-5596549-$ or US-5602801-$ or US-5612928-$ or US-5694372-$ or US-5805528-$ or US-5184330-$ or US-5182732-$).did. or (US-5142502-$ or US-5113377-$ or US-5109364-$ or US-5033029-$ or US-4982924-$ or US-4975887-$ or US-4970700-$ or US-4958330-$ or US-4939700-$ or US-4924448-$ or US-4912685-$ or US-4907208-$ or US-4879697-$ or US-4855961-$ or US-4815045-$ or US-4802148-$ or US-4796238-$ or US-4774837-$ or US-4751645-$ or US-4642801-$ or US-4641290-$ or US-4635240-$ or US-5155706-$ or US-4538249-$ or US-4493064-$ or US-4456210-$ or US-4422166-$).did. or | US-PGPUB; USPAT; JPO; DERWENT | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 19:04 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | (US-4287578-$ or US-4262344-$ or US-4247923-$ or US-4232380-$ or US-4216537-$ or US-4207620-$ or US-4204281-$ or US-4200922-$ or US-4199746-$ or US-4198702-$ or US-4197591-$ or US-4184210-$ or US-4075599-$ or US-4068209-$ or US-4063212-$ or US-4052693-$ or US-4047148-$ or US-4030096-$ or US-3967234-$ or US-3964424-$ or US-3953828-$ or US-3950723-$ or US-3949348-$ or US-3898608-$ or US-3895340-$ or US-3895339-$ or US-3757287-$).did. or (US-3742436-$ or US-3716824-$ or US-3624596-$ or US-3618006-$ or US-3585579-$ or US-3585578-$ or US-3553638-$ or US-3484737-$ or US-3458854-$ or US-3451038-$ or US-3381264-$ or US-3359537-$ or US-3296579-$ or US-3144631-$ or US-3142032-$ or US-3090030-$ or US-3005973-$ or US-2416338-$ or US-1823329-$).did. or (JP-61116678-$ or JP-57046173-$).did. or (WO-9815846-$).did. | | | | |
| S31 | 37 | S30 and ((image$2 or display$2) same (combin$4 or overlap$4)) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 19:04 |
| S32 | 137 | (US-20070025183-$ or US-20070091723-$ or US-20060002232-$ or US-20050099887-$ or US-20050043619-$ or US-20040184351-$ or US-20030202426-$ or US-20060023570-$).did. or (US-D329616-$ or US-D329615-$ or US-7755974-$ or US-7729203-$ or US-7710825-$ or US-7652952-$ or US-7542376-$ or US-7405999-$ or US-7355924-$ or US-7236427-$ or US-6980688-$ or US-6941226-$ or US-6842401-$ or US-6738311-$ or US-6678403-$ or US-6606958-$ or US-6537224-$ or US-6449215-$ or US-6421299-$ or US-6335905-$ or US-6215730-$ or US-6002644-$ or US-6084827-$ or US-5991239-$ or US-5930199-$ or US-5850372-$).did. or (US-5200931-$ or US-5214744-$ or US-5241314-$ or US-5243567-$ or US-5245587-$ or US-5257241-$ or US-5260912-$ or US-5303208-$ or US-5376933-$ or US-5390152-$ or US-5412618-$ or US-5438552-$ or US-5442358-$ or US-5455806-$ or US-5493619-$ or US-5515337-$ or US-5537366-$ or US-5546356-$ or US-5561641-$ or US-5574700-$ or US-5596549-$ or US-5602801-$ or US-5612928-$ or US-5694372-$ or US-5805528-$ or US-5184330-$ or US-5182732-$).did. or | US-PGPUB; USPAT; JPO; DERWENT | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 19:04 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | (US-5142502-$ or US-5113377-$ or US-5109364-$ or US-5033029-$ or US-4982924-$ or US-4975887-$ or US-4970700-$ or US-4958330-$ or US-4939700-$ or US-4924448-$ or US-4912685-$ or US-4907208-$ or US-4879697-$ or US-4855961-$ or US-4815045-$ or US-4802148-$ or US-4796238-$ or US-4774837-$ or US-4751645-$ or US-4642801-$ or US-4641290-$ or US-4635240-$ or US-5155706-$ or US-4538249-$ or US-4493064-$ or US-4456210-$ or US-4422166-$).did. or (US-4287578-$ or US-4262344-$ or US-4247923-$ or US-4232380-$ or US-4216537-$ or US-4207620-$ or US-4204281-$ or US-4200922-$ or US-4199746-$ or US-4198702-$ or US-4197591-$ or US-4184210-$ or US-4075599-$ or US-4068209-$ or US-4063212-$ or US-4052693-$ or US-4047148-$ or US-4030096-$ or US-3967234-$ or US-3964424-$ or US-3953828-$ or US-3950723-$ or US-3949348-$ or US-3898608-$ or US-3895340-$ or US-3895339-$ or US-3757287-$).did. or (US-3742436-$ or US-3716824-$ or US-3624596-$ or US-3618006-$ or US-3585579-$ or US-3585578-$ or US-3553638-$ or US-3484737-$ or US-3458854-$ or US-3451038-$ or US-3381264-$ or US-3359537-$ or US-3296579-$ or US-3144631-$ or US-3142032-$ or US-3090030-$ or US-3005973-$ or US-2416338-$ or US-1823329-$).did. or (JP-61116678-$ or JP-57046173-$).did. or (WO-9815846-$).did. | | | | |
| S33 | 37 | S32 and ((image$2 or display$2) same (combin$4 or overlap$4)) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/06 19:05 |
| S35 | 9 | (US-20070025183-$ or US-20050099887-$ or US-20060023570-$).did. or (US-7755974-$ or US-7729203-$ or US-7710825-$ or US-7652952-$ or US-5991239-$ or US-5805528-$).did. | US-PGPUB; USPAT | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 14:44 |
| S36 | 7 | S35 and computer$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 14:44 |
| S37 | 0 | S35 and computer$2 same medi$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 14:44 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | | | |
| S38 | 5 | S35 and computer$2 same (medi$2 or software or program$2 or memory$2) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 14:45 |
| S39 | 137 | (US-20070025183-$ or US-20070091723-$ or US-20060002232-$ or US-20050099887-$ or US-20050043619-$ or US-20040184351-$ or US-20030202426-$ or US-20060023570-$).did. or (US-D329616-$ or US-D329615-$ or US-7755974-$ or US-7729203-$ or US-7710825-$ or US-7652952-$ or US-7542376-$ or US-7405999-$ or US-7355924-$ or US-7236427-$ or US-6980688-$ or US-6941226-$ or US-6842401-$ or US-6738311-$ or US-6678403-$ or US-6606958-$ or US-6537224-$ or US-6449215-$ or US-6421299-$ or US-6335905-$ or US-6215730-$ or US-6002644-$ or US-6084827-$ or US-5991239-$ or US-5930199-$ or US-5850372-$).did. or (US-5200931-$ or US-5214744-$ or US-5241314-$ or US-5243567-$ or US-5245587-$ or US-5257241-$ or US-5260912-$ or US-5303208-$ or US-5376933-$ or US-5390152-$ or US-5412618-$ or US-5438552-$ or US-5442358-$ or US-5455806-$ or US-5493619-$ or US-5515337-$ or US-5537366-$ or US-5546356-$ or US-5561641-$ or US-5574700-$ or US-5596549-$ or US-5602801-$ or US-5612928-$ or US-5694372-$ or US-5805528-$ or US-5184330-$ or US-5182732-$).did. or (US-5142502-$ or US-5113377-$ or US-5109364-$ or US-5033029-$ or US-4982924-$ or US-4975887-$ or US-4970700-$ or US-4958330-$ or US-4939700-$ or US-4924448-$ or US-4912685-$ or US-4907208-$ or US-4879697-$ or US-4855961-$ or US-4815045-$ or US-4802148-$ or US-4796238-$ or US-4774837-$ or US-4751645-$ or US-4642801-$ or US-4641290-$ or US-4635240-$ or US-5155706-$ or US-4538249-$ or US-4493064-$ or US-4456210-$ or US-4422166-$).did. or (US-4287578-$ or US-4262344-$ or US-4247923-$ or US-4232380-$ or US-4216537-$ or US-4207620-$ or US-4204281-$ or US-4200922-$ or US-4199746-$ or US-4198702-$ or US-4197591-$ or US-4184210-$ or US-4075599-$ or US-4068209-$ or US-4063212-$ or US-4052693-$ or US-4047148-$ or US- | US-PGPUB; USPAT; JPO; DERWENT | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 14:59 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 4030096-$ or US-3967234-$ or US-3964424-$ or US-3953828-$ or US-3950723-$ or US-3949348-$ or US-3898608-$ or US-3895340-$ or US-3895339-$ or US-3757287-$).did. or (US-3742436-$ or US-3716824-$ or US-3624596-$ or US-3618006-$ or US-3585579-$ or US-3585578-$ or US-3553638-$ or US-3484737-$ or US-3458854-$ or US-3451038-$ or US-3381264-$ or US-3359537-$ or US-3296579-$ or US-3144631-$ or US-3142032-$ or US-3090030-$ or US-3005973-$ or US-2416338-$ or US-1823329-$).did. or (JP-61116678-$ or JP-57046173-$).did. or (WO-9815846-$).did. | | | | |
| S40 | 0 | S39 and (weight$3 near5 factor$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 14:59 |
| S41 | 0 | S39 and (weight$3 same factor$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 14:59 |
| S42 | 12 | S39 and (weight$3 and factor$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 14:59 |
| S43 | 12 | S39 and (weight$3 same data) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 15:00 |
| S44 | 4 | S39 and (weight$3 same data same (circular$2 or conical$2 or bottom)) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 15:03 |
| S45 | 32 | (sort$4 near4 data near5 column$4) and ((display$4 or render$4) near5 data same select$4 same averag$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:25 |
| S46 | 7 | (sort$4 near4 data near5 column$4) and ((display$4 or render$4) near5 data same sonar) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:26 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | | | |
| S47 | 255 | (sort$4 near4 data near5 column$4) and ((display$4 or render$4) near5 select$3 near5 data) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:27 |
| S48 | 27 | (sort$4 near4 data near5 column$4) and ((display$4 or render$4) near5 select$3 near5 image$3) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:28 |
| S49 | 139 | (US-20070025183-$ or US-20070091723-$ or US-20060002232-$ or US-20050099887-$ or US-20050043619-$ or US-20040184351-$ or US-20030202426-$ or US-20060023570-$ or US-20020071029-$ or US-20050216487-$).did. or (US-D329616-$ or US-D329615-$ or US-7755974-$ or US-7729203-$ or US-7710825-$ or US-7652952-$ or US-7542376-$ or US-7405999-$ or US-7355924-$ or US-7236427-$ or US-6980688-$ or US-6941226-$ or US-6842401-$ or US-6738311-$ or US-6678403-$ or US-6606958-$ or US-6537224-$ or US-6449215-$ or US-6421299-$ or US-6335905-$ or US-6215730-$ or US-6002644-$ or US-6084827-$ or US-5991239-$ or US-5930199-$ or US-5850372-$).did. or (US-5200931-$ or US-5214744-$ or US-5241314-$ or US-5243567-$ or US-5245587-$ or US-5257241-$ or US-5260912-$ or US-5303208-$ or US-5376933-$ or US-5390152-$ or US-5412618-$ or US-5438552-$ or US-5442358-$ or US-5455806-$ or US-5493619-$ or US-5515337-$ or US-5537366-$ or US-5546356-$ or US-5561641-$ or US-5574700-$ or US-5596549-$ or US-5602801-$ or US-5612928-$ or US-5694372-$ or US-5805528-$ or US-5184330-$ or US-5182732-$).did. or (US-5142502-$ or US-5113377-$ or US-5109364-$ or US-5033029-$ or US-4982924-$ or US-4975887-$ or US-4970700-$ or US-4958330-$ or US-4939700-$ or US-4924448-$ or US-4912685-$ or US-4907208-$ or US-4879697-$ or US-4855961-$ or US-4815045-$ or US-4802148-$ or US-4796238-$ or US-4774837-$ or US-4751645-$ or US-4642801-$ or US-4641290-$ or US-4635240-$ or US-5155706-$ or US- | US-PGPUB; USPAT; JPO; DERWENT | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:32 |

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 4538249-$ or US-4493064-$ or US-4456210-$ or US-4422166-$).did. or (US-4287578-$ or US-4262344-$ or US-4247923-$ or US-4232380-$ or US-4216537-$ or US-4207620-$ or US-4204281-$ or US-4200922-$ or US-4199746-$ or US-4198702-$ or US-4197591-$ or US-4184210-$ or US-4075599-$ or US-4068209-$ or US-4063212-$ or US-4052693-$ or US-4047148-$ or US-4030096-$ or US-3967234-$ or US-3964424-$ or US-3953828-$ or US-3950723-$ or US-3949348-$ or US-3898608-$ or US-3895340-$ or US-3895339-$ or US-3757287-$).did. or (US-3742436-$ or US-3716824-$ or US-3624596-$ or US-3618006-$ or US-3585579-$ or US-3585578-$ or US-3553638-$ or US-3484737-$ or US-3458854-$ or US-3451038-$ or US-3381264-$ or US-3359537-$ or US-3296579-$ or US-3144631-$ or US-3142032-$ or US-3090030-$ or US-3005973-$ or US-2416338-$ or US-1823329-$).did. or (JP-61116678-$ or JP-57046173-$).did. or (WO-9815846-$).did. | | | | |
| S50 | 22 | S49 and sonar and data and column$2 and display$4 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:32 |
| S51 | 4 | S49 and sonar and data near4 column$2 and display$4 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:33 |
| S52 | 1 | (form$3 same first same second same data near5 column$3 near6 (sonar or acoustic$4)) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:40 |
| S54 | 5 | (form$3 near5 data near5 column$3 near6 (sonar or acoustic$4)) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:41 |
| S55 | 9 | ((form$3 or creat$4) near5 data near5 column$3 same (sonar or acoustic$4)) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:42 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| S56 | 2 | column$4 near4 sonar near4 data same transducer$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:44 |
| S57 | 3 | column$4 near4 sonar same data same transducer$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:44 |
| S58 | 23 | column$4 same sonar same data same transducer$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:45 |
| S59 | 3 | sonar near4 data same separat$4 near4 (column$2 or table$2 or file$2) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:46 |
| S60 | 333 | data near4 column$3 and sonar | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:47 |
| S61 | 301 | data near4 column$3 and sonar and (sort$3 or separat$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:47 |
| S62 | 50 | data near4 column$3 and sonar same (sort$3 or separat$4) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/12/07 18:47 |

**12/ 12/ 2011 5:34:53 PM**
**H:\ 12-400\ 12460139b.wsp**

PATENT

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

Appl. No.: 12/460,139 Confirmation No.: 9769
Applicant(s): Hebert et al.
Filed: 07/14/2009
Art Unit: 3662
Examiner: James R. Hulka
Title: DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR

Docket No.: 038495/369324
Customer No.: 00826

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**AMENDMENT**

Sir:

This is responsive to the Office Action dated September 22, 2011. Please amend the above-identified application as follows:

**Amendments to the Specification** are set forth on page 2 of this paper.

**Amendments to the Claims** are reflected in the listing of claims beginning on page 4 of this paper.

**Remarks** begin on page 16 of this paper.

Amendments to the Specification

At page 11, please amend paragraph 0056 as follows:

[0056] The sonar signal processor 32 may be any means such as a device or circuitry operating in accordance with software or otherwise embodied in hardware or a combination of hardware and software (e.g., a processor operating under software control or the processor embodied as an application specific integrated circuit (ASIC) or field programmable gate array (FPGA) specifically configured to perform the operations described herein, or a combination thereof) thereby configuring the device or circuitry to perform the corresponding functions of the sonar signal processor 32 as described herein. In this regard, the sonar signal processor 32 may be configured to analyze electrical signals communicated thereto by the transceiver 34 to provide sonar data indicative of the size, location, shape, etc. of objects detected by the sonar system 30. In some cases, the sonar signal processor 32 may include a processor, a processing element, a coprocessor, a controller or various other processing means or devices including integrated circuits such as, for example, an ASIC, FPGA or hardware accelerator, that is configured to execute various programmed operations or instructions stored in a memory device. The sonar signal processor may further or alternatively embody multiple compatible additional hardware or hardware and software items to implement signal processing or enhancement features to improve the display characteristics or data or images, collect or process additional data, such as time, temperature, GPS information, waypoint designations, or others, or may filter extraneous data to better analyze the collected data. It may further implement notices and alarms, such as those determined or adjusted by a user, to reflect depth, presence of fish, proximity of other watercraft, etc. Still further, the processor, in combination with suitable memory, may store incoming transducer data or screen images for future playback or transfer, or alter images with additional processing to implement zoom or lateral movement, or to correlate data, such as fish or bottom features to a GPS position or temperature. In an exemplary embodiment, the sonar signal processor 32 may execute commercially available software for controlling the transceiver 34 and/or transducer array 36 and for processing data received therefrom. Further capabilities of the sonar signal processor 32 and other aspects related to the sonar module are described in U.S.

Patent Application Serial No. ~~___________~~12/460,093, entitled "Linear and Circular Downscan Imaging Sonar" filed on even date herewith, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Amendments to the Claims:

1-56. (Canceled)

57. (Currently Amended) A transducer ~~array~~ assembly comprising:

a housing mountable to a watercraft capable of traversing a surface of a body of water; and

a linear transducer element positioned within the housing, the linear transducer element having a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a fan-shaped sonar beam having a relatively narrow beamwidth in a direction parallel to a longitudinal length of the linear transducer element ~~that is significantly less than~~ and a relatively wide beamwidth ~~of the sonar beam~~ in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer element, the linear transducer element being positioned with the longitudinal length thereof extending in a fore-to-aft direction of the housing;

wherein the linear transducer element is positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface of the body of water.

58. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to operate at a selected one of at least two selectable operating frequencies.

59. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the selectable operating frequencies include about 455 kHz and 800 kHz.

60. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the beamwidth of the linear transducer element is about 0.8 degrees by about 32 degrees or about 1.4 degrees by about 56 degrees.

61. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the transducer ~~array~~ assembly is configured to communicate with a single transceiver.

62. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein a length of a rectangular face of the linear transducer element is about 120 mm and a width of the rectangular face of the linear transducer element is about 3 mm.

63. (Currently Amended) The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the housing is mountable to ~~a vessel to generate sonar pulses defining a~~ the watercraft such that the fan-shaped beam ~~extending~~ extends from one side of the ~~vessel~~ watercraft to an opposite side of the ~~vessel~~ watercraft.

64. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the housing has a streamlined shape.

65. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the beamwidth in the direction parallel to a longitudinal length of the linear transducer element is less than about five percent as large as the beamwidth of the sonar beam in the direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the linear transducer element.

66. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element provide data regarding bottom features over less than fifty percent of a display screen when displayed.

67. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element provide data regarding bottom features over less than twenty percent of a display screen when displayed.

68. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element provide data indicative of bottom depth.

69. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element provide data indicative of water column features.

70. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of Claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images indicative of bottom data.

71. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of Claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images indicative of two or more of depth data water column data and bottom data.

72. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of Claim 57, further comprising a circular transducer element positioned to project conical sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to the plane corresponding to the surface.

73. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of Claim 72, wherein the linear and circular transducer elements are in the same housing.

74. (Currently Amended) The transducer ~~array~~ assembly of Claim 72, wherein the linear transducer and circular transducer elements are positioned to project fan-shaped and conical sonar beams that at least partially overlap.

75. (Currently Amended) The transducer array assembly of claim 72, wherein the sonar signal returns from the circular transducer element and linear transducer element provide generally simultaneous data.

76. (Currently Amended) A sonar system comprising:

a linear transducer element positioned within a housing that is mountable to a watercraft that traverses a surface of a body of water, the linear transducer element having a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a fan-shaped sonar beam having a relatively narrow beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element that is significantly less than and a relatively wide beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer element, the linear transducer element being positioned with the longitudinal length thereof extending in a fore-to-aft direction of the housing

wherein the linear transducer element is positioned to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface of [[a]] the body of water;

a sonar module configured to enable operable communication with the transducer array element, the sonar module including:

a sonar signal processor to process sonar return signals received via the linear transducer element, and

at least one transceiver configured to provide communication between the linear transducer element and the sonar signal processor.

77. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar module further comprises an Ethernet hub in communication with the signal processor.

78. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar module is provided within a separate housing.

79. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising at least one visual display presenting an image representing the processed sonar return signals.

80. (Original) The sonar system of claim 79, wherein the display and the sonar module are in the same housing.

81. (Original) The sonar system of claim 79, wherein at least one display of the plurality of displays is enabled to simultaneously provide different images representing different information from the processed sonar return signals.

82. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar module further comprises configuration settings defining a predefined set of display images that may be presented.

83. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to operate at a selected one of at least two selectable operating frequencies.

84. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the selectable operating frequencies include about 455 kHz and 800 kHz.

85. (Canceled)

86. (Currently Amended) The sonar system of claim ~~85~~ 76, wherein the housing is mountable to ~~a vessel to generate sonar pulses defining a~~ the watercraft such that the fan-shaped beam ~~extending~~ extends from one side of the ~~vessel~~ watercraft to an opposite side of the ~~vessel~~ watercraft.

87. (Canceled)

88. (Currently Amended) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element provide data regarding bottom features over less than fifty percent of a display screen when displayed.

89. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing bottom data.

90. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing water column data.

91. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing depth data.

92. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing two or more of depth data, water column data and bottom data.

93. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing data vertically below the linear transducer element.

94. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a circular transducer element producing a conical downscan beam.

95. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a circular transducer element producing a conical downscan beam from within the housing.

96. (Currently Amended) The sonar system of claim 94, wherein the sonar pulses from the linear transducer element and the sonar pulses from the circular transducer element insonify areas of the bottom that at least partially overlap.

97. (Original) The sonar system of claim 94, wherein the sonar signal returns from the circular transducer element and linear downscan element provide generally simultaneous data.

98. (Original) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising sources of data from at least one of the group of radar, GPS, digital mapping, time and temperature.

99. (Original) The sonar system of claim 98, wherein a display format for display of the data is in a user selectable format.

100. (New) The sonar assembly of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to emit sonar pulses as well to receive echo returns and convert sound energy of the echo returns into electrical signals.

101. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to emit sonar pulses as well to receive echo returns and convert sound energy of the echo returns into electrical signals.

102. (New) The sonar assembly of claim 57, wherein the housing is mounted to the watercraft.

103. (New) The sonar assembly of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to produce a generally planar fan-shaped beam.

104. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a display in communication with the sonar module.

105. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar module and display communicate with each other via a network.

106. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, further comprising at least one additional display in communication with the sonar module.

107. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, further comprising a user interface in communication with the sonar module and configured to receive an input from a user.

108. (New) The sonar system of claim 107, wherein the display, the sonar signal processor, and the user interface are all contained in a single housing.

109. (New) The sonar system of claim 107, wherein the user interface is part of the display.

110. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the linear transducer element, the transceiver, and the display respectively comprise at least two separate modules.

111. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the housing containing the linear transducer element is mounted to the watercraft.

112. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the housing containing the linear transducer element is mounted on an intermediate structure that in turn is mounted to the watercraft.

113. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to implement signal processing or enhancement to improve display characteristics.

114. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to process GPS information.

115. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to process waypoint designations.

116. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to process time data.

117. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to process temperature data.

118. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to implement a notice or alarm regarding depth.

119. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to implement a notice or alarm regarding presence of fish.

120. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to implement a notice or alarm regarding proximity of other watercraft.

121. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the processor, in combination with a memory, stores incoming transducer data or screen images for future playback or transfer.

122. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to perform additional processing to implement zoom.

123. (New) The sonar system of claim 104, wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to perform additional processing to correlate sonar data to a GPS position.

124. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the housing containing the linear transducer element has a streamlined profile.

125. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the housing containing the linear transducer element is mounted on an accessory on the watercraft enabling the fan-shaped beam to assume various orientations with respect to the watercraft.

126. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a linear side scan transducer element positioned and configured to produce a fan-shaped beam aimed downwardly and outwardly to one side of the watercraft, wherein dimensions and operating frequencies of the linear transducer element and the linear side scan transducer element are selected to minimize or eliminate any gap between the respective fan-shaped beams.

127. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a display in communication with the sonar module, and wherein the system is configured to indicate a position of the watercraft on the display.

128. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a display in communication with the sonar module, and wherein the system is configured to indicate water depth on the display.

129. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a second transducer positioned and configured to produce a conical sonar beam directed downwardly from the watercraft, wherein the system further includes a display in communication with the sonar module, and wherein the system is configured to indicate on the display an intensity of a return echo received from the conical sonar beam.

130. (New) The sonar system of claim 129, wherein the linear transducer element and the second transducer are both contained in the housing.

131. (New) The sonar system of claim 129, wherein the linear transducer element and the second transducer operate at different respective frequencies.

132. (New) The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a linear side scan transducer element positioned and configured to produce a fan-shaped beam aimed downwardly

and outwardly to one side of the watercraft, wherein the linear transducer element and the linear side scan transducer element are both contained in the housing.

133. (New) The sonar system of claim 132, further comprising a second linear side scan transducer element positioned and configured to produce a fan-shaped beam aimed downwardly and outwardly to an opposite side of the watercraft, wherein the linear transducer element and the linear side scan transducer elements are all contained in the housing.

134. (New) A sonar imaging apparatus comprising:

a housing mountable to a watercraft that traverses a surface of a body of water, the watercraft defining a center plane that extends from fore to aft and that is perpendicular to the surface of the body of water; and

a linear transducer element positioned within the housing, the linear transducer element being configured to produce a sonar beam having a longitudinal beamwidth in a direction parallel to a longitudinal length of the linear transducer element that is significantly less than a transverse beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer element;

wherein the housing is configured for mounting to the watercraft such that the longitudinal length of the linear transducer element is parallel to said center plane, and

wherein the transverse beamwidth of the sonar beam is sufficiently wide in relation to a direction in which the linear transducer element is aimed such that the transverse beamwidth spans from a port side of said center plane to a starboard side of said center plane.

135. (New) The sonar imaging apparatus of claim 134, further comprising:

a second linear transducer element positioned within the housing, the second linear transducer element being configured to produce a second sonar beam having a longitudinal beamwidth in a direction parallel to a longitudinal length of the second linear transducer element that is significantly less than a transverse beamwidth of the second sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the second linear transducer element.

136. (New.) The sonar imaging apparatus of claim 135, wherein the housing is configured for mounting to the watercraft such that the longitudinal length of the second linear transducer element is parallel to said center plane, and wherein the second linear transducer element is arranged such that the second sonar beam extends primarily in a direction different from the sonar beam of the first linear transducer element.

137. (New) The sonar imaging apparatus of claim 136, wherein the transverse beam width of the second sonar beam spans generally to a port side or a starboard side of said center plane.

## REMARKS

Claims 57-84, 86, and 88-137 are pending after entry of the above amendments. Non-elected Claims 1-56 are canceled without prejudice. Claims 85 and 87 are also canceled. New Claims 100-137 have been added.

In the Office Action, Claims 59, 60, 62, and 72 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, as being indefinite because they include the term "about" in connection with various numerical values.

Additionally, Claims 57, 61, 72, 75, 76, 78, 79, 94, and 97 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over U.S. Patent No. 5,561,641 to Nishimori in view of U.S. Patent Application Publication 2006/0002232 to Shah. Claims 58, 65-71, 74, 80, 81, 83, 88-93, 96, 98, and 99 were rejected as unpatentable over Nishimori and Shah, and further in view of U.S. Patent Application Publication 2007/0025183 to Zimmerman. Claims 64, 73, 77, 85, 87, and 95 were rejected as unpatentable over Nishimori and Shah, and further in view of U.S. Patent No. 7,542,376 to Thompson. Claim 60 was rejected as unpatentable over Nishimori and Shah, and further in view of U.S. Patent No. 5,438,552 to Audi. Claim 62 was rejected as unpatentable over Nishimori and Shah, and further in view of U.S. Patent No. 5,850,372 to Blue and U.S. Patent No. 4,774,837 to Bird. Claims 59 and 84 were rejected as unpatentable over Nishimori and Shah, and further in view of Zimmerman, U.S. Patent No. 4,538,249 to Richard, and U.S. Patent No. 5,184,330 to Adams. Claim 82 was rejected as unpatentable over Nishimori and Shah, and further in view of U.S. Patent No. 5,142,502 to Wilcox. Claims 63 and 86 were rejected as unpatentable over Nishimori and Shah, and further in view of Thompson and Zimmerman.

<u>Summary of Interview</u>

Applicant thanks the Examiner for his courtesy and helpfulness in the personal interview conducted on November 16, 2011, with Applicant's representatives Michael D. McCoy and Donald M. Hill, Jr. In the interview, the representatives explained the state of the prior art with respect to downscan (i.e., looking directly beneath a watercraft with one or more sonar beams), with reference to a number of exemplary prior art references that were discussed. It was explained that it was conventional in the prior art to aim a conical beam straight down from the watercraft, for purposes of depth sounding as well as acquiring images of water-borne objects such as fish. It was further explained that linear or rectangular transducers were conventionally used for side scan purposes, using the fan-shaped beams produced by such linear transducers to insonify regions to the port and starboard sides of a watercraft. As presently understood by Applicant, however, no prior art reference cited by Applicant or the Examiner has a linear transducer used for downscan as described and claimed in Applicant's application.

The Nishimori reference was discussed, and Applicant's representatives pointed out that Nishimori insonifies a wide conical area with a sonar transmitter and then uses beam-steering techniques with an array of receiving elements for purposes entirely different from those of the present application. Minor clarifying amendments to Claim 57 were also discussed.

Summary of Claim Amendments and Additions

Claim 57 has been amended to clarify that it is a transducer "assembly" being claimed. The beam produced by the linear transducer element is now referred to as "fan-shaped" commensurate with the descriptions in the specification. The claim as amended recites that the linear transducer element is positioned with the longitudinal length thereof extending in a fore-to-aft direction of the housing. Claim 57 has also been amended to add "of the body of water" in reference to the "surface" as suggested by the Examiner. The application as filed fully supports these amendments (see, for example, paragraph 0060 and Figures 7A and 7B), such that no new matter has been added. The claims dependent on Claim 57 have been amended in formal respects to be consistent with amended Claim 57.

Independent Claim 76 has been amended in substantially the same fashion as Claim 57. No new matter has been added by these amendments, as noted above. The claims dependent on Claim 76 have been amended in formal respects to be consistent with amended Claim 76.

New Claims 100-137 have been added. Support in the application as filed for these new claims is shown in the table below:

| New Claim / Feature(s) | Specification Paragraph and/or Figure No(s). |
|---|---|
| 100 and 101. "wherein the linear transducer element is configured to emit sonar pulses as well to receive echo returns and convert sound energy of the echo returns into electrical signals." | ¶¶ 0002, 0010, 0056; FIGS. 5, 14 |
| 102. "wherein the housing is mounted to the watercraft. | ¶¶ 0053, 0057-0060; FIGS. 7A, 7B |
| 103. "wherein the linear transducer element is configured to produce a generally planar fan-shaped beam." | FIG. 7B |
| 104. "further comprising a display in communication with the sonar module." | ¶¶ 0051, 0074; FIGS. 5, 14 |
| 105. "wherein the sonar module and display communicate with each other via a network." | ¶¶ 0051, 0074; FIGS. 5, 14 |
| 106. "further comprising at least one additional display in communication with the sonar module." | ¶¶ 0051, 0074; FIGS. 5, 14 |
| 107. "further comprising a user interface in communication with the sonar module and configured to receive an input from a user." | ¶¶ 0052, 0073; FIGS. 5, 14 |
| 108. "wherein the display, the sonar signal processor, and the user interface are all contained in a single housing." | ¶ 0074 |
| 109. "wherein the user interface is part of the display." | ¶ 0052 |
| 110. "wherein the linear transducer element, the transceiver, and the display respectively comprise three separate modules." | FIG. 5 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 111. "wherein the housing containing the linear transducer element is mounted to a hull of the watercraft." | ¶¶ 0053, 0057 |
| 112. "wherein the housing containing the linear transducer element is mounted on an intermediate structure that in turn is mounted to a hull of the watercraft." | ¶ 0057 |
| 113. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to implement signal processing or enhancement to improve display characteristics." | ¶ 0055 |
| 114. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to process GPS information." | ¶ 0055 |
| 115. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to process waypoint designations." | ¶ 0055 |
| 116. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to process time data." | ¶ 0055 |
| 117. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to process temperature data." | ¶ 0055 |
| 118. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to implement a notice or alarm regarding depth." | ¶ 0055 |
| 119. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to implement a notice or alarm regarding presence of fish." | ¶ 0055 |
| 120. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to implement a notice or alarm regarding proximity of other watercraft." | ¶ 0055 |
| 121. "wherein the processor, in combination | ¶ 0055 |

| | |
|---|---|
| with a memory, stores incoming transducer data or screen images for future playback or transfer." | |
| 122. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to perform additional processing to implement zoom." | ¶ 0055 |
| 123. "wherein the sonar signal processor is further configured to perform additional processing to correlate sonar data to a GPS position." | ¶ 0055 |
| 124. "wherein the housing containing the linear transducer element has a streamlined profile." | ¶ 0057 |
| 125. "wherein the housing containing the linear transducer element is mounted on a rotatable accessory on the watercraft enabling the fan-shaped beam to assume various orientations with respect to the watercraft. | ¶ 0059 |
| 126. "further comprising a linear side scan transducer element positioned and configured to produce a fan-shaped beam aimed downwardly and outwardly to one side of the watercraft, wherein dimensions and operating frequencies of the linear transducer element and the linear side scan transducer element are selected to minimize a size of a gap between the respective fan-shaped beams. | ¶ 0063 |
| 127. "further comprising a display in communication with the sonar module, and wherein the system is configured to indicate a position of the watercraft on the display. | ¶ 0068 |
| 128. "further comprising a display in communication with the sonar module, and wherein the system is configured to indicate water depth on the display." | ¶ 0069 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 129. "further comprising a second transducer positioned and configured to produce a conical sonar beam directed downwardly from the watercraft, wherein the system further includes a display in communication with the sonar module, and wherein the system is configured to indicate on the display an intensity of a return echo received from the conical sonar beam." | ¶ 0068 |
| 130. "wherein the linear transducer element and the second transducer are both contained in the housing." | ¶ 0076; FIGS. 16A-C |
| 131. "wherein the linear transducer element and the second transducer operate at different respective frequencies." | ¶ 0073 |
| 132. "further comprising a linear side scan transducer element positioned and configured to produce a fan-shaped beam aimed downwardly and outwardly to one side of the watercraft, wherein the linear transducer element and the linear side scan transducer element are both contained in the housing." | ¶ 0061; FIG. 8A |
| 133. "further comprising a second linear side scan transducer element positioned and configured to produce a fan-shaped beam aimed downwardly and outwardly to an opposite side of the watercraft, wherein the linear transducer element and the linear side scan transducer elements are all contained in the housing." | ¶ 0061; FIG. 8A |
| 134. "A sonar imaging apparatus comprising:<br><br>a housing mountable to a watercraft that traverses a surface of a body of water, the watercraft defining a center plane that extends from fore to aft and that is perpendicular to the surface of the body of | ¶¶ 0057-0063; FIGS. 6 through 9B |

| | |
|---|---|
| water; and<br><br>a linear transducer element positioned within the housing, the linear transducer element being configured to produce a sonar beam having a longitudinal beamwidth in a direction parallel to a longitudinal length of the linear transducer element that is significantly less than a transverse beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer element;<br><br>wherein the housing is configured for mounting to the watercraft such that the longitudinal length of the linear transducer element is parallel to said center plane, and<br><br>wherein the transverse beamwidth of the sonar beam is sufficiently wide in relation to a direction in which the linear transducer element is aimed such that the transverse beamwidth spans from a port side of said center plane to a starboard side of said center plane." | |
| 135. "further comprising:<br><br>a second linear transducer element positioned within the housing, the second linear transducer element being configured to produce a second sonar beam having a longitudinal beamwidth in a direction parallel to a longitudinal length of the second linear transducer element that is significantly less than a transverse beamwidth of the second sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the second linear transducer element." | ¶¶ 0057-0063; FIGS. 6 through 9B |
| 136. "wherein the housing is configured for mounting to the watercraft such that the longitudinal length of the second linear transducer element is parallel to said center | ¶¶ 0057-0064; FIGS. 6 through 10B |

| | |
|---|---|
| plane, and wherein the second linear transducer element is arranged such that the second sonar beam extends primarily in a direction different from the sonar beam of the first linear transducer element." | |
| 137. "wherein the transverse beam width of the second sonar beam spans generally to a port side or a starboard side of said center plane." | ¶¶ 0057-0064; FIGS. 6 through 10B |

Thus, no new matter has been added by the addition of new Claims 100-137.

Response to Rejections under 35 U.S.C. 112, Second Paragraph

The Examiner indicated in the interview that the inclusion of the term "about" in reference to numerical values in the claims is not in fact considered to render the claims indefinite. Accordingly, Applicant has not removed this term from the indicated claims, and it is Applicant's understanding that the rejections under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, will be withdrawn on next action.

Response to Rejections under 35 U.S.C. 103(a)

All of the rejections hinge on the asserted combination of Nishimori and Shah as allegedly teaching a transducer array having a linear transducer element of rectangular shape, producing a beam that is significantly narrower in a direction parallel to the length of the element than in a direction perpendicular to the length, and wherein the transducer element is positioned in its housing so as to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface of the body of water. As pointed out in the interview, however, and as further explained below, Nishimori fails to teach or even remotely suggest such a linear transducer element as claimed in Claims 57 and 76.

The Office Action specifically pointed to col. 18, lines 1-20 of Nishimori, as allegedly teaching a linear transducer arranged as claimed. Nishimori, however, describes a sonar system strikingly distinct from that claimed in Claims 57 and 76. Nishimori's objective is to determine magnitudes and directions of velocities of moving targets within an insonified volume of water, and to display the targets in various colors denoting such magnitudes and directions. To accomplish this, Nishimori emits a wide-area conical beam into the water (Figure 19; col. 11, lines 56-58; col. 26, lines 16-21). This produces echoes or sonar returns potentially coming from all directions from within that conical volume, back to the transducer array. Nishimori then uses a selected sub-set of a multi-direction array of multiple receiving elements to receive those sonar returns and convert them into electrical signals for subsequent signal processing. The receiving array can be a circular array (see Figure 6 and Example 4 described at col. 15 line 50 to col. 16 line 15), or it can be a linear array (see col. 18, lines 15-26). In either case, however, two such receiving elements *1p* and *1q* are used to form two "receiving beams" P and Q that are steered (either mechanically or electronically) with an angular separation $\theta$ between them. There is a constant time difference between the receipt of the return at the element *1p* and the receipt at the element *1q*. Based on that time difference, Nishimori is able to measure phase differences between the two signals, determine carrier frequencies contained in the target echoes, and thereby deduce the magnitudes and directions of velocities of the targets.

Thus, Nishimori teaches using a transducer producing a <u>conical</u> beam as illustrated in Figure 19. This is similar to the state of the art as noted above, in which it was conventional to aim a conical beam downward for various purposes. Nishimori merely adds to such conventional systems a receiving array and signal processing techniques to deduce velocity information. Accordingly, Nishimori is of no particular relevance to the claimed invention of Applicant's application, since it fails to disclose or suggest a <u>linear</u> transducer element producing a <u>fan-shaped</u> beam positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface of the body of water.

Shah is of even less relevance, as it relates to an acoustic signal transmission system for a downhole (well) installation, and in any case does not disclose or suggest a linear transducer element of any kind.

In light of the remarks above, therefore, Applicant respectfully submits that Claims 57 and 76 are patentable over the cited references.

The claims dependent on Claims 57 and 76 are therefore also patentable at least because they include all of the features of their respective independent claim, and further because the cited references fail to teach or suggest the combination of such features with the additional limitations recited in each of the dependent claims.

New independent Claim 134 includes features similar to those of Claims 57 and 76 and thus is submitted to be patentable for reasons substantially the same as those applicable to Claims 57 and 76. Dependent Claims 135-137 are therefore also patentable at least because they include all of the features of Claim 134, and further because the cited references fail to teach or suggest the combination of such features with the additional limitations recited in each of these dependent claims.

* * *

Conclusion

Based on the above amendments and remarks, it is respectfully submitted that all pending claims are patentable and the application is in condition for allowance.

It is not believed that extensions of time or fees for net addition of claims are required, beyond those that may otherwise be provided for in documents accompanying this paper. However, in the event that additional extensions of time are necessary to allow consideration of this paper, such extensions are hereby petitioned under 37 CFR § 1.136(a), and any fee required therefor (including fees for net addition of claims) is hereby authorized to be charged to Deposit Account No. 16-0605.

Respectfully submitted,

Donald M. Hill, Jr.
Registration No. 40,646

**ALSTON & BIRD LLP**
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000

**ELECTRONICALLY FILED USING THE EFS-WEB ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE ON NOVEMBER 30, 2011.**

# Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

| | |
|---|---|
| EFS ID: | 11507604 |
| Application Number: | 12460139 |
| International Application Number: | |
| Confirmation Number: | 9769 |
| Title of Invention: | Downscan imaging sonar |
| First Named Inventor/Applicant Name: | Brian T. Maguire |
| Customer Number: | 826 |
| Filer: | Donald Merton Hill/Grace Rippy |
| Filer Authorized By: | Donald Merton Hill |
| Attorney Docket Number: | 038495/369324 |
| Receipt Date: | 30-NOV-2011 |
| Filing Date: | 14-JUL-2009 |
| Time Stamp: | 12:14:12 |
| Application Type: | Utility under 35 USC 111(a) |

## Payment information:

| | |
|---|---|
| Submitted with Payment | no |

## File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | 369324_Amendment11302011.pdf | 1171473<br>21b57a2487763e9cfd223af224506bba3e35899a | yes | 26 |

| | Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| | Amendment/Req. Reconsideration-After Non-Final Reject | 1 | 1 |
| | Specification | 2 | 3 |
| | Claims | 4 | 15 |
| | Applicant Arguments/Remarks Made in an Amendment | 16 | 26 |
| **Warnings:** | | | |
| **Information:** | | | |
| | **Total Files Size (in bytes):** | 1171473 | |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**
**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**
**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**
**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

PTO/SB/06 (07-06)
Approved for use through 1/31/2007. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

| **PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD** Substitute for Form PTO-875 | Application or Docket Number 12/460,139 | Filing Date 07/14/2009 | ☐ To be Mailed |
|---|---|---|---|

## APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I

| FOR | NUMBER FILED (Column 1) | NUMBER EXTRA (Column 2) | SMALL ENTITY ☐ RATE ($) | SMALL ENTITY FEE ($) | OR | OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($) | OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY FEE ($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ☒ BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c)) | N/A | N/A | N/A | | | N/A | **330** |
| ☒ SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m)) | N/A | N/A | N/A | | | N/A | **540** |
| ☒ EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q)) | N/A | N/A | N/A | | | N/A | **220** |
| TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i)) | 99 minus 20 = | * 79 | X $ = | | OR | X $52 = | **4108** |
| INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h)) | 4 minus 3 = | * 1 | X $ = | | | X $220 = | **220** |
| ☐ APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s)) | If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $250 ($125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s). | | | | | | |
| ☐ MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j)) | | | | | | | |
| | | | TOTAL | | | TOTAL | **5418** |

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.

## APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II

| AMENDMENT **11/30/2011** | CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1) | | HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2) | PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3) | SMALL ENTITY RATE ($) | SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE ($) | OR | OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($) | OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE ($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total (37 CFR 1.16(i)) | * 79 | Minus | ** 99 | = 0 | X $ = | | OR | X $60= | 0 |
| Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h)) | * 3 | Minus | ***4 | = 0 | X $ = | | OR | X $250= | 0 |
| ☐ Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s)) | | | | | | | | | |
| ☐ FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j)) | | | | | | | OR | | |
| | | | | | TOTAL ADD'L FEE | | OR | TOTAL ADD'L FEE | **0** |

| AMENDMENT | CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1) | | HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2) | PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3) | RATE ($) | ADDITIONAL FEE ($) | OR | RATE ($) | ADDITIONAL FEE ($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total (37 CFR 1.16(i)) | * | Minus | ** | = | X $ = | | OR | X $ = | |
| Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h)) | * | Minus | *** | = | X $ = | | OR | X $ = | |
| ☐ Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s)) | | | | | | | | | |
| ☐ FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j)) | | | | | | | OR | | |
| | | | | | TOTAL ADD'L FEE | | OR | TOTAL ADD'L FEE | |

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

Legal Instrument Examiner:
/AJAY R. DAVID/

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NO. | FILING DATE | FIRST NAMED INVENTOR | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. | CONFIRMATION NO. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | Brian T. Maguire | 038495/369324 | 9769 |

826 7590 11/23/2011

ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

| EXAMINER | |
|---|---|
| HULKA, JAMES R | |

| ART UNIT | PAPER NUMBER |
|---|---|
| 3662 | |

| MAIL DATE | DELIVERY MODE |
|---|---|
| 11/23/2011 | PAPER |

**Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.**

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

| ***Applicant-Initiated Interview Summary*** | **Application No.**<br>12/460,139 | **Applicant(s)**<br>MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Examiner**<br>JAMES HULKA | **Art Unit**<br>3662 | |

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

(1) *JAMES HULKA*.

(2) *Donald Hill (Reg. No 40,646)*.

(3) *Michael McCoy (Reg. No. 29,098)*.

(4) ______.

Date of Interview: *16 November 2011*.

Type: ☐ Telephonic ☐ Video Conference
☒ Personal [copy given to: ☐ applicant ☐ applicant's representative]

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: ☐ Yes ☒ No.
If Yes, brief description: ______.

Issues Discussed ☐101 ☒112 ☐102 ☒103 ☐Others
(For each of the checked box(es) above, please describe below the issue and detailed description of the discussion)

Claim(s) discussed: *57 and 76*.

Identification of prior art discussed: *Betts, Gilmour, Nishimori*.

Substance of Interview
(For each issue discussed, provide a detailed description and indicate if agreement was reached. Some topics may include: identification or clarification of a reference or a portion thereof, claim interpretation, proposed amendments, arguments of any applied references etc...)

*Applicant's representatives discussed additional prior art from recently filed IDS. Representatives described novel features of claimed invention and cited support in specification for those claims. Representatives also described differences in structure and function of claimed invention in application and distinctions between that and various examiner-cited and applicant-cited references (NPL and patent).Color screen images were shown and provided to the examiner to highlight improvements over prior art. No agreement was made regarding allowability of claims*.

**Applicant recordation instructions:** The formal written reply to the last Office action must include the substance of the interview. (See MPEP section 713.04). If a reply to the last Office action has already been filed, applicant is given a non-extendable period of the longer of one month or thirty days from this interview date, or the mailing date of this interview summary form, whichever is later, to file a statement of the substance of the interview

**Examiner recordation instructions**: Examiners must summarize the substance of any interview of record. A complete and proper recordation of the substance of an interview should include the items listed in MPEP 713.04 for complete and proper recordation including the identification of the general thrust of each argument or issue discussed, a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed regarding patentability and the general results or outcome of the interview, to include an indication as to whether or not agreement was reached on the issues raised.

☐ Attachment

/JAMES HULKA/
Examiner, Art Unit 3662

# Summary of Record of Interview Requirements

**Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP), Section 713.04, Substance of Interview Must be Made of Record**
A complete written statement as to the substance of any face-to-face, video conference, or telephone interview with regard to an application must be made of record in the application whether or not an agreement with the examiner was reached at the interview.

**Title 37 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) § 1.133 Interviews**
Paragraph (b)

In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for reply to Office action as specified in §§ 1.111, 1.135. (35 U.S.C. 132)

37 CFR §1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.
All business with the Patent or Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

---

The action of the Patent and Trademark Office cannot be based exclusively on the written record in the Office if that record is itself incomplete through the failure to record the substance of interviews.

It is the responsibility of the applicant or the attorney or agent to make the substance of an interview of record in the application file, unless the examiner indicates he or she will do so. It is the examiner's responsibility to see that such a record is made and to correct material inaccuracies which bear directly on the question of patentability.

Examiners must complete an Interview Summary Form for each interview held where a matter of substance has been discussed during the interview by checking the appropriate boxes and filling in the blanks. Discussions regarding only procedural matters, directed solely to restriction requirements for which interview recordation is otherwise provided for in Section 812.01 of the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, or pointing out typographical errors or unreadable script in Office actions or the like, are excluded from the interview recordation procedures below. Where the substance of an interview is completely recorded in an Examiners Amendment, no separate Interview Summary Record is required.

The Interview Summary Form shall be given an appropriate Paper No., placed in the right hand portion of the file, and listed on the "Contents" section of the file wrapper. In a personal interview, a duplicate of the Form is given to the applicant (or attorney or agent) at the conclusion of the interview. In the case of a telephone or video-conference interview, the copy is mailed to the applicant's correspondence address either with or prior to the next official communication. If additional correspondence from the examiner is not likely before an allowance or if other circumstances dictate, the Form should be mailed promptly after the interview rather than with the next official communication.

The Form provides for recordation of the following information:
- Application Number (Series Code and Serial Number)
- Name of applicant
- Name of examiner
- Date of interview
- Type of interview (telephonic, video-conference, or personal)
- Name of participant(s) (applicant, attorney or agent, examiner, other PTO personnel, etc.)
- An indication whether or not an exhibit was shown or a demonstration conducted
- An identification of the specific prior art discussed
- An indication whether an agreement was reached and if so, a description of the general nature of the agreement (may be by attachment of a copy of amendments or claims agreed as being allowable). Note: Agreement as to allowability is tentative and does not restrict further action by the examiner to the contrary.
- The signature of the examiner who conducted the interview (if Form is not an attachment to a signed Office action)

It is desirable that the examiner orally remind the applicant of his or her obligation to record the substance of the interview of each case. It should be noted, however, that the Interview Summary Form will not normally be considered a complete and proper recordation of the interview unless it includes, or is supplemented by the applicant or the examiner to include, all of the applicable items required below concerning the substance of the interview.

A complete and proper recordation of the substance of any interview should include at least the following applicable items:
1) A brief description of the nature of any exhibit shown or any demonstration conducted,
2) an identification of the claims discussed,
3) an identification of the specific prior art discussed,
4) an identification of the principal proposed amendments of a substantive nature discussed, unless these are already described on the Interview Summary Form completed by the Examiner,
5) a brief identification of the general thrust of the principal arguments presented to the examiner,
   (The identification of arguments need not be lengthy or elaborate. A verbatim or highly detailed description of the arguments is not required. The identification of the arguments is sufficient if the general nature or thrust of the principal arguments made to the examiner can be understood in the context of the application file. Of course, the applicant may desire to emphasize and fully describe those arguments which he or she feels were or might be persuasive to the examiner.)
6) a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed, and
7) if appropriate, the general results or outcome of the interview unless already described in the Interview Summary Form completed by the examiner.

Examiners are expected to carefully review the applicant's record of the substance of an interview. If the record is not complete and accurate, the examiner will give the applicant an extendable one month time period to correct the record.

**Examiner to Check for Accuracy**

If the claims are allowable for other reasons of record, the examiner should send a letter setting forth the examiner's version of the statement attributed to him or her. If the record is complete and accurate, the examiner should place the indication, "Interview Record OK" on the paper recording the substance of the interview along with the date and the examiner's initials.

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | | | | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | | | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | | | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | | | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | | | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet | 1 | of | 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Document Number<br>Number - Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages of Relevant Figures Appear |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1. | US-1,823,329 | 09-15-1931 | Marrison | |
| | 2. | US-2,416,338 | 02-25-1947 | Mason | |
| | 3. | US-3,005,973 | 10-24-1961 | Kietz | |
| | 4. | US-3,090,030 | 05-14-1963 | Schuck | |
| | 5. | US-3,142,032 | 07-21-1964 | Jones | |
| | 6. | US-3,144,631 | 08-11-1964 | Lustig, et al. | |
| | 7. | US-3,296,579 | 01-03-1967 | Farr, et al. | |
| | 8. | US-3,359,537 | 12-19-1967 | Geil, et al. | |
| | 9. | US-3,381,264 | 04-30-1968 | Lavergne, et al. | |
| | 10. | US-3,451,038 | 06-17-1969 | Maass | |
| | 11. | US-3,458,854 | 07-29-1969 | Murphree | |
| | 12. | US-3,484,737 | 12-16-1969 | Walsh | |
| | 13. | US-3,553,638 | 01-05-1971 | Sublett | |
| | 14. | US-3,585,578 | 06-15-1971 | Fischer, Jr., eta. | |
| | 15. | US-3,585,579 | 06-15-1971 | Dorr, et al. | |
| | 16. | US-3,618,006 | 11-02-1971 | Wright | |
| | 17. | US-3,624,596 | 11-30-1971 | Dickenson, et al. | |
| | 18. | US-3,716,824 | 02-13-1973 | Door, et al. | |
| | 19. | US-3,742,436 | 06-26-1973 | Jones | |
| | 20. | US-3,757,287 | 09-04-1973 | Bealor, Jr. | |
| | 21. | US-3,895,339 | 07-15-1975 | Jones, et al. | |
| | 22. | US-3,895,340 | 07-15-1975 | Gilmour | |
| | 23. | US-3,898,608 | 08-05-1975 | Jones, et al. | |
| | 24. | US-3,949,348 | 04-06-1976 | Dorr | |
| | 25. | US-3,950,723 | 04-13-1976 | Gilmour | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 2 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Document Number<br>Number - Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages of Relevant Figures Appear |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 26. | US-3,953,828 | 04-27-1976 | Cook | |
| | 27. | US-3,964,424 | 06-22-1976 | Hagemann | |
| | 28. | US-3,967,234 | 06-29-1976 | Jones | |
| | 29. | US-4,030,096 | 06-14-1977 | Stevens, et al. | |
| | 30. | US-4,047,148 | 09-06-1977 | Hagemann | |
| | 31. | US-4,052,693 | 10-04-1977 | Gilmour | |
| | 32. | US-4,063,212 | 12-13-1977 | Sublett | |
| | 33. | US-4,068,209 | 01-10-1978 | Lagier | |
| | 34. | US-4,075,599 | 02-21-1978 | Kosalos, et al. | |
| | 35. | US-4,184,210 | 01-15-1980 | Hageman | |
| | 37. | US-4,197,591 | 04-08-1980 | Hagemann | |
| | 38. | US-4,198,702 | 04-15-1980 | Clifford | |
| | 39. | US-4,199,746 | 04-22-1980 | Jones, et al. | |
| | 40. | US-4,200,922 | 04-29-1980 | Hagemann | |
| | 41. | US-4,204,281 | 05-20-1980 | Hagemann | |
| | 42. | US-4,207,620 | 06-10-1980 | Morgera | |
| | 43. | US-4,216,537 | 08-05-1980 | Delignieres | |
| | 44. | US-4,232,380 | 11-04-1980 | Caron, et al. | |
| | 45. | US-4,247,923 | 01-27-1987 | De Kok | |
| | 46. | US-4,262,344 | 04-14-1981 | Gilmour | |
| | 47. | US-4,287,578 | 09-01-1981 | Heyser | |
| | 48. | US-4,422,166 | 12-20-1983 | Klein | |
| | 49. | US-4,456,210 | 06-26-1984 | McBride | |
| | 50. | US-4,493,064 | 01-08-1985 | Odero, et al. | |
| | 52. | US-4,538,249 | 08-27-1985 | Richard | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 3 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Document Number<br>Number - Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages of Relevant Figures Appear |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 53. | US-4,635,240 | 01-06-1987 | Geohegan, Jr., et al. | |
| | 54. | US-4,641,290 | 02-03-1987 | Massa, et al. | |
| | 55. | US-4,642,801 | 02-10-1987 | Perny | |
| | 56. | US-4,751,645 | 06-14-1988 | Abrams, et al. | |
| | 57. | US-4,774,837 | 10-04-1988 | Bird | |
| | 58. | US-4,796,238 | 01-03-1989 | Bourgeois, et al. | |
| | 59. | US-4,802,148 | 01-31-1989 | Gilmour | |
| | 60. | US-4,815,045 | 03-21-1989 | Nakamura | |
| | 61. | US-4,855,961 | 08-08-1989 | Jaffe, et al. | |
| | 62. | US-4,879,697 | 11-07-1989 | Lowrance, et al. | |
| | 63. | US-4,907,208 | 03-06-1990 | Lowrance et al. | |
| | 64. | US-4,912,685 | 03-27-1990 | Gilmour | |
| | 65. | US-4,924,448 | 05-08-1990 | Gaer | |
| | 66. | US-4,939,700 | 07-03-1990 | Breton | |
| | 67. | US-4,958,330 | 09-18-1990 | Higgins | |
| | 68. | US-4,970,700 | 11-13-1990 | Gilmour, et al. | |
| | 69. | US-4,975,887 | 12-04-1990 | Maccabee, et al. | |
| | 70. | US-4,982,924 | 01-08-1991 | Havins | |
| | 71. | US-5,033,029 | 07-16-1991 | Jones | |
| | 72. | US-5,109,364 | 04-28-1992 | Stiner | |
| | 73. | US-5,113,377 | 05-12-1992 | Johnson | |
| | 74. | US-5,142,502 | 08-25-1992 | Wilcox, et al. | |
| | 75. | US-5,155,706 | 10-13-1992 | Haley, et al. | |
| | 76. | US-5,182,732 | 01-26-1993 | Pichowkin | |
| | 77. | US-5,184,330 | 02-02-1993 | Adams, et al. | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 4 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Document Number<br>Number - Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages of Relevant Figures Appear |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 78. | US-5,200,931 | 04-06-1993 | Kosalos, et al. | |
| | 79. | US-5,214,744 | 05-25-1993 | Schweizer, et al. | |
| | 80. | US-5,241,314 | 08-31-1993 | Keeler, et al. | |
| | 81. | US-5,245,587 | 09-14-1993 | Hutson | |
| | 82. | US-5,243,567 | 09-07-1993 | Gingerich | |
| | 83. | US-5,257,241 | 10-26-1993 | Henderson, et al. | |
| | 84. | US-5,260,912 | 11-09-1993 | Latham | |
| | 85. | US-5,303,208 | 04-12-1994 | Dorr | |
| | 86. | US-5,376,933 | 12-27-1994 | Tupper, et al. | |
| | 87. | US-5,390,152 | 02-14-1995 | Boucher, et al. | |
| | 88. | US-5,412,618 | 05-02-1995 | Gilmour | |
| | 89. | US-5,438,552 | 08-01-1995 | Audi, et al. | |
| | 90. | US-5,442,358 | 08-15-1995 | Keeler, et al. | |
| | 91. | US-5,455,806 | 10-03-1995 | Hutson | |
| | 92. | US-5,493,619 | 02-20-1996 | Haley, et al. | |
| | 93. | US-5,515,337 | 05-07-1996 | Gilmour, et al. | |
| | 94. | US-5,537,366 | 07-16-1996 | Gilmour | |
| | 95. | US-5,546,356 | 08-13-1996 | Zehner | |
| | 96. | US-5,561,641 | 10-01-1996 | Nishimori, et al. | |
| | 97. | US-5,574,700 | 11-12-1996 | Chapman | |
| | 98. | US-5,596,549 | 01-21-1997 | Sheriff | |
| | 99. | US-5,602,801 | 02-11-1997 | Nussbaum, et al. | |
| | 100. | US-5,612,928 | 03-18-1997 | Haley, et al. | |
| | 101. | US-5,694,372 | 12-02-1997 | Perennes | |
| | 102. | US-5,805,528 | 09-08-1998 | Hamada et al. | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 5 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Document Number<br>Number - Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages of Relevant Figures Appear |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 103. | US-5,850,372 | 12-15-1998 | Blue | |
| | 105. | US-5,930,199 | 07-27-1999 | Wilk | |
| | 106. | US-5,991,239 | 11-23-1999 | Fatemi-Booshehri et al. | |
| | 107. | US-6,002,644 | 12-14-1999 | Wilk | |
| | 108. | US-6,084,827 | 07-04-2000 | Johnson, et al. | |
| | 109. | US-6,215,730 | 04-20-2001 | Pinto | |
| | 110. | US-6,335,905 | 01-01-2002 | Kabel | |
| | 111. | US-6,421,299 | 07-16-2002 | Betts, et al. | |
| | 112. | US-6,449,215 | 09-10-2002 | Shell | |
| | 113. | US-6,537,224 | 03-25-2003 | Mauchamp, et al. | |
| | 114. | US-6,606,958 | 08-19-2003 | Bouyoucos | |
| | 115. | US-6,678,403 | 01-13-2004 | Wilk | |
| | 116. | US-6,738,311 | 05-18-2004 | Guigne | |
| | 117. | US-6,842,401 | 01-11-2005 | Chiang, et al. | |
| | 118. | US-6,941,226 | 09-06-2005 | Estep | |
| | 119. | US-6,980,688 | 12-27-2005 | Wilk | |
| | 120. | US-7,236,427 | 06-26-2007 | Schroeder | |
| | 121. | US-7,355,924 | 04-08-2008 | Zimmerman, et al. | |
| | 122. | US-7,405,999 | 07-29-2008 | Skjold-Larsen | |
| | 123. | US-7,542,376 | 06-02-2009 | Thompson, et al. | |
| | 124. | US-7,652,952 | 01-26-2010 | Betts, et al. | |
| | 125. | US-7,710,825 | 05-04-2010 | Betts, et al. | |
| | 126. | US-7,729,203 | 06-01-2010 | Betts, et al. | |
| | 127. | US-7,755,974 | 07-13-2010 | Betts, et al. | |
| | 128. | US-2003/0202426 A1 | 10-30-2003 | Ishihara et al. | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 6 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Document Number<br>Number - Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages of Relevant Figures Appear |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 129. | US 2004/0184351 A1 | 09-23-2004 | Nishimori, et al. | |
| | 130. | US 2005/0043619 A1 | 02-24-2005 | Sumanaweera, et al. | |
| | 131. | US 2005/0099887 A1 | 05-12-2005 | Zimmerman, et al. | |
| | 132. | US 2006/0002232 A1 | 01-05-2006 | Shah, et al. | |
| | 133. | US 2007/0025183 A1 | 02-01-2007 | Zimmerman, et al. | |
| | 134. | US 2007/0091723 A1 | 04-26-2007 | Zhu, et al. | |
| | 135. | US-2011/0013484 A1 | 01-20-2011 | Coleman et al. | |
| | 136. | US-2011/0013485 A1 | 01-20-2011 | Maguire | |
| | 137. | US-Des. 329,615 | 09-22-1992 | Stiner | |
| | 138. | US-Des. 329,616 | 09-22-1992 | Stiner | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Foreign Patent Document<br>Country Code - Number Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 139. | GB 1,316,138 | 05-09-1973 | Dickinson, et al. | | |
| | 140. | JP 57-046173 (A) | 03-16-1982 | Furuno Electric Co. | | Abstract |
| | 141. | JP 61-116678 (A) | 06-04-1986 | Furuno Electric Co. | | Abstract |
| | 142. | JP 4357487 (A) | 12-10-1992 | Furuno Electric Co. | | Abstract |
| | 143. | WO 98/15846 | 04-16-1998 | Rowe-Deines Instruments, Incorporated | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 7 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 144. | ANDERSON, K.; "Side-Scanning for Sport Fishing"; Salt Water Sportsman; April 1, 2009; 4 pages | |
| | 145. | ANDREW, C., et al.; "Setup and Trouble shooting Procedures for the Klein 5500 Sidescan Sonar"; Australian Government; Department of Defence; Maritime Operations Division; Systems Sciences Laboratory; Published November 2003 | |
| | 146. | ARMSTRONG, A.A., et al.; "New Technology for Shallow Water Hydrographic Surveys"; Proceedings of the 25th Joint Meeting of UJNR Sea-bottom Surveys Panel; December, 1996 | |
| | 147. | ASPLIN, R.G., et al.; "A new Generation Side Scan Sonar"; OCEANS '88 Proceedings. 'A Partnership of Marine Interests'; Vol. 2; October-November 1988; pp. 329-334 | |
| | 148. | CAREY, W.M., "Sonar Array Characterization, Experimental Results"; IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering ; Vol. 23; Issue 3; July 1998; pp. 297-306 | |
| | 149. | BAKER, N., et al, "Rifting History of the Northern Mariana Trough: SeaMARCH II and Seismic Reflection Surveys," Journals of Geophysical Research, Vol. 101, No. B5, May 10, 1996 | |
| | 150. | COWIE, P.A., et al., "Quantitative Fault Studies on the East Pacific Rise: A Comparison of Sonar Imaging Techniques," Journal of Geophysical Research, Vol. 99, B8, August 10, 1994 | |
| | 151. | CURCIO, J., et al.; "SCOUT – A Low Cost Autonomous Surface Platform for Research in Cooperative Autonomy"; Department of Mechanical Engineering; Massachusetts Institute of Technology; August 2005 | |
| | 152. | FARRELL, E.J.; , "Color Display and Interactive Interpretation of Three-Dimensional Data"; IBM Journal of Research and Development; Vol.27; No.4; July 1983; pp.356-366 | |
| | 153. | GLYNN, JR., J.M., et al.; "Survey Operations and Results Using a Klein 5410 Bathymetric Sidescan Sonar"; Retrieved from the Internet <URL: http://www.thsoa.org/hy07/03_04.pdf; March 2007 | |
| | 154. | HANSEN, H.H.; "Circular vs. rectangular transducers"; Department of Electronics and Telecommunications; Norwegian University of Science and Technolgy; March 2010; 28 pages | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | | | | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | | | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | | | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | | | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | | | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet | 8 | of | 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 155. | HUGHES CLARKE, J. E., et al.; "Knudsen 320 200 kHz keel-mounted sidescan trials; Results from 2000/2001/2002 field operations; [online]; Retrieved on 6/23/2010 from the Internet <URL: http://www.omg.unb.ca/Ksidescan/K320_SStrials.html; 11 pages | |
| | 156. | HUGHES CLARKE, J.E.; "Seafloor characterization using keel-mounted sidescan: proper compensation for radiometric and geometric distortion"; Canadian Hydrographic Conference; May 2004; 18 pages | |
| | 157. | HUSSONG, D.M., et al., "High-Resolution Acoustic Seafloor Mapping," 20th Annual OTC, Houston, TX, May 2-5, 1988 | |
| | 158. | JONSSON, J., et al. "Simulation and Evaluation of Small High-Frequency Side-Scan Sonars using COMSOL"; Excerpt from the Proceedings of the COMSOL Conference; 2009; Milan, Italy | |
| | 159. | KEY, W.H.; "Side Scan Sonar Technology"; Oceans 2000 MTS/IEEE Conference and Exhibition; Volume 2; September 2000; pp. 1029-1033 | |
| | 160. | KIELCZYNSKI, P., et al.; "Finite Element Method (FEM) and Impulse Response Method (IRM) analysis of circular and rectangular transducers"; 1995 IEEE Ultrasonics Symposium; 1995; pp. 693-696 | |
| | 161. | KOZAK, G.; "Side Scan Sonar Target Comparative Techniques for Port Security and MCM Q-Route Requirements"; L-3 Communications; Klein Associates, Inc.; [Online]; Retrieved from the Internet <URL: http://www.chesapeaketech.com/techniques-port-security.pdf; 11 pages | |
| | 162. | KROTSER, D.J., et al.; "Side-Scan Sonar: Selective Textural Enhancement"; Oceans'76; Washington, DC; September 1976 | |
| | 163. | KVITEK, R.G., et al.; "Victoria Land Latitudinal Gradient Project: Benthic Marine Habitat Characterization"; California State University; Monterey Bay; Field Report; February 25, 2004 | |
| | 164. | LANGERAAR, W.; "Surveying and Charting of the Seas"; Elsevier Oceanography Series; Volume 37; September, 1983; page 321 | |
| | 165. | MANLEY, J.E.; "Development of the Autonomous Surface Craft 'Aces'"; Oceans '97 MTS/IEEE Conference Proceedings; October 1997; pp. 827- 832 | |
| | 166. | MANLEY, J.E., et al.; "Evolution of the Autonomous Surface Craft 'AutoCat'"; Oceans 2000 MTS/IEEE Conference and Exhibition; Volume 1; September 2000; pp. 403-408 | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 9 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 167. | MELVIN, G., et al.; Commercial fishing vessels, automatic acoustic logging systems and 3D data visualization"; ICES; Journal of Marine Science; Vol. 59; Issue 1; 2002; pp. 179-189 | |
| | 168. | NEWMAN, P.M.; "MOOS-Mission Orientated Operating Suite"; Department of Ocean Engineering; Massachusetts Institute of Technology; 2002 | |
| | 169. | OLLIVIER, F., et al.; "Side scan sonar using phased arrays for high resolution imaging and wide swath bathymetry"; IEEE Proceedings on Radar, Sonar and Navigation; Volume 143; Issue 3; June 1996; pp. 163-168 | |
| | 170. | PRICKETT, T.; "Underwater Inspection of Coastal Structures"; The REMR Bulletin; Vol. 14; No. 2; August, 1997; | |
| | 171. | PRATSON, L.F., et al.; "Introduction to advances in seafloor mapping using sidescan sonar and multibeam bathymetry data"; Marine Geophysical Research; Springer Netherlands; Volume 18; Issue 6; 1996; pp. 601-605 | |
| | 172. | PRYOR, Donald E.; "Theory and Test of Bathymetric Side Scan Sonar"; Office of Charting and Geodetic Services; National Ocean Service; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration; Post 1987; pp. 379-384 | |
| | 173. | SHONO, K., et al.; "Integrated Hydro-Acoustic Survey Scheme for Mapping of Sea Bottom Ecology"; Ocean Research Institute; Tokyo, Japan; November 2004 | |
| | 174. | TREVORROW, M.V., et al.; "Description and Evaluation of a Four-Channel, Coherent 100-kHz Sidescan Sonar"; Defence R&D Canada-Atlantic; December 2004 | |
| | 175. | VAGANAY, J., et al.; "Experimental validation of the Moving Long Base-Line Navigation Concept"; 2004 IEEE/OES Autonomous Underwater Vehicles; June 2004 | |
| | 176. | VANECK, T.W., et al.; "Automated Bathymetry Using an Autonomous Surface Craft"; Journal of the Institute of Navigation; Volume 43; Issue 4; Winter 1996; pp. 329-334 | |
| | 177. | WAITE, A.D.; "Sonar for Practising Engineers"; Third Edition; John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.; West Sussex, England; © 2002; 323 pages | |
| | 178. | Alpine Geophysical Data Programmer Model 485C Brochure and letter dated February 17, 1976; 2 pages | |
| | 179. | Benthos C3D Sonar Imaging System; "High Resolution Side Scan Imagery with Bathymetry"; Benthos, Inc.; © May 2002 | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 10 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 180. | Coastal Engineering Technical Note; "Side-Scan Sonar for Inspecting Coastal Structures"; U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station; Revised 11/1983 | |
| | 181. | ConCAT Containerised Catamaran; Inshore hydrographic survey vessel that fits in a container; In Cooperation with Uniteam International; Kongsberg Simrad AS; April 2004 | |
| | 182. | Datasonics SIS-1000 Seafloor Imaging System; Combined Chirp Side Scan Sonar/Chirp Sub-Bottom Profiling for high resolution seafloor imaging; One System, All the Answers; Benthos, Inc.; © 2000 | |
| | 183. | Detailed Sonar Transducer Product Information; Transducer Products; Side Scans; Models T36, T63, T62, and T403; 12/30/2003; Retrieved from internet: URL:http://www.neptune-sonar.com/products.as_btype=Side-Scan+Transducers&category=; 4 pages | |
| | 184. | Kongsberg Brochure EA 400 Survey; "A complete, integrated survey system"; Kongsberg Maritime AS; October 2003 | |
| | 185. | Kongsberg Brochure EA 400/600 "Sidescan Echo sounder with combined sidescan and depth soundings"; Kongsberg Maritime AS; May 2004 | |
| | 186. | EDO CORPORATION GLOBAL TECHNOLOGY REACH, Model 6400 Fan Beam Transducer; http:/web/archive/org/web/20040608054923/www.edoceramic.con/NavDucers.htm; June 3, 2004 | |
| | 187. | EM1110-2-1003; Department of the Army; U.S. Army Corps of Engineers; Engineering and Design; Hydrographic Surveying; April 1, 2004 | |
| | 188. | File Wrapper of Provisional Application Serial No. 60/552,769; Filed: 3/12/04; Applicant: Terrence Schoreder | |
| | 189. | Final Report; Early Implementation of Nearshore Ecosystem Database Project Tasks 2 and 3; [online]; Retrieved on 2/26/2010 from the Internet <URL: http://seafloor.csumb.edu/taskforce/html%202%20web/finalreport.htm; 90 pages | |
| | 190. | FishFinder L265 Instruction Manual; Raymarine; 79 pages | |
| | 191. | FishFinder L365 Instruction Manual; Raymarine; 83 pages | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 11 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 192. | FishFinder L470 Instruction Manual; Raymarine; 102 pages | |
| | 193. | FishFinder L750 Instruction Manual; Raymarine; 93 pages | |
| | 194. | GeoAcoustics; A Kongsberg Company; GeoSwath Plus Brochure; "Wide swath bathymetry and georeferenced side scan"; [Online]; Retrieved from the internet < URL: http://www.km.kongsberg.com/ks/web/nokbg0397.nsf/AllWeb/F4B7FD3461368388C1257599002D34BC/$file/GeoSwath-Plus-brochure.pdf?OpenElement; | |
| | 195. | GeoPulse; "GeoAcoustics Pinger Sub-Bottom Profiler; Retrieved from the Internet <URL: http://www.km.kongsberg.com/ks/web/nokbg0397.nsf/AllWeb/D1084BB7DD0FD21DC12574C0003E01EA/$file/GeoPulse_Profiler.pdf?OpenElement; GeoAcoustics Limited, UK; A Kongsberg Company | |
| | 196. | GlobalMap Sport; Installation and Operation Instructions; Lowrance Electronics, Inc.; ©1996; 61 pages | |
| | 197. | GPS Speed Correction; Sidescan Sonar; [online]; Retrieved from the Internet URL: <www.hydrakula.uni-kiel.de/downloads/Sidescan%20Sonar.doc; 10 pages | |
| | 198. | HUMMINBIRD 1197c Operations Manual; 11/6/2007; 188 pages | |
| | 199. | HUMMINBIRD 200DX DUAL BEAM Operations Manual; 43 pages | |
| | 200. | HUMMINBIRD 500 Series; 550, 560, 570 and 570 DI Operations Manual; © 2010; 84 pages | |
| | 201. | Humminbird: America's favorite Fishfinder – the leading innovator of Side Imaging technology; [Online]; [Retrieved on 03-16-2011]; Retrieved from the Internet <URL: http://www.humminbird.com/support/ProductManuals.aspx>; 20 pages | |
| | 202. | Humminbird: America's favorite Fishfinder – the leading innovator of Side Imaging technology; [Online]; [Retrieved on 03-16-2011]; Retrieved from the Internet <URL: http://www.humminbird.com/support/ProductManuals.aspx>; 5 pages | |
| | 203. | HUMMINBIRD Dimension 3 Sonar 600 Operations Manual; 24 pages | |
| | 204. | THE HUMMINBIRD GPS NAVIGATIONAL SYSTEM. NOTHING ELSE EVEN CLOSE.; HUMMINBIRD Marine Information Systems ®; 1992; 10 pages | |
| | 205. | HUMMINBIRD GPS NS 10 Operations Manual; 75 pages | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | | | | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | | | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | | | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | | | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | | | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet | 12 | of | 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

## OTHER DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 206. | HUMMINBIRD High Speed Transducer; 4 pages | |
| | 207. | HUMMINBIRD LCR 400 ID Operations Manual; 28 pages | |
| | 208. | HUMMINBIRD Marine Information Systems; Dimension 3 Sonar™; 1992; 16 pages | |
| | 209. | HUMMINBIRD "Matrix 35 Fishing System," Prior to August 2, 2003 | |
| | 210. | HUMMINBIRD Matrix 35 Fishing System; 2 pages | |
| | 211. | HUMMINBIRD MATRIX 55 AND 65 Operations Manual; ©2003; 40 pages | |
| | 212. | HUMMINBIRD Matrix 67 GPS Trackplotter Operations Manual; ©2003; 88 pages | |
| | 213. | HUMMINBIRD "Matrix 97 GPS Trackplotter Operations Manual" 2003 | |
| | 214. | HUMMINBIRD Matrix 97 Operations Manual; ©2003; 87 pages | |
| | 215. | HUMMINBIRD Matrix™ 87c Operations Manual; ©2004; 45 pages | |
| | 216. | HUMMINBIRD The New Wave of Wide; 1997; HUMMINBIRD WIDE®; fish wide open!®; 24 pages | |
| | 217. | HUMMINBIRD NS25 Operations Manual; 71 pages | |
| | 218. | HUMMINBIRD Piranha 1 & 2 Operation Guide; 5 pages | |
| | 219. | HUMMINBIRD Platinum ID 120 Operations Manual; 36 pages | |
| | 220. | HUMMINBIRD Platinum ID 600 Operations Manual; 18 pages | |
| | 221. | HUMMINBIRD "The Product Line>Matrix Products>Matrix 35" http://web.archive.org/web/20030404000447/www.humminbird.com/hb_Products.asp?ID, April 4, 2003 | |
| | 222. | Humminbird® Trolling Motor Mounted Transducer with Mount Assembly Brochure; © 2008 Humminbird®, Eufaula, AL; 2 pages | |
| | 223. | HUMMINBIRD Wide 3D Paramount Operations Manual; 44 pages | |
| | 224. | HUMMINBIRD Wide 3D View Operations Manual; 38 pages | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 13 of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 225. | HUMMINBIRD Wide 3D Vision Operations Manual; 38 pages | |
| | 226. | HUMMINBIRD Wide 3D Vista Operations Manual; 38 pages | |
| | 227. | HUMMINBIRD Wide Eye Operations Manual; 32 pages | |
| | 228. | HUMMINBIRD Wide Paramount Operations Manual; fish wide open!; 32 pages | |
| | 229. | HUMMINBIRD "Wideside"; Schematic; December 15, 1994; 5 pages | |
| | 230. | Hydro Products; A Tetra Tech Company; 4000 Series Gifft Precision Depth Recorder Product Brochure; date stamped 1977 | |
| | 231. | The Hydrographic Society – Corporate Member News – KONGSBERG SIMRAD; July 3, 2008; 7 pages | |
| | 232. | Imagenex Model 855 Brochure: Online; Documents retrieved from internet web archives as follows:<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20021023212210/http:/www.imagenex.com/Products/855_858/855_858.html; 1 page; Archived on October 23, 2002<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20021024124035/http:/www.imagenex.com/Products/855_858/855/855.html; 1 page; Archived on October 24, 2002<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20021024125254/http:/www.imagenex.com/Products/855_858/858/858.html; 1 page; Archived on October 24, 2002<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030424071306/http:/www.imagenex.com//855_Page_1.jpg; 1 page; Archived on April 24, 2003<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030424091547/http:/www.imagenex.com/855_Page_2.jpg; 1 page; Archived on April 24, 2003<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030424094158/http:/www.imagenex.com/855_Page_3.jpg; 1 page; Archived on April 24, 2003<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030424101301/http:/www.imagenex.com/855_Page_4.jpg; 1 page; Archived on April 24, 2003<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030424101939/http:/www.imagenex.com/855_Page_5.jpg; 1 page; Archived on April 24, 2003<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030424135458/http:/www.imagenex.com/855_Page_6.jpg; 1 page; Archived on April 24, 2003<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030424141232/http:/www.imagenex.com/855_Page_7.jpg; 1 page; Archived on April 24, 2003<br>URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030424143158/http:/www.imagenex.com/855_Page_8.jpg; 1 page; Archived on April 24, 2003 | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | | | | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | | | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | | | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | | | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | | | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet | 14 | of | 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 233. | Imagenex Model 872 "Yellowfin" Sidescan Sonar; Imagenex Technology Corp.; © 2004 - 2009 | |
| | 234. | The Imagenex SportScan; Digital Sidescan Sonar; "Redefining Image Clarity"; Imagenex Technology Corp.; © 2002 | |
| | 235. | Imagenex SportScan Digital SideScan Sonar Brochure: Online; Documents retrieved from internet web archives as follows: URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030212030409/http://www.imagenex.com/Products/products.html; 1 page; Archived on February 12, 2003 URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030214044915/http://www.imagenex.com/Products/SportScan/sportscan.html; 1 page; Archived on February 14, 2003 URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030222152337/http://www.imagenex.com/Products/SportScan/SportScan_Specs/sportscan_specs.html; 3 pages; Archived on February 22, 2003 URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030222161450/http://www.imagenex.com/Products/SportScan/FAQ_s/faq_s.html; 4 pages; Archived on February 22, 2003 URL:http://web.archive.org/web/20030419024526/http://www.imagenex.com/Products/SportScan/distributors.html; 2 page; Archived on April 19, 2003 | |
| | 236. | IMAGENEX (Various) Technical Specifications and User's Manual; Prior to August 2003 | |
| | 237. | Innomar – Products; "System Variants: SES Side Scan Option"; Retrieved from internet URL:http://www.innomar.com/produ_2000sidescan.htm; 12/30/2003; 2 pages | |
| | 238. | International Search Report and Written Opinion for Application No. PCT/US2010/039441 dated October 11, 2010 | |
| | 239. | International Search Report and Written Opinion for Application No. PCT/US2010/039443 dated October 6, 2010 | |
| | 240. | "ITC Application Equations for Underwater Sound Transducers"; Published by International Transducer Corporation, 1995, Rev. 8/00; 3 pages | |
| | 241. | Kelvin Hughes Transit Sonar; " . . . a new dimension in shallow water survey to assist in . . ."; Hydrography; Dredging; Salvage; Underwater Construction and Similar Works; March 1966; 8 pages | |
| | 242. | KLEIN DIGITAL SONAR SYSTEMS, "...The Next Generation From the World Leader in Side Scan Sonar and Sub-bottom Profiling Systems," 1988 | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | | | | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | | | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | | | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | | | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | | | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet | 15 | of | 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

**OTHER DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 243. | Lowrance HS-3DWN Transducer Assembly and Housing (Eagle IIID); August 1994 | |
| | 244. | Lowrance LCX-18C & LCX-19C Fish-finding Sonar & Mapping GPS; Operation Instructions; ©2002; 200 pages | |
| | 245. | Lowrance Transducers Product Information; 1 page | |
| | 246. | Navico Design Report of Raytheon Electronics Side Looker Transducer; 3/12/2010; 18 pages | |
| | 247. | NOAA: Nautical Charting general information from public records; [Online]; Retrieved on 9/10/2010 from the Internet < URL: http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/csdl/learn_hydroequip.html; 2 pages; http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/csdl/learn_hydroequip.html; 1 page; http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/csdl/PDBS.html; 2 pages; http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/hsd/pub.html; 1 page; http://www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov/hsd/fpm/fpm.htm; 1 page; http://www.ozcoasts.gov.au/geom_geol/toolkit/Tech_CA_sss.jsp; 12 pages | |
| | 248. | ONR Grant N66604-05-1-2983; Final Report; "Cooperative Autonomous Mobile Robots"; Retrieved from the Internet <URL: http://dodreports.com/pdf/ada463215.pdf; Post 2006 | |
| | 249. | Odom Echoscan™: For Sea Floor or Riverbed Surveys; Odom Hydrographic Systems; 04/26/2002 | |
| | 250. | Odom Hydrographic Systems ECHOSCAN Manual; Revision 1.11; 04/26/2002 | |
| | 251. | "Product Survey Side-Scan Sonar"; Hydro International Magazine; Volume 36; April 2004; pp. 36-39 | |
| | 252. | R/V QUICKSILVER; Hydrographic Survey Launch Bareboat or Crewed; F/V Norwind, Inc. | |
| | 253. | R/V TANGAROA; Fact Sheet; Explore lost worlds of the deep; Norfanz Voyage; May 10 to June 8, 2003 | |
| | 254. | SeaBat 8101 Product Specification; 240kHz Multibeam Echo Sounder; ©1999 RESON Inc.; Version 4.0 | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**SUBMITTED: NOVEMBER 15, 2011**

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | Examiner Name | HULKA, James R. |
| Sheet 16 | of 16 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

## OTHER DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 255. | SIMRAD EA 500; Hydrographic Echo Sounder; Product Specifications; Revision: September 1993 | |
| | 256. | SonarBeam Underwater Surveying System Using T-150P tow-fish hull mounted; [Online]; [Retrieved on 2/12/2010 from the Internet <URL: http://dsmeu.en.ec21.com/Remotely_Operated_Sonar_Boat_System--618904_2479905.html; 4 pages; http://www.remtechnology.en.ec21.com/Side_Scan_Sonar_Remotely_Operated--2902034.html; 4 pages; [Retrieved on 2/16/2010 from the Internet <URL: http://dsmeu.en.ec21.com/Remotely_Operated_Sonar_Boat_System--618904_2479905.html; 4 pages; http://www.remtechnology.en.ec21.com/Side_Scan_Sonar_Remotely_Operated--2902230.html; 7 pages | |
| | 257. | Starfish 450H; Sidescan System; Tritech International Limited; UK | |
| | 258. | T297-00-01-01 Transducer housing outline drawing; Neptune Sonar Ltd.; ©2002 | |
| | 259. | TECHSONIC INDUSTRIES, INC.; "Mask, Acoustic"; Schematic, May 24, 1996 | |
| | 260. | TECHSONIC INDUSTRIES, INC.; "Element, 455 kHz"; Schematic, June 13, 1996 | |
| | 261. | "Transducers Quad Beam," Prior to August 2, 2003 | |
| | 262. | U-Tech Company Newsletter | |
| | 263. | USACE, "Chapter 11, Acoustic Multibeam Survey Systems for Deep-Draft Navigation Projects," April 1, 2004 | |
| | 264. | Ultra III 3D Installation and Operation Instructions; EAGLE™; ©1994 | |
| | 265. | Westinghouse Publication; "Side-Scan Sonar Swiftly Surveys Subsurface Shellfish"; May 1970; 4 pages | |
| | 266. | Sonar Theory and Applications; Excerpt from Imagenex Model 855 Color Imaging Sonar User's Manual; Imagenex Technology Corp.; Canada; 8 pages | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

1316138

# PATENT SPECIFICATION

(11) 1316 138

DRAWINGS ATTACHED

(21) Application No. 28638/70 (22) Filed 12 June 1970

(23) Complete Specification filed 13 Aug. 1971

(44) Complete Specification published 9 May 1973

(51) International Classification G01S 9/68

(52) Index at acceptance

H4D G1A G4A5 G5A3A G5D

(72) Inventors DEREK LEONARD DICKINSON, JOHN GILBERT FRANKHAM and RODNEY JAMES SAUNDERS

(19) THE PATENT OFFICE LONDON

## (54) IMPROVEMENTS RELATING TO SONAR APPARATUS

(71) We, BRITISH AIRCRAFT CORPORATION LIMITED, a British company of 100 Pall Mall, London, S.W.1, do hereby declare the invention, for which we pray that a patent may be granted to us, and the method by which it is to be performed, to be particularly described in and by the following statement:—

This invention is concerned with sonar systems for determining the depth of the seabed and the presence of objects on the seabed. Apparatus embodying the invention may be used, for example, to survey the seabed contours in order to increase the safety of navigation where the under-keel clearance is small and may be carried on ships or other waterborne craft.

Sonar system are known in which a pulse of acoustic energy is transmitted into the sea with a radiation pattern substantially consisting of a single lobe which is very narrow in plan view. For example, a train of such pulses can be broadcast from the side of a ship which is moving forward, the speed of forward movement and the interval between the pulses being such that a succession of parallel, closely spaced seabed contours are derived.

Normally, the transmitted pulse "runs along" the seabed in a straight line. The pulse does not actually run along the seabed, instead it is broadcast over a fairly wide angle in elevation and reaches the seabed along this line at progressively later instants, but the concept of the pulse running along the seabed is a convenient one for the purposes of explanation.

It will be clear that in determining these seabed contours, the angular movement of the ship has to be taken into account. Thus, if the ship yaws, then it is necessary to swing the radiation pattern with respect to the ship so that the pulse is actually transmitted in the direction which it would have hade in the absence of yaw. If the ship pitches, a different kind of error results and this is more difficult to correct.

We have found that if the ship pitches, the pulse appears to run along the seabed in a straight line parallel to the line obtained in the absence of pitching but that this can be compensated by introducing a correction, in a manner to be described. According to the present invention, the sonar transmitter has in one plane a radiation pattern made up of a number of angularly spaced lobes and the apparatus further includes, for correcting data derived by sonar apparatus for error due to ship pitching movement, control means operative in response to any specific value of a control input signal to swing different lobes to different extents in a direction perpendicular to the said plane, the extent of swing of each lobe depending on the value of the control signal; when the apparatus is arranged on a ship so that the said plane is perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the ship and the lobes are downwardly directed, and when the control signal varies with the pitching angle of the ship, the angle of swing for any lobe is in the yaw direction and varies in magnitude with the pitching angle so as to reduce the effect of ship pitching movement on the direction of transmission of the lobe. It will be appreciated that in a practical case compensation must also be introduced for the movement of the ship in yaw, the effect of which is to cause the whole sonic radiation pattern to swing in yaw. Consequently, in addition to the selective displacements of the different lobes to correct for pitching, there must be an overall correction to each lobe to counter the yawing movement of the ship.

For reasons to be explained, if the seabed field of interest includes the area immediately under the ship, a correction in yaw alone could not provide the necessary pitch compensation. To overcome this difficulty, in the preferred form of apparatus we arrange for the transducers responsible for the different lobes to form a curved array in the vertical plane. Because of this curvature, the overall correction to each lobe to counter the yawing movement of the ship will be calculated by a procedure which is the reverse of that employed for pitch correction, i.e. the lobe making the greatest angle with the seabed (vertically downwards) has no yaw component and so requires no correction; that making the least angle has only a yaw component and so requires full correction.

The angular deviation of the radiation pattern is preferably achieved by introducing phase differences between radiation from different transducers along a horizontal transmitter strip, that is to say by progressively delaying the arrival of an energising waveform at the transducers along the strip.

In order that the invention may be better understood, an explanation of the correction and an example of apparatus embodying the invention will now be described with reference to the accompanying drawings, in which:—

Figure 1a is a diagram illustrating the problem;

Figure 1b shows diagrammatically the curved transducer mounting;

Figures 2a and 2b are diagrams showing in elevation and plan the radiation lobes of the sonar transmitter;

Figure 3 shows a transmitter panel carrying a number of transducer arrays; and

Figure 4 is a block diagram of a cricuit for one transmitter transducer array.

In Figure 1a, a ship 10 carrying the transducers has a horizontal fore-and-aft axis 11. The ship is a distance *d* above the seabed and in the absence of ship movement, the pulse appears to run out over the seabed along the line 12. If the ship pitches, so that the ship's "vertical" makes an angle $\theta$ with the true vertical, then the line of intersection of the transmitted pulse with the seabed is a line 13 parallel with the line 12 and displaced therefrom by a distance depending upon the angle of pitch.

It will be appreciated that in the course of a pitching movement, the angle of pitch of the ship varies continuously. Consequently, the line 13 will move away from and then back towards the line 12 and will then cross over to the other side of the line 12, and so on. For one particular pitching angle $\theta$, the distance between the lines 12 and 13 is d tan $\theta$, as can be seen from a consideration of the distance between point P, imediately below the ship, and point $P_1$. If we now consider a point $P_2$ which is the intersection with the seabed, of a pulse transmitted at an angle $\gamma$ in the vertical plane, when the ship has a pitch angle of $\theta$ this intersection will be moved to point $P_3$. It will be seen that approximately the same error could result if the ship had no pitching motion but had an angle of yaw of which the tangent is approximately

$$\frac{d \tan \theta}{R},$$

i.e. approximately

$$\frac{d \tan \theta}{d \tan \gamma},$$

Thus, if the beam transmitted at this angle in the elevational plane is given such a yaw angle (in addition to any yaw angle required to compensate for yaw movement of the ship), the point of intersection of the beam transmitted with an angle $\gamma$ in the vertical plane, with the seabed, will again be $P_2$. For each point along the line 12 (except immediately under the ship) there is an angle of yaw which, if applied to the beam, will correct for the pitching angle $\theta$ of the ship. Because this angle of yaw includes in the divisor the term d tan $\gamma$ representing the distance from a point below the ship to the point at which the wave reaches the seabed, transmitted waves in different ones of the vertically spaced arrays, having different values of R, will be transmitted with different yaw angles to compensate for a given pitching angle of the ship.

This analysis is only approximate and a correction in yaw alone could not provide the pitch compensation necessary for the seabed area directly under the ship. In the preferred form of the invention, we overcome this difficulty by using a curved array. Figure *1b* shows diagrammatically in a vertical plane the curved mounting 14 for the transducers and the lobes 16 leaving the transducers.

Figure *2a* is a diagram representing an elevation through the survey ship and shows the different lobes 16, side by side in the vertical plane but slightly overlapping one another. Figure *2b* shows in plan view the lobes 16 overlapping one another along the line 12 on the seabed. In this example, six lobes 16 are shown but there can be more than this, for example ten lobes. The subsidiary lobes 18 can be disregarded for the present purposes. As before, in the absence of differential swinging of the lobes to counteract pitching movement of the ship, the multi-lobe pulse seems to run out from a point under the ship along the common axis of the overlapping lobes.

Figure 3 shows a transmitter panel for obtaining the pattern of angularly spaced lobes in the vertical plane. The projector arrays 20, consisting of a number of horizontally spaced transducers, are vertically spaced from one another on a curved panel 22, the different angles of the arrays (in the vertical plane) due to this curvature being responsible for the different directions of the lobes in the vertical plane, giving substantially even illumination of the full 90° lateral elevation sector and also allowing full pitch and yaw correction. If there are ten lobes, there are ten protector arrays, and in one example, each array had 32 transducer elements, the adjacent elements being separated horizontaly by a half-wavelength to provide a steering sector of 30°, with the phase shift available in the drive circuits of this example.

Figure 4 is a block diagram of the electronic circuits for one transmitter transducer array. The transducer elements of an array are all driven at the carrier frequency but with variable relative phases, adjustment of the signal phases in a progressive manner across the array allowing the formation of a steerable transmitted beam of narrow width and minimal side lobes.

The phase difference between transmitted signals is derived in the following manner. The carrier frequency $f$ is produced in this example by counting down from a crystal oscillator of frequency $64f$, using a separate 6-bit binary counter for each transducer. Clearly, the timing or phase of the counter outputs can be varied in discrete steps of $1/64f$ seconds by alternation of the timing of gates which feed the clock signals to the digital counters.

In this example, the transmission pulse has a minimum repetition frequency of 3 per second and is intiated by a pulse of length 316 microseconds occurring every 333 milliseconds. This pulse opens gate 30 (Figure 4) and the gate is held open for the period of 316 microseconds. The pulse is generated by a conventional counter circuit driven by the master clock.

The pulses from the master clock passing through the gate 30 are applied to a counter 32 which has a number of parallel connections between its counting stages and corresponding stages in a timing logic circuit 34. The timing logic circuit is controlled by a beam angle demand signal. As an example of this control, if the beam angle is such as to require delays between adjacent transducer transmissions equivalent to the period of five of the pulse periods of the master clock, the circuit 34 will provide one pulse in very five from the master clock at its output. These selected pulses are counted in a 5-bit counter 36 which has 32 output connections, that is to say one for each of its possible counting combinations. These 32 output connections go to beam phase logic circuits 37 which control thirtytwo phase gates 38. The effect of this is that the thirty-two phase gates open in turn at equal intervals (five pulse periods of the master clock, in the example described). The thirtytwo phase gates 38 also receive the master clock signal and thus open in sequence to pass this signal through to thirtytwo 6-bit digital counters 40. These act to divide the master clock pulses which they receive by sixtyfour. It will be seen that in the example described the first counter 40 would provide output pulses at 0, 64, 128 . . . . pulse periods of the master clock; the second digital counter would provide output pulses at 5, 69, 133 . . . . pulse periods om the master clock; and so on. Thus, the output of each digital counter is a pulse train at the carrier frequency and each digital counter 40 drives a corresponding transducer 42 through a buffer circuit 44 and a resonant drive circuit 46. The drive circuits are resonant power amplifiers operating at the carrier frequency. Silicon power transistors switch through pulse transformers to provide the final drive for each transducer.

In this way the relative phases of the transducer transmissions is controlled in accordance with the beam angle demand, and the phase differences have the effect of adjusting the angle of the radiation lobe of the transmitter.

If desired, the width of the pulse which opens gate 30 can be decreased, in order to permit the scan rate to be increased and to allow the vessel to travel faster while maintaining the same forward sounding spacing. However, this is achieved at the expense of depth range.

As explained above, with the curved array the selective or incremental demand for ship pitch and yaw is different for each strip. The demand is computed using signals from the ship reference platform which represent the pitch and yaw angles.

The relative phasing of the incoming signal as measured by the different transducer elements provides the angle of the returning signal with respect to the array. To reconstruct seabed contours, this angle is corrected for ship roll and is used in conjunction with range information as measured by the interval between transmission and reception of the pulse.

WHAT WE CLAIM IS:—

1. Sonar apparatus including a sonar transmitter having in one plane a radiation pattern made up of a number of angularly spaced lobes and further including, for correcting data derived by the sonar apparatus for pitching error when the apparatus is mounted on a ship, control means operative in response to any specific value of a control input signal to swing different lobes of the radiation pattern to different extents in a direction perpendicular to the said plane, the extent of swing of each lobe depending on the value of the control signal, whereby when the apparatus is arranged on a ship so that the said plane is perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the ship and the lobes are downwardly directed, and when the control signal varies with the pitching angle of the ship, the amount of swing for any lobe is in the yaw direction

and varies in amount with the pitching angle so as to reduce the effect of pitching movement on the direction of transmission of the lobe.

2. Apparatus in accordance with Claim 1, including transmitter transducers which form, in the said plane, a curved array.

3. Apparatus in accordance with Claim 1, in which the transmitter includes transducers spaced along a transmitter strip extending in a direction perpendicular to the said plane, and in which the swinging of the lobes in the said direction is effected by progressively delaying the application of an energising waveform to the transducers spaced along the strip.

4. Apparatus in accordance with Claim 3, including a pulse generator, dividing means for applying to the transducers in a strip pulses at a frequency which is a sub-multiple of the frequency of the said pulse generator, and means whereby the application of the sub-multiple pulses to the different transducers along a strip is progressively delayed in order to swing the radiation patterns of the transducer strip through a beam angle dependent upon the delay between adjacent transducers.

5. Apparatus in accordance with Claim 4, in which the means for progressively delaying the application of the pulses to the transducers includes means responsive to the pulse generator output and to the required beam angle to select from the pulse generator output pulses separated by a delay corresponding to the required beam angle, and distributor means for applying successive ones of the selected pulses to different ones of a series of gates which control, respectively, the series of transducers in a transmitter strip.

6. A waterborne craft carrying apparatus in accordance with any one of Claims 1—5, so arranged that the said lobes are angularly spaced in a plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the craft and the swinging of the lobes is effected in yaw.

7. A waterborne craft in accordance with Claim 6, in which the sonar apparatus further includes means for additionally selectively rotating the radiated lobes in yaw in accordance with movement of the craft in yaw.

8. Apparatus in accordance with Claim 1, substantially as herein described with reference to Figure 4 of the accompanying drawings.

For the Applicants,
GILL, JENNINGS & EVERY,
Chartered Patent Agents,
51/52, Chancery Lane, London, W.C.2.

Printed for Her Majesty's Stationery Office, by the Courier Press, Leamington Spa, 1973.
Published by The Patent Office, 25 Southampton Buildings, London, WC2A 1AY, from which copies may be obtained.

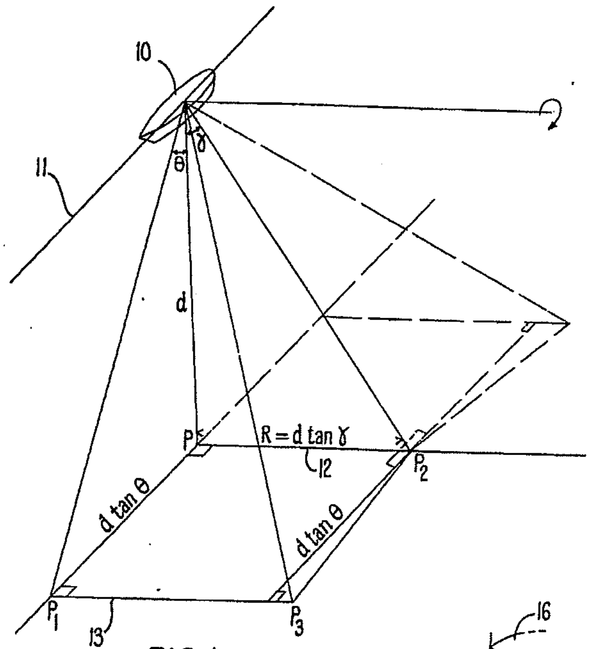



FIG. 1a

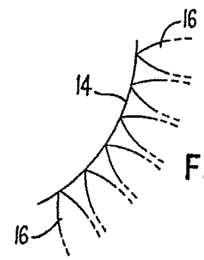



FIG. 1b

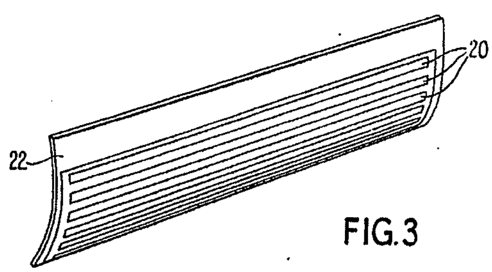



FIG. 3

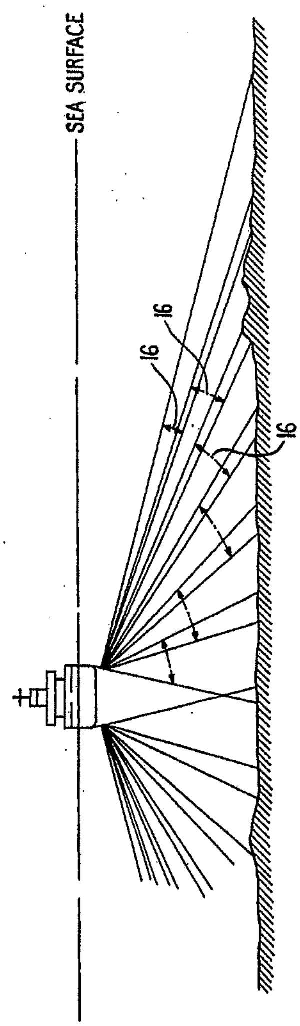



FIG.2a

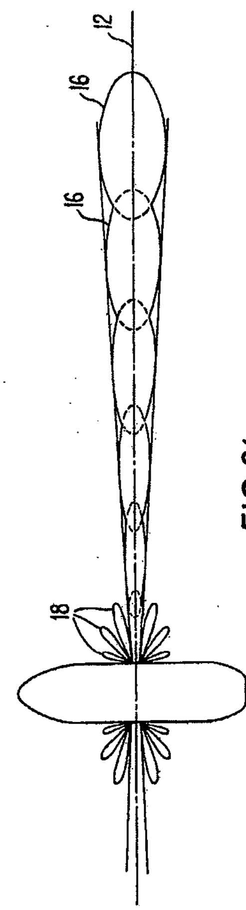


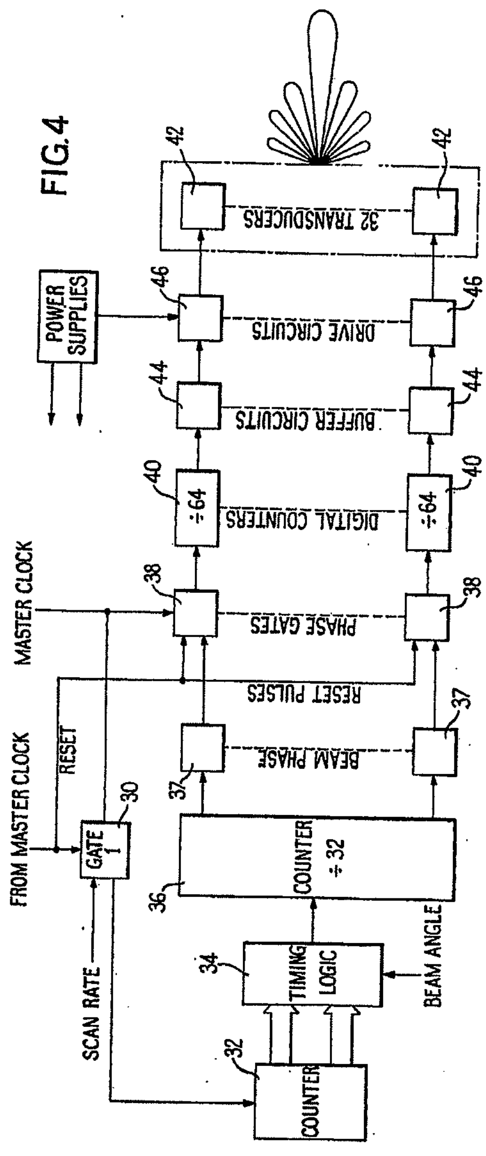

FIG.2b

1316138 COMPLETE SPECIFICATION

3 SHEETS *This drawing is a reproduction of the Original on a reduced scale*

Sheet 3

FIG.4



Espacenet

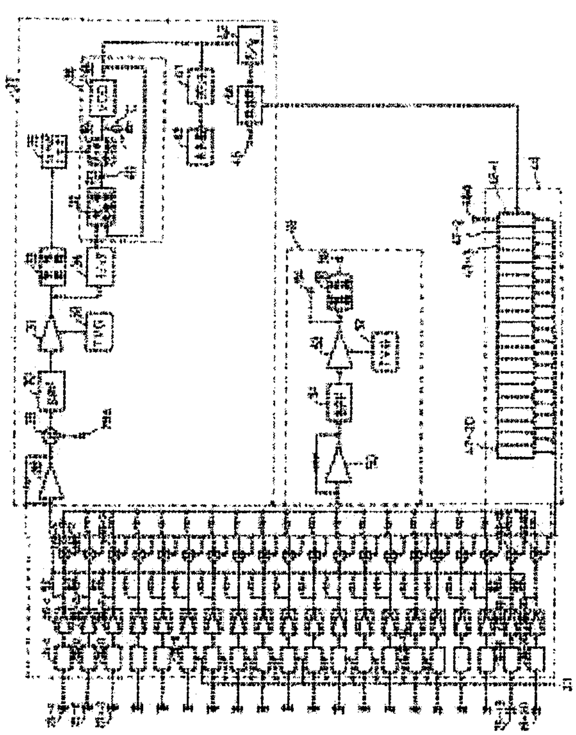
# Bibliographic data: JP 57046173 (A)

## SIDE LOOKING SONAR


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Publication date:** | 1982-03-16 | |
| **Inventor(s):** | MINOHARA KIYOMI; SASAKURA TOYOKI; ENDOU YASUHIKO + | |
| **Applicant(s):** | FURUNO ELECTRIC CO + | |
| **Classification:** | **- international:** | ***G01S15/87; G01S15/89; G01S7/52; G05D1/12;*** (IPC1-7): G01S15/89; G01S7/52; G05D1/08 |
| | **- European:** | G01S15/89B |
| **Application number:** | JP19800123215 19800904 | |
| **Priority number (s):** | JP19800123215 19800904 | |
| **Also published as:** | • JP 62022111 (B)<br>• JP 1412157 (C) | |


### Abstract of JP 57046173 (A)


PURPOSE:To receive only the reflected wave abeam to the advancing direction all the times in the case the position of a school of fish is detected from a ship underway, by sensing the doppler shift of the reflected wave obtained by a transmitted wave, and compensating the amount of yawing. CONSTITUTION:Vibrators 25-1-25-20 constituting a wave transmitting and recieving body are provided in parallel with a hull in one line. The output of the 100kHz crystal oscillator is divided, and the signals comprising 60.65kHz for display and for measuring the doppler shift are given to the vibrators 25-6-25-15 from duplexers 24-6-24-15 via a power amplifier 23. Then sonic waves having broad directivity is transmitted. The reflected waves are inputted to the vibrators 25-1-25-20 with narow directivity, given to mixers 48-1-48-20 via the duplexers 24-1-24-20, and sent to a recorder display part 49.; A part of the input is inputted to a doppler sensing part 27, where a yawing angle is computed 44 from the sensed doppler shift and ship's speed data from a terminal 45, and the result is given to a tilt control part 46. The compensation is performed by using the output of the control part 46.

⑲ 日本国特許庁 (JP)　　⑪ 特許出願公開

⑫ 公開特許公報 (A)　　昭57—46173

| ⑤Int. Cl.³ | 識別記号 | 庁内整理番号 | |
|---|---|---|---|
| G 01 S 7/52 | | 7741—5 J | ㊸公開 昭和57年(1982) 3 月16日 |
| 15/89 | | 7741—5 J | 発明の数 1 |
| G 05 D 1/08 | | 7052—5H | 審査請求 未請求 |

(全 11 頁)

⑤サイドルツキングソナー

㉑特　願　昭55—123215
㉒出　願　昭55(1980) 9 月 4 日
⑫発明者　箕原喜代美
西宮市芦原町 9 番52号古野電気株式会社内
⑫発明者　笹倉豊喜
西宮市芦原町 9 番52号古野電気株式会社内
⑫発明者　遠藤保彦
西宮市芦原町 9 番52号古野電気株式会社内
⑦出願人　古野電気株式会社
西宮市芦原町 9 番52号
⑭代理人　弁理士　東島隆治

明　細　書

1. 発明の名称

サイドルツキングソナー

2. 特許請求の範囲

(1) 多数の振動子を、航行体の適所に一列に配列し、各振動子より斜め下方向に送出された音波の反射波を表示しつつ航行体の進行に従つて水中をスキヤニングするサイドルツキングソナーにおいて、

上記振動子により受信される信号のドツプラーシフト量を検出する検出手段と、この検出量と船速信号とにより航行体の進行方向に対する船首方位のずれを算出する算出手段と、この算出信号に基づいて送受波信号の総合指向性を常に設定方向に向けるように上記振動子相互の位相を制御する位相制御手段とを具備することを特徴とするサイドルツキングソナー。

(2) 第1の周波数から成る所定時間幅を持つた第1の信号と、これと組になつた第2の周波数から成る微小時間幅を持つた第2の信号とを送出する送信部と、

前記第2の信号の反射波信号に基づき水中の物標を表示する表示部とを更に具備すると共に、

前記検出手段は前記各振動子より受信される反射波信号を加算増幅する第1の増幅器及び該第1の増幅器の出力中の第1の信号からドツプラーシフト周波数を検出するドツプラーシフト検出手段を有するものであり、

前記算出手段は上記第1の周波数の反射波信号のドツプラーシフト量と、船速信号とにより航行体の進行方向に対する船首方向のずれを算出する演算部を有するものであり、

前記位相制御手段は、前記演算部の信号に基づいて、上記第2の信号に対する振動子総合指向性を常に設定方向に向けるように上記振動子相互の位相を制御するものであることを特徴とする特許請求の範囲第1項記載のサイドルツキングソナー。

(3) 前記送信部は小振幅の第1の信号部に引き続いて大振幅の第2の信号部を送信することを特徴とする特許請求の範囲第2項記載のサイドルツキ

ングソナー。

(4) 前記ドップラーシフト検出手段は

第1の信号の反射波のみを通過させる第1のバンドパスフイルタと、

前記第1のバンドパスフイルタの出力信号の周波数を測定する周波数測定手段と、

前記周波数測定手段の出力に応じてその周波数に対応する電圧を出力するF／V変換器と、を具備することを特徴とする特許請求の範囲第2項記載のサイドルッキングソナー。

(5) 前記周波数測定手段は

前記第1のバンドパスフイルタの出力を所定レベルの信号に変換するリミッタと、

前記リミッタの出力を入力とし、前記第1のバンドパスフイルタの出力信号の有無により開閉されるアナログスイッチをローパスフイルタの素子前に挿入することによつて入力信号に等しい周波数の連続出力を得るPLL回路と、を具備することを特徴とする特許請求の範囲第4項記載のサイドルッキングソナー。

(6) 前記位相制御手段は、

前記演算部の信号に基づいて、各振動子数に対して位相差が少しづつずらされた信号群を発生するチルトコントロール部と、

前記チルトコントロール部の信号群を反射波信号と混合することによつて、受信部の指向方向を所定の方向に変換するミクサと、

前記ミクサの出力信号群を加算増幅する第2の増幅器と、

前記第2の信号部に対応する周波数変換された信号のみを通過させる第2のバンドパスフイルタと、を具備することを特徴とする特許請求の範囲第2項記載のサイドルッキングソナー。

(7) 前記チルトコントロール部は

位相比較器、ローパスフイルタ、電圧制御発振器を有し、位相比較器の二入力の同相で入力されるフエーズロックドループ回路を有する多数の位相制御器の各出力端子を次段の入力端子に接続して縦続接続し、該各ローパスフイルタと電圧制御発振器との間にローパスフイルタと前記演算部の出力を加算する加算器を設け該加算器出力を電圧制御発振器の入力としたことを特徴とする特許請求の範囲第6項記載のサイドルッキングソナー。

(8) 周波数が所定値から所定値まで連続的に変化するFM信号を発生する送信部と、

前記反射波信号のパルス幅を圧縮するパルス圧縮手段を含み、該圧縮された信号により物標を表示する表示部とを更に具備すると共に、

前記検出手段は、前記各振動子より受信される反射波信号を加算増幅する第1の増幅器及び前記第1の増幅器の出力信号に基づいてドップラーシフト量を検出するドップラーシフト検出手段を有するものであり、

前記算出手段は、ドップラーシフト量と船速信号とにより航行体の進行方向に対する船首方向のずれを算出する演算部を有するものであり、

前記位相制御手段は、前記演算部の信号に基づいて振動子の総合指向性を常に一定方向に向けるように上記振動子相互の位相を制御するものであることを特徴とする特許請求の範囲第1項記載のサイドルッキングソナー。

(9) 前記表示部のパルス圧縮手段は一送信波に対応する一つの反射波信号を記憶できる容量を持つ記憶素子と、

送信周波数の変化に対応する重みづけをもつて前記記憶素子の並列出力を加算するものであることを特徴とする特許請求の範囲第8項記載のサイドルッキングソナー。

3 発明の詳細な説明

本発明はサイドルッキングソナーにおける駆動装置の改良に関する。

船の航行中に海底の鳥瞰図や魚群の位置を見出すために、船の真横下方に扇形に超音波を発射してその反射波をXYレコーダ等に表示するサイドルッキングソナーが用いられる。サイドルッキングソナーの発音体はヨーイングによる誤表示を防止するため船に直接は取付けられず、通常船に曳航されるテユプレッサーの側部に設けられていた。そのため取扱いは複雑になる欠点があつた。

本発明は発音体を船の側部に直接設け、同時に

船のヨーイングを補正することにより誤表示を防止することのできるサイドルッキングソナーを提供することを目的とする。

次に第1図を参照しつつ本発明の原理について説明する。第1図において船速$V_s$の船がP1の位置にある場合に船首が進行方向であるY方向に正確に向いていたとすると、音波は進行方向の真横のX方向に発信される。船が位置P2においてヨーイングにより船首方向がY方向より$\theta$だけ偏向した場合、音波の発信方向も図示のようにY方向側に$\theta$だけずれることになる。このとき船の速度ベクトル$\dot{V}_s$は船首方向と音波の発信方向のベクトル成分に分解することができ、夫々の大きさは$V_s\cos\theta$，$V_s\sin\theta$となる。そのため図示のP3の位置に物標があつた場合その反射波の周波数はドップラー効果によつてシフトし、そのシフト量$f_D$は次式で表される。

$$f_D = \frac{2V_s\sin\theta}{c} f_0 \qquad \cdots(1)$$

但し上式において$f_0$は送信周波数cは音波の水中での速度（1500m/S）である。

船のヨーイング角はせいぜい±10°程度であるので、$V_s\sin\theta \doteqdot V_s\theta$が成立つ。これを(1)式に代入すると

$$f_D = \frac{2V_s\theta}{c} \cdot f_0$$

となり、この式は次のように変形できる。

$$\theta = \frac{c}{2V_s f_0} \cdot f_D \qquad \cdots(2)$$

この式において、音速c、船速$V_s$及び音波の送信周波数$f_0$は既知であるから、ドップラーシフト量$f_D$が求まればヨーイング角$\theta$を求めることができる。本願ではこのようにして求めたヨーイング角$\theta$に基づいて、第1図に破線で示すように船の進行方向から正しく90°異なるX方向に補正した方向の音波を用いるものである。

サイドルッキングソナーでは送受波体1として第2図に示すように多数の振動子2－1，2－2，…2－5を一列に配列したものが用いられる。周知のようにこれらの振動子の送信時間を微小時間づつ順次ずらせることにより所定方向に音波を送信でき、受信時間を同様にずらせれば所定方向の音波を受信することができる。本願では音波の送信時には広い指向性を有する音波を送信し、受信時にX方向からの音波を受信すべく補正している。

次に本発明の構成を実施例につき図面を参照しつつ説明する。第3図及び第4図は本発明の一実施例における夫々送信部及び受信部を示す。第3図において、発振器10は水晶による例えば100KHzの正確な基準発振器であり、その出力は1/100分周器11を介しててい倍器12，13，14及び15に与えられる。てい倍器12，13，14，15はPLL（フエーズロツクドループ）回路を含むものであつて入力の1KHzの周波数の信号を夫々55倍、135倍、65倍及び60倍にてい倍する。1/100分周器の出力は更にサイドルッキングソナーの測定レンジを切換えるレンジ切換器16に与えられる。レンジ切換器16は測定レンジの切換に対応して送信周期を定めるもので、水中での音速に対応させ例えば100mレンジのとき134mS，500mレンジのとき666mSの周期の信号を発生させる分周器である。パルス発生器17，18はレンジ切換器16の出力に基づいて所定長のパルスを発生するものであつて例えば単安定マルチバイブレータから成る。パルス発生器17は、レンジ切換器16の出力に対応して例えば50mS程度の十分長い幅のパルスを発生し、パルス発生器18はこの長い幅のパルスの終了と同時に例えば1mS程度の短いパルスを発生するものである。パルス発生器17とてい倍器14の出力はアンド回路19－1に、パルス発生器18とてい倍器15の出力はアンド回路19－2に夫々与えられ、夫々の論理積出力がオア回路20に与えられる。パルス発生器17の出力は抵抗R1を介して、パルス発生器18の出力はそのまま加算器21に加えられる。オア回路20の出力は被変調信号、加算器21の出力は変調信号として変調器22に与えられる。変調器22の出力はパワーアンプ23に与えられる。パワーアンプ23の出力は送受切換器24－6～24－15を介して振動子25－6～25－15に与えられる。ここで送信時に振動子25－1～25－20のうち中間の振動子25－6～25－15のみを

用いるのは送信される音波の指向性を受信時よりもブロードにするためである。

次に第4図を参照しつつ受信部について説明する。振動子25-1～25-20は船体に平行に一列に設けられ送受波体を構成するものであつて、夫々送受切換器24-1～24-20を介してプリアンプ26-1～26-20に接続される。プリアンプ26-1～26-20の出力は夫々等しい抵抗値を持つ固定抵抗R2を介してドップラー検出部27の増幅器28に接続される。ドップラー検出部27は反射波の中からドップラー効果に基づく周波数の変化を検出して船のヨーイング角θを求める回路であつて、その構成を以下に詳述する。増幅器28の出力はてい倍器12の出力と共にミクサー29に与えられる。ミクサー29は反射波の60KHz及び65KHzの信号と入力端子29aより与えられるてい倍器12の55KHzの信号を混合するもので、その出力端子には両者の和及び差の125KHz,5KHz及び135KHz,10KHzの信号が得られる。ミクサー29の出力は10KHzを通過周波数とするバンドパスフイルタ30を介して10KHzの信号だけが増幅器31に与えられる。増幅器31はタイムバリアブルゲインコントローラ(以下TVGという。)32に基づいてその増幅度を変化させる増幅器である。TVGは遠方からの反射波信号レベルが低下するため走査時間の経過に従つて増幅度を上げるものである。増幅器31の出力は整流回路33及びリミツタ34に与えられる。整流回路33は入力信号を整流平滑するものでその出力はシユミツトトリガ35に与えられる。シユミツトトリガ35の方形波出力はPLL36の制御信号となる。リミツタ34は入力信号レベルを一定にするものであつてその出力はPLL36の入力端子に与えられる。PLL36はリミツタ34からの信号が与えられてロツクがかかつた時入力信号に等しい周波数の信号を発生するものである。PLL36は図示のように位相比較器37と電圧制御発振器(以下VCOという)38の間のローパスフイルタ40を構成する抵抗R3とコンデンサCとの間にアナログスイツチ39を設けており、このアナログスイツチ39はシユミツトトリガ35の出力の有無により開閉するものである。PLL36の出力はカウンタ41及びF/V変換器42に与えられる。カウンタ41の計数値は表示器43により表示される。F/V変換器42は入力信号をその周波数に対応する電圧に変換するものであつて、その出力は次段の演算部44に送られる。演算部44には更に端子45より船速$V_s$に対応するデータが入力されており、前述の式(2)に基づいてヨーイング角θが演算により求められる。演算部44のヨーイング角θの出力は次段のチルトコントロール部46に与えられる。チルトコントロール部46は振動子数(本実施例では20)に等しい段数を持つ位相制御器47-1～47-20を具備するものであつて、音波の受信方向をヨーイング角に応じて変えるために必要な信号を発生する。初段の位相制御器47-1には端子46aを介して、てい倍器13により135KHzの信号が加えられる。

ここでチルトコントロール部46について第5図を参照しつつ説明する。チルトコントロール部46は本図に示すようにPLL回路を含む位相制御器47-1,47-2～47-20の各出力端子を次段の入力端子に接続して縦続接続したものである。各位相制御器は二つの入力が同相である場合にロツクがかかる位相比較器111-1～111-20、ローパスフイルタ(以下LPFと略す。)112-1～112-20,VCO113-1～113-20によりPLL回路を構成しており、各ローパスフイルタと電圧制御発振器の間に加算器114-1～114-20を設けたものである。加算器114-1～114-20は演算部44より与えられるヨーイング角θに対応する電圧信号と各LPF112-1～112-20の出力を加算して各VCO113-1～113-20に与える。各VCO113-1～113-20の出力は次段の位相制御器47-2～47-20に伝えられると共に、出力端子46-1～46-20から取り出され第4図に示すミクサ

48－1～48－20に与えられる。ミクサ48－1～48－20は振動子25－1～25－20より得られる反射波信号とチルトコントロール部46の各出力信号とを混合するものであり、混合出力は記録表示部49の増幅器50により全て加算されて増幅される。増幅器50の出力は反射波信号の短時間部分の周波数（60 KHz付近）とチルトコントロール部46の各出力（135 KHz）の差の周波数である75 KHzを通過域周波数とするバンドパスフイルタ51に与えられる。バンドパスフイルタ51の出力はTVG52によつて制御された増幅器24に与えられて増幅される。増幅器24の出力は出力端子25を介して表示部の処理回路（図示せず）に映像信号として伝えられる。更に整流回路26にも伝えられて整流され、ペンレコーダ用出力として端子27より出力される。

次に本実施例の動作につき図面を参照しつつ説明する。第6図(a)～(h)は上記実施例の各部の波形を示すものである。第3図において発振器10の100 KHzの出力は1/100分周器11により分周され、続いて各てい倍器12，13，14，15によつて夫々てい倍されて55 KHz，135 KHz，65 KHz及び60 KHzの周波数の信号を発生する。1/100分周器11の出力は更にレンジ切換器16により測定レンジに対応して分周されパルス発生器17に加えられる。今測定レンジを500mとすると前記のように666mSの周期の信号がレンジ切換器16よりパルス発生器17に加わる。第6図(a)はパルス発生器17の出力波形を示すものであつて測定レンジに対応する周期毎に所定幅のパルスを得る。このパルスの立下りに同期して第6図(b)に示すようにパルス発生器18より微小幅パルスを発生させる。これらの各パルスとてい倍器14，15の夫々65 KHz，60 KHzの信号とはアンド回路19－1，19－2に与えられ、各論理積出力がオア回路20に加えられる。各パルス発生器17，18の出力は又一定の重みづけを持つて加算器21により加算され、オア回路20の出力はこの加算器により変調される。第6図(c)は変調器22の出力を示すものであつて、65 KHzの周波数を持つ長い小振幅信号部aにひき続いて60 KHzの周波数を持つ微小時間の大振幅信号部bから成る信号が周期的に発生する。変調器22の信号はパワーアンプ23によつて電力増幅され、送受切換器24－6～24－15を介して各振動子25－6～25－15により送信される。ここで65 KHzの信号部aはドップラー効果による周波数のシフトを有効に検出するためにある程度の時間幅（例えば50mS）を必要とし従つてパワーアンプ23の負荷を軽減するため小振幅の信号を用いている。又60 KHzの信号部bは物標を検出するための微小幅で且つ大振幅の信号を用いている。

送信が時刻$t_1$において終了すると、送受切換器24－1～24－20は受信状態に切換えられる。以後の受信期間においては各振動子25－1～25－20より反射波信号が受信される。反射波信号は各プリアンプ26－1～26－20によつて増幅され、ドップラー検出部27の増幅器28により加算され増幅される。この加算された反射波信号を第6図(d)に示す。反射波信号はミクサ29に加えられて、てい倍器12の55 KHzの信号と混合される。次段のバンドパスフイルタ30は10 KHzが通過帯域であるため、反射波中65 KHzの周波数を持つ信号部aのみがバンドパスフイルタ30を介して増幅器31に加わり、増幅される。増幅された信号は第6図(e)に示すようにリミッタ34で一定レベルの信号に変換される。又整流回路33により整流、平滑されてシユミットトリガ35に加わる。第6図(f)はシユミットトリガ35の出力信号を示すものであつて信号部aに対応する反射波があつた場合にのみ信号を出力する。この信号はアナログスイッチ39の制御信号として用いられ、信号がある場合アナログスイッチ39を閉じ、信号がなくなればアナログスイッチ39を開放する。従つてリミッタ34の出力が与えられているPLL回路36において、アナログスイッチ39が閉じられた時点でPLL回路36がロックされると、PLL回路36よりリミ

ツタ34の出力と同じ周波数の信号が出力される。リミッタ34からの出力が停止した時点$t_3$では第6図(e)，(f)に示すようにアナログスイッチ39も同時に開放される。従つてその開放直前の電圧はローパスフイルタ40を構成するコンデンサCにより保持され，VCO38はそのまま同じ周波数で発振し続ける。第6図(g)はこの状態を示すものであり，リミッタ34より出力が得られる時刻$t_2$以後リミッタ34の出力に等しい周波数の連続信号を出力する。この信号はカウンタ41に加えられてその計数値は表示器43により表示される。同時にPLL回路36の出力信号はF/V変換器42によりその周波数に対応する直流電圧信号に変換される。しかるに第1図に示すように船首がヨーイングにより進行方向Yよりヨーイング角θだけ傾いている場合には，物標に対する向きの速度成分により前述のようにドップラー効果が生じる。従つて反射波信号の周波数は第6図(c)に示す信号部aに対して65KHzよりわずかにドップラーシフトされた周波数の信号となる。このドップラーシフト量はバンドパスフイルタ30，リミッタ34を通じてPLL回路36でもそのまま再現されているため，F/V変換器42の出力はドップラーシフト量$f_D$に対応したものとなる。演算部44はこのドップラーシフト量$f_D$と，端子45より与えられる船速データ$V_s$とから，式(2)に基づいて船のヨーイング角θを算出する。第6図(h)は演算部44の出力を示すものであり，ヨーイング角θに対応する直流信号がチルトコントロール部46に与えられる。チルトコントロール部46の入力端子46aにはてい倍器13から135KHzの信号が与えられており，位相制御器47－1がロックするとこの周波数に等しい135KHzの信号が出力端子47－1より出力される。しかるに演算部44より正の信号が与えられる場合，加算器114－1によりこの信号とLPF112－1の出力が加算されてVCO113－1に与えられる。そのためVCO113－1の出力はてい倍器13より与えられる信号より位相がわずかに所定量βだけ進むことになる。PLL回路47－1～47－20は縦続接続されているため各PLL回路の出力の位相は順次nβ(n=1，2…20)だけ進むことになつて，夫々ミクサ48－1～48－20に加わる。ミクサ48－1～48－20では反射波信号(周波数約65KHz及び60KHz)とこの位相制御器47－1～47－20の135KHzの信号とが混合される。従つて両者の和と差の周波数の信号である200KHz，195KHz，75KHz 70KHzの信号がその出力端子に得られ，これが増幅器50により加算されて増幅される。次段のバンドパスフイルタ51は75KHzを通過帯域としているため，第6図(c)に示す信号部b(60KHz)が75KHzに変換された信号のみが次段の増幅器53に加わる。しかるにチルトコントロール部46よりミクサ48－1～48－20に加えられる局部発振信号は夫々位相が少しづつ異なつているため受信される音波の位相も少しづつ異なることになる。従つて演算部44の出力電圧を適切に選択することによつて船のヨーイングを打消し，第1図に示すX方向からの信号だけを選択的に受信することが可能となる。増幅器53はTVG52により増幅率が制御されその出力は端子54又は整流回路55を介して端子56より出力される。

以上詳細に説明したように本願発明によれば送信信号を夫々周波数の異なる小振幅長時間の信号と大振幅短時間の信号の組として構成しており，このうちの小振幅長時間の信号によつてドップラーシフト量を検出し，それに応じて受信の指向方向を自動的に切換え，常に進行方向から真横の反射波のみを受信している。このためヨーイングによつて船の船首方向が偏向した場合であつても適切なサイドルッキング信号が得られ，画像の乱れをなくすことができる。そのため本願発明によれば従来のようにサイドルッキングソナーの送受波部のみを搭載するデュプレッサーを曳航する必要はなく，船体の側部に直接取り付けることが可能で取扱いも容易となる。

尚本実施例においては送信時に全振動子の半分だけを使用することによつて送信時の指向性を受

信時よりブロードにしているが、受信時と同じく全振動子を用いて受信時の指向性に等しくしてもよい。その場合には受信の際と同じくドップラーシフトから得られるヨーイング角に応じて送信方向を第1図のX軸方向になるよう制御することが必要である。

又ドップラーシフトを測定するため本実施例においては反射波信号をPLLを用いて連続波に変換しているが、別の方法として例えば反射波信号の周期を測定する等の方法でドップラーシフトを検出するようにしてもよい。

更に本実施例においては船に近い物標も検知するために小振幅長時間の信号に引き続いて大振幅短時間の信号を送出しているが、船に近い物標の検知が必要でなければこの順序を逆にしてもよい。

次に本発明の他の実施例につき図面を参照しつつ説明する。第7図(a)はこの実施例の送信部を示すものである。発振器10、1/100分周器11、及び135倍てい倍器13については第3図のものと同様である。本実施例においてはレンジ切換器16の出力に基づいて変化する周期毎にのこぎり波発生器61より第8図(a)に示すのこぎり波を発生させる。のこぎり波発生器61の出力は制御信号としてスイープジエネレータ62に与えられるので、スイープジエネレータ62は例えば60～65 KHz程の範囲で周波数が連続的に変化するFM信号(リニヤFM信号)を出力する。この信号はパワーアンプ23によつて増幅されて送受切換器24-6～24-15に与えられる。

この信号を振動子25-6～25-15より送信し、反射波を振動子25-1～25-20より受信する。本実施例においては周波数が連続的に上昇するいわゆるリニヤFM信号を用いており、この信号によつてドップラー効果によりヨーイング角θ及び反射波強度を検出することが必要になる。反射波強度を検出する場合には第4図に示した受信回路の記録表示部49のバンドパスフイルタ51の代りに公知のパルス幅圧縮回路63を用いる。第7図(b)はこのパルス幅圧縮回路63の一例を示すものであつてバケットブリゲード素子(以下BBDという)を用いたものである。本図において、クロツク信号発生器65の出力に基づいて増幅器50の出力はサンプリングされ、断続的にBBD66に与えられる。BBD66は一送信波に対応する一反射波信号を記憶することのできる容量を持つ素子であつて、その並列出力はウエイト抵抗群67を介して加算用の増幅器68,69により加算される。ここでウエイト抵抗群67は夫々送信々号の周波数偏移に対応した受信々号がBBD66の右端まで到達した時に各出力端子に現われる出力信号を加算した場合に加算出力が最大になるように定められている。より具体的には、増幅器68はリニヤFM信号の正極部のみを、増幅器69は負極部のみをそれぞれウエイト付加算され、両極性の信号は増幅器70で加算される。増幅器70の出力は第4図の増幅器53に与えられる。

次にドップラー検出部27の構成については第4図に示す実施例のものと同じでよいがバンドパスフイルタ30にはリニヤFM信号の周波数帯域(この実施例では60～65 KHz)を通過帯域とするものを用いる。このフイルタは外来の又は内部に発生するノイズを除去するために用いられる。

尚本実施例においてリニヤFM信号を用いたのは、設計の容易なパルス圧縮回路を用いてSN比を改善することができ、分解能も向上するからである。

次にこの実施例の動作を第8図を参照しつつ説明する。送信部においては第8図(a)に示すようにレンジ切換器16の出力に基づきのこぎり波発生器61よりのこぎり波を発生する。こののこぎり波に基づきスイープジエネレータ62は第8図(b)に示すようにリニヤFM信号を発生し、振動子25-6～25-15より超音波信号が送出される。第8図(c)は反射波信号を示すものであり、送信波形に対応して直線的なFMの反射波が振動子25-1～25-20に得られる。この反射波信号にはヨーイングにより船首が進行方向よりずれている場合、ドップラー効果による周波数シフトが含まれている。反射波信号はプリアンプ26-1～26-20を介してドップラー検出部27に伝えられ、バンドパスフイルタ30によりノイズ

成分が除かれる。更に反射波信号は増幅器31により増幅され、整流回路33及びリミッタ34に加えられる。第8図(d)はリミッタ34の出力を示すものであり、整形された出力は、PLL回路36に加わる。PLL回路36は前述の実施例と同じく入力信号に等しい信号を発生するが、反射波信号の終了時にはシュミットトリガ35により制御されるアナログスイッチ39の開放の所定時間前(PLL回路の時定数により定まる)の周波数の信号を連続的に発生する。第8図(e)はこのPLL回路36の出力を示すものである。このPLL回路36の出力信号はF/V変換器42によりその周波数に対応する電圧に変換される。前述のように反射波信号はドップラー効果による周波数シフトを含むため、F/V変換器42の出力電圧はドップラーシフト量に対応するものとなる。従つて前述の実施例と同じく演算部44によりヨーイング角θを求め、チルトコントロール部46により順次位相の異なる信号を局発信号として発生させることにより、受信方位を変えることができる。

次に反射波信号は更にミクサー48-1～48-20、加算用増幅器50を介して第7図(b)に示すパルス幅圧縮回路63に与えられる。パルス幅圧縮回路63では反射波信号がBBD66に与えられる。BBD66に一つの反射波信号が入力された時にBBD66の並列出力を加算増幅する増幅器70は第8図(f)に示すように圧縮された出力を出し、その振幅は反射波信号の大きさに対応する。このように反射波信号の幅を圧縮し、これを映像信号として用いれば鮮明な画像が得られる。

以上のように本実施例においては二つの異なつた周波数の信号を用いず、連続して周波数の変化するリニヤFM信号を用いても同様にヨーイング角θを検出することができ、それに応じて受信の指向性が切換えられるため常に安定なサイドルッキング信号が得られる。

尚、本実施例においてパルス幅圧縮回路63としてBBDによるものを用いたが、同様の作用を持つものとして知られる表面波フイルターを用いてもよい。

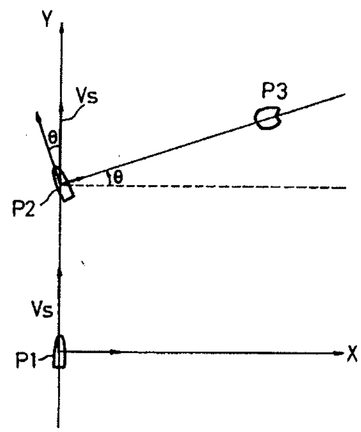
4. 図面の簡単な説明

第1図は本願発明の原理を示す原理図、第2図は送受波体の一例を示す構成図、第3図、第4図、第5図は本願発明の一実施例を示すブロック図であつて、夫々送信部、受信部、及びチルトコントロール部を示す。第6図(a)～(h)は第3図、第4図の各部の波形を示す波形図、第7図(a),(b)は他の実施例を示す回路図、第8図(a)～(f)は他の実施例の各部の波形図である。

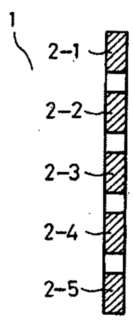
10…発振器、12,13,14,15…てい倍器、17,18…パルス発生器、22…変調器、23…パワーアンプ、25-1～25-20…振動子、27…ドップラー検出部、29…ミクサー、30,51…バンドパスフイルタ、32,52…TVG、34…リミッタ、36…PLL回路、42…F/V変換器、44…演算部、46…チルトコントロール部、47-1～47-20…位相制御器、48-1～48-20…ミクサー、49…記録表示部、62…のこぎり波発生器、63…パルス幅圧縮回路、66…BBD

代理人弁理士　東島隆治

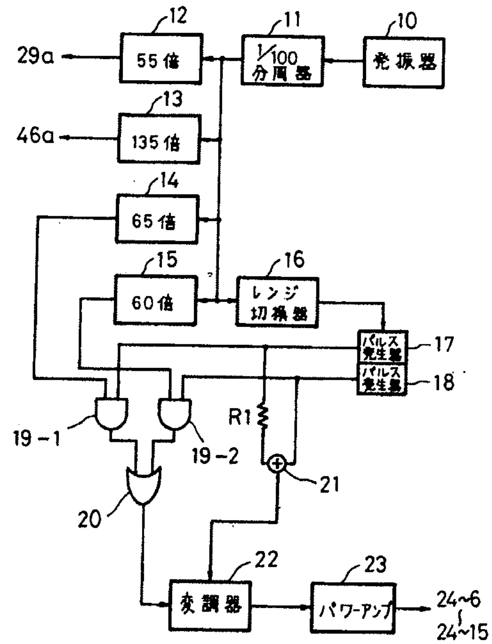
第 1 図



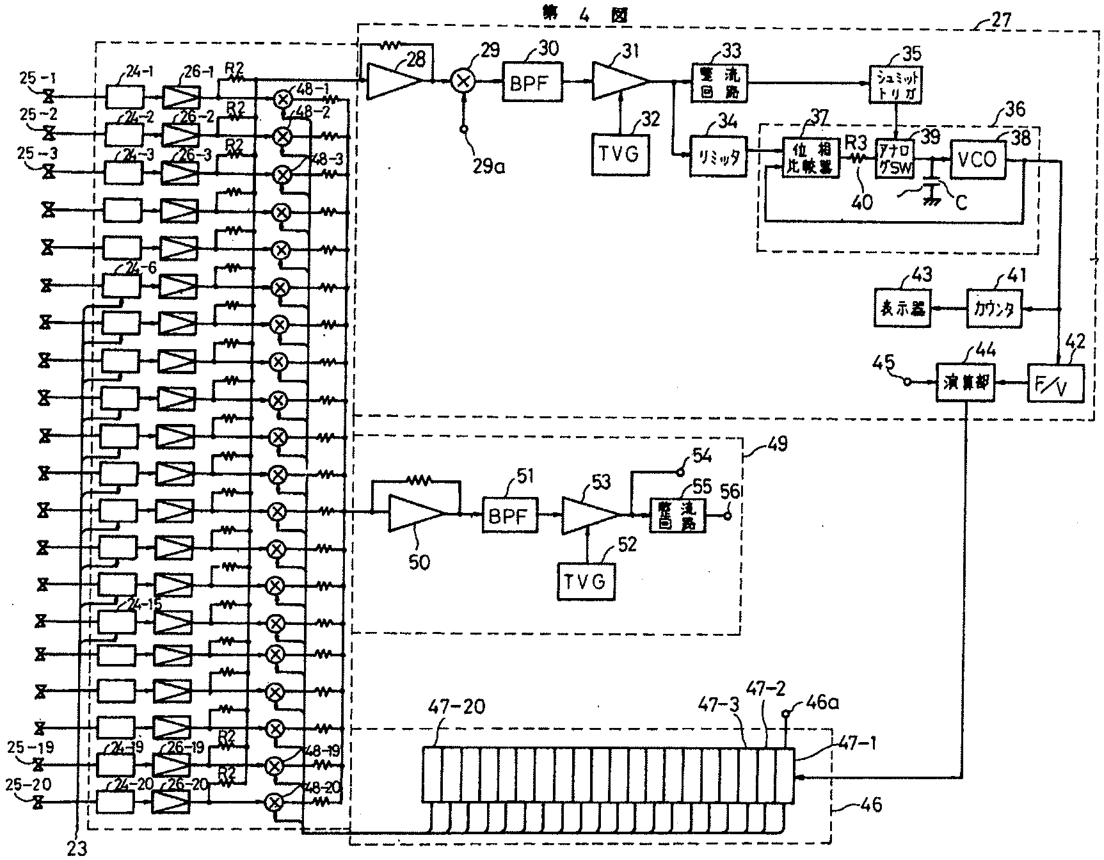

第 2 図



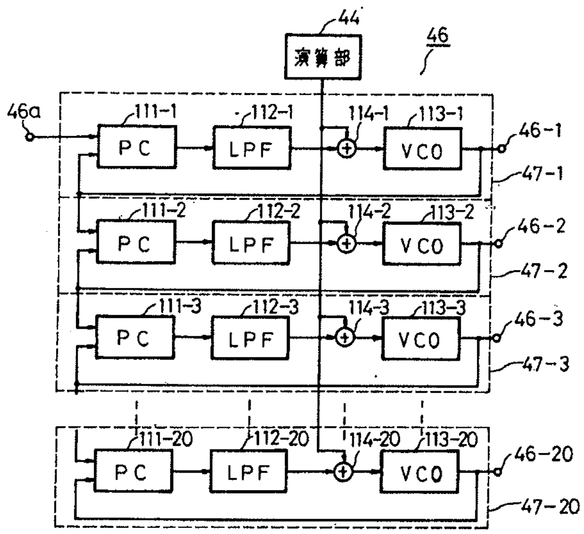

第 3 図



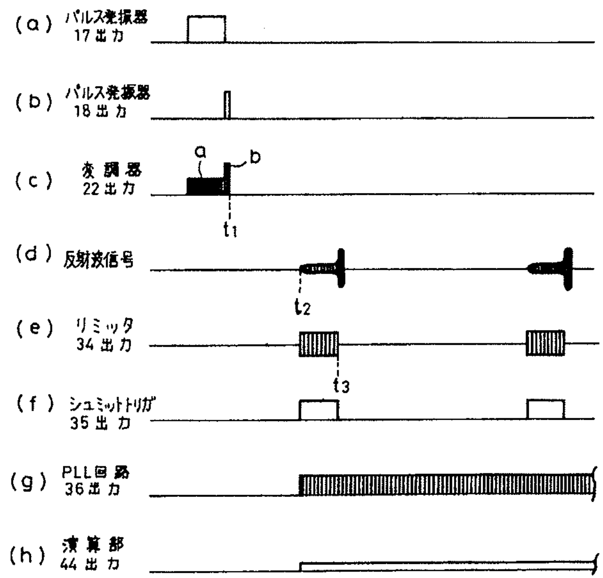

第 4 図



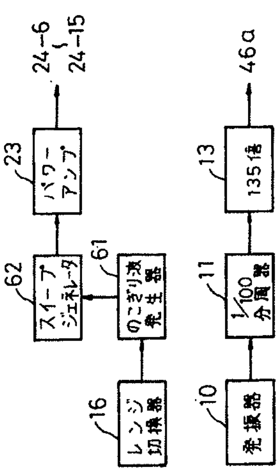
第 5 図



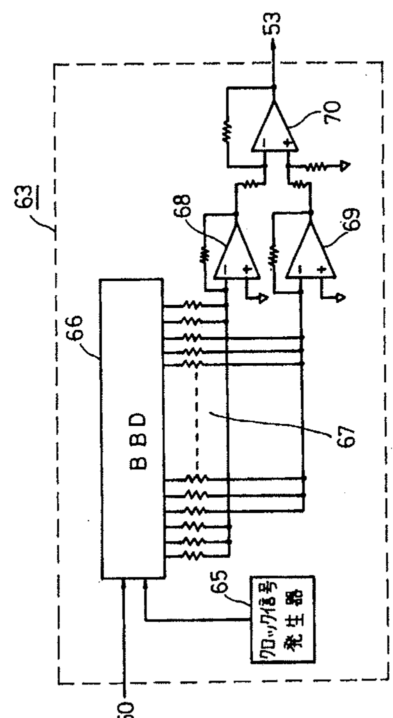

第 6 図



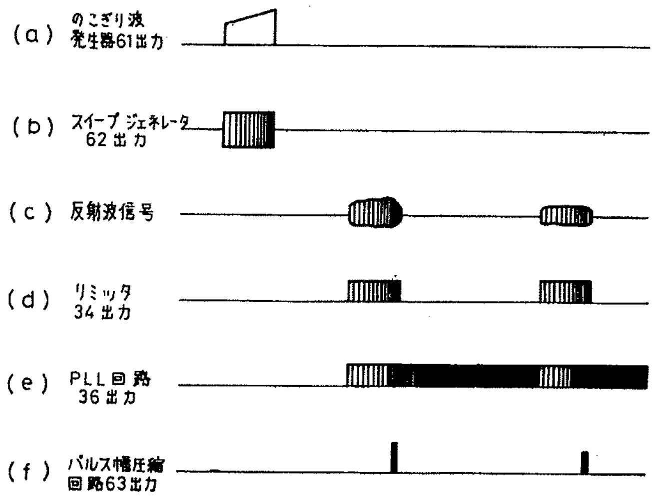

第 7 図 (a)




第 7 図 (b)



第 8 図



(a) のこぎり波発生器61出力
(b) スイープジェネレータ62出力
(c) 反射波信号
(d) リミッタ34出力
(e) PLL回路36出力
(f) パルス幅圧縮回路63出力

Espacenet

# Bibliographic data: JP 61116678 (A)

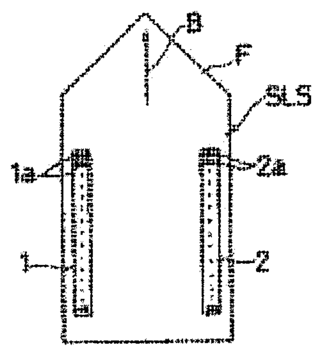
## UNDERWATER DETECTION DISPLAY DEVICE

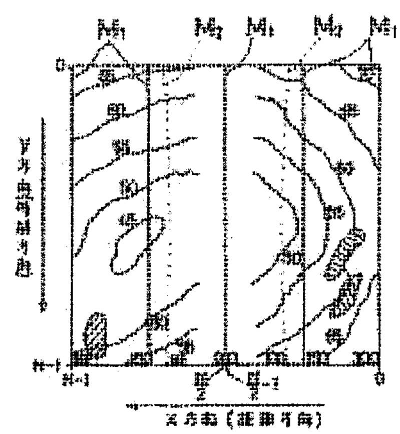

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Publication date:** | 1986-06-04 | |
| **Inventor(s):** | SHIBUYA SHOZO + | |
| **Applicant(s):** | FURUNO ELECTRIC CO + | |
| **Classification:** | **- international:** | ***G01S15/89; G01S7/62;*** (IPC1-7): G01S15/89; G01S7/62 |
| | **- European:** | |
| **Application number:** | JP19840239064 19841112 | |
| **Priority number(s):** | JP19840239064 19841112 | |
| **Also published as:** | • JP 6065997 (B)<br>• JP 1941680 (C) | |
| **Cited documents:** | JP58079178 (A) JP57006313 (A) JP54097064 (A) | View all |



### Abstract of JP 61116678 (A)

PURPOSE:To enable easy and accurate detection of positional relation between a ship and coastlines and dangerous obstacles in a very clear manner, by displaying a video diagonally below the water surface and a submarine topographic map in superimposition one upon another on the same screen. CONSTITUTION:A side looking sonar SLS has ultrasonic transmitter/receivers 1 and 2 for right and left sides on the right and left of the bottom of the hull F to allow the searching of underwater videos in a wide range below both sides of the hull F. An image signal giving a video from the SLS and an image signal from a topograph memory indicating a sea bottom topographic map are shown on the same screen of a raster-scan type display unit.; The display screen is set in the direction Y (time) and in the direction X (distance) and has N<2> pixels as a whole to display videos on the right and left sides separately in the rage of 0-(N/2-1) and in the area N/2-(N-1) in the direction X. Fixed markers M1 of 0, 150 and 300 (m unit) and a variable marker M<2> for varying display distance are provided on right and left sides respectively from the center. This enables easy and accurate determination of positional relation between the ship, coast lines and dangerous obstacles.


Last updated:
12.10.2011 Worldwide
Database 5.7.23.2; 92p

⑲日本国特許庁（JP）　⑪特許出願公開
⑫公開特許公報（A）　昭61－116678

⑤Int.Cl.⁴　識別記号　庁内整理番号　㊸公開　昭和61年(1986)6月4日
G 01 S 7/62　6707－5J
15/89　8124－5J
審査請求　未請求　発明の数　1　（全11頁）

㊹発明の名称　水中探知表示装置

㉑特　願　昭59－239064
㉒出　願　昭59(1984)11月12日

㉜発明者　渋谷　正三　西宮市芦原町9番52号　古野電気株式会社内
㉑出願人　古野電気株式会社　西宮市芦原町9番52号
㉔代理人　弁理士　岡田　和秀

明細書

1、発明の名称

水中探知表示装置

2、特許請求の範囲

(1)サイドルッキングソナーによる船体の両側下方の映像を示す画像信号を出力する第1出力手段と、

海底地形図を示す画像信号を出力する第2出力手段と、

前記第1および第2手段から出力された画像信号に基づき、船体下方の映像と海底地形図とを、同一画面上に重ね合わせ状態で表示する表示手段と、

前記表示手段によって表示された画面上で船体からの水平距離を示すマーカとを有する水中探知表示装置。

3、発明の詳細な説明

(産業上の利用分野)

本発明は、サイドルッキングソナーを用いて船体両側下方の水中を広範囲に探索する水中探知表示装置に関する。

(従来の技術)

従来のこの種の装置は、サイドルッキングソナーによって探索した映像をCRTディスプレー装置などにより表示させ、海岸線とか、岩礁や沈没船といった危険物などを映し出すように構成されていた。

(発明が解決しようとする問題点)

しかしながら、このような構成を有する従来例の場合では、海岸線や危険物の存在そのものは知ることができるものの、それらが船体に対してどのような水平距離にあるかわからず、また、岩礁などの場合には存在箇所の深さもわからず、それらの位置関係を知るために、例えば、海上保安庁などで作成した海底地形図と前述の海岸線や危険物の存在箇所とを照らし合わせて位置関係を把握しなければならず、面倒で手間がかかるとともに、正確さに欠ける欠点があった。

本発明は、このような事情に鑑みてなされたものであって、船体と海岸線や危険物との位置関係

を一目瞭然にして容易かつ正確に知ることができるようにすることを目的とする。

(問題点を解決するための手段)

本発明の水中探知表示装置は、このような目的を達成するために、サイドルッキングソナーによる船体の両側下方の映像を示す画像信号を出力する第1出力手段と、海底地形図を示す画像信号を出力する第2出力手段と、前記第1および第2手段から出力された画像信号に基づき、船体下方の映像と海底地形図とを、同一画面上に重ね合わせ状態で表示する表示手段と、前記表示手段によって表示された画面上で船体からの水平距離を示すマーカとを有するように構成する。

(作用)

つまり、サイドルッキングソナーによって得られる海岸線や危険物の存在箇所の深さを、海岸線や危険物が表示された位置に最も近い位置で表示されている海底地形図上の等深線に付された深さを読み取ることによって知り、そして、船体からの水平距離を、上述同様に海岸線や危険物の表示位置に最も近い位置のマーカの目盛りを読み取ることによって知り、船体からの位置関係を把握するのである。

(実施例)

以下、本発明を図面に示す実施例に基づいて詳細に説明する。

第1図はサイドルッキングソナー(SLS)の取付構成を示す平面図であり、船体Fの底部の左右両側に左舷用超音波送受波器1と右舷用超音波送受波器2とが設けられ、両超音波送受波器1,2夫々が、各1個の振動子1a,…,2a,…を船首方向Bに並設して構成され、第2図に示すように、船首方向Bに$\phi$(L)、左右両側夫々において船首方向Bに直角な方向に$\theta$(L)の送受波ビームを形成し、船体Fの左右両側夫々の下方の広い範囲の水中の映像を探索できるように構成されている。

第3図は、表示手段としてのラスタースキャン(直交座標)型の表示器25による表示画面の一例を示し、この表示画面としては、縦方向(時間方向)を$y$方向、横方向(距離方向)を$x$方向に設定されている。そして、$x$方向および$y$方向いずれにもN個の画素数を、即ち、全体として$N^2$個の画素数を有し、$x$方向の0〜(N/2−1)に右舷側の映像が表示されるとともに、$y$方向のN/2〜(N−1)に左舷側の映像が表示されるようになっている。

前記表示画面においては、その左右中央を船体Fが航行するものと設定されるとともにその表示範囲Dp(m)(船体からの直線距離)が300mに設定され、中央から左右両側夫々に「0」,「150」,「300」(単位m)の固定用のマーカ$M_1$,…が付され、かつ、表示距離を変更可能な可変用のマーカ$M_2$,$M_2$が付されている。ここでは、可変用のマーカ$M_2$,$M_2$が、船首方向Bに直交する方向の水平距離が100mの位置を表示している。

第4図は、前記サイドルッキングソナー(SLS)による映像を示す画像信号を出力する第1出力手段T、海底地形図を示す画像信号を出力する第2出力手段としての地形メモリ12、ならびに、両出力手段T,12による画像信号に基づく映像を表示器25の同一画面上に重ね合わせ表示する表示手段を示すブロック回路図である。

前記第1出力手段Tは、左右両側の送受波器1,2夫々に送信のための増幅出力を出す送信アンプ3,4、および、受信した画像信号を増幅出力する受信アンプ5,6から構成され、送信アンプ3,4は、$y$カウンタ36の出力するトリガパルスにより予め定められたパワー、パルス幅および周波数の超音波パルス信号を送受波器1,2を通して水中に発射させるようになっている。水中の物体から反射された探知信号は送受波器1,2で受信され、受信アンプ5,6で増幅検波される。受信アンプ5,6に入力されているトリガパルスは探知信号の距離による減衰を補正するためのTVG用に使用される。

前記第1出力手段Tからの探知信号は切り換え器7とA/D変換器8を介して信号メモリ9に入力され、この信号メモリ9において一画面表示分即ちN回送信分のサイドルッキングソナー(SLS)探知信号を記憶する。したがって、信号メモ

リ9の記憶容量はA／D変換器8の出力ビット数を$\alpha_1$とすると、$\alpha_1$×N×Nとなる。信号メモリ9としてはRAMが使用される。信号メモリ9のy方向番地およびx方向番地は、いずれも0～(N−1)である。一回の送信毎にカラー魚探と同様にx方向に一行分の信号が書き込まれ、0～(N／2−1)に送受波器2で受信した右舷の画像信号が書き込まれ、N／2～(N−1)に送受波器1で受信した左舷の画像信号が書き込まれる。

両送受波器1,2の探知信号は2進カウンタ37の指令入力により前記切り換え器7で切り換えられ、その切り換えに伴なうx方向番地の切り換えは同じく2進カウンタ37の指令入力を受けて切り換え器34で行なわれる。信号メモリ9にはγカウンタ36の計数値が1変化する間に左右舷の信号を各1回書き込めばよいので2進カウンタ37の計数値が0の時2進カウンタ37の出力は"L"となって右舷の信号が書き込まれ、また、計数値が1の時には出力が"H"となって左舷の信号が書き込まれる。

なお、γカウンタ36はN／2進アップカウンタであり、比較器38はDp／N(m)を超音波が往復するのと等しい時間間隔の一致パルスを出力する。 35は、N進ダウンカウンタで構成されるyカウンタであり、γカウンタ36の出力するトリガパルスを計数し、切り換え器10,13を介して信号メモリ9および前記地形メモリ12のy方向書き込み位置を出力するようになっている。

前記地形メモリ12のy方向番地およびx方向番地はいずれも0～(N／2−1)であり、信号メモリ9と同様に一回の送信毎にx方向一行分の等深線が書き込まれ、0～(N／2−1)に右舷の等深線が、そして、N／2～(N−1)に左舷の等深線が夫々書き込まれるようになっている。地形メモリ12には、等深線用の海底深度D(m)とマーカ$M_2$用に水平距離(船体Fから船首方向に直交する水平方向の距離)H(m)が書き込まれる。なお、固定用マーカ$M_1$の表示手段についての説明は省略した。したがって、地形メモリ12の記憶容量は、海底深度と水平距離との合計ビット数を$\alpha_2$とすると、$\alpha_2$×N×Nとなる。この地形メモリ12にはRAMが使用される。

次に、前記地形メモリ12に海底地形図を書き込む手法について説明する。

先ず、海底地形図の等深線上にディジタイザの位置検出部をセットし、海底地形図の原点からの距離(東西方向および南北方向、単位mm)を読み取り、そのディジタイザに接続されたコンピュータにより上記原点からの距離、地形図の縮尺および地形図の原点位置(Ns,Es)を使用し、海底地形図より等深線の位置(緯度N、経度E)を求める。

地形図上の等深線には等深線番号jが付けられており、1の等深線から順々に等深線上の位置が求められる。1つの等深線の端から等深線に沿って予め定められた間隔で等深線上の位置(Njk,Ejk)が求められる。ここでkは1からKjまでの数である。Kjは等深線番号jの等深線における位置サンプル数(位置読み取り数)である。求められた等深線上の位置(Njk,Ejk)は、例えば、第6図に示すようなテーブルを用いて、Kj、等深線の深度Dj、等深線数Lとともに磁気テープ、RAM、磁気ディスク、磁気バブルなどの各種記録媒体に記憶される。

コンピュータは、第5図に示すように、CPU101、RAM102、ROM103、入力装置104、出力装置105から構成される。出力装置105は4個のラッチ106,107,108,109とデコーダ111から構成され、記録媒体に記憶された等深線を地形メモリ12に書き込むようになっている。

CPU101はROM103に内蔵されているプログラムにより演算、判定、データの転送などを行なうようになっている。

RAM102は、入力装置104から入力された測定信号の記憶、CPU101の演算結果および判定結果などを記憶するようになっている。

また、記録媒体から船体F付近の等深線を読み出して記憶するようになっている。

ROM103はプログラムおよび定数値を記憶するようになっている。

入力装置104には、方位測定装置112、測位装置113、記録媒体としての磁気テープ114および表示範囲設定器41夫々の出力が接続されている。

次に、等深線図作成の動作につき、第7図のフローチャートを用いて説明する。

CPU101にyカウンタ36の出力するトリガパルスが入力されたかどうかを判断し(ステップN1)、入力されたと判断すれば、今から等深線を書き込むyカウンタ35の計数値の示す地形メモリ12のy方向番地のx=0から(N−1)までの記憶内容を消去する(ステップN2)。次いで、第8図および第9図に示すように、入力装置104から船体F自身の位置($N_0$, $E_0$)と、北方向に対する船首方向Bの角度θおよび表示範囲Dp(m)とを読み取り、船体Fから船首方向Bに直交する方向の水平距離Dp(m)の点a, bの位置、点$P_1$(Na, Ea), 点$P_2$(Nb, Eb)を求める(ステップN3)。点a, bはRAM102から点a, bを通る等深線をさがし出すために使用される。Dpは本来直線距離であるが、水平距離でDpの範囲の等深線をさがしておけば、直線距離Dpの範囲内を十分カバーできる。

次に、j=1とする(ステップN4)。

そして、k=1、$V_{j0}$=0とした(ステップN5)後、等深線サンプル位置(Njk, Ejk)のU−V座標上の位置(Ujk, Vjk)を求める(ステップN6)。この(Ujk, Vjk)は、下記式により求める。

即ち、U−V座標とN−E座標との関係は、0点を船体Fの位置とした場合、0点のU−V座標およびN−E座標の値は夫々(0, 0)、($N_0$, $E_0$)となる。したがって、

$$U=(E-E_0)\times\cos\theta\times\cos N_0\times\beta-(N-N_0)\times\sin\theta\times\beta$$

$$V=(E-E_0)\times\sin\theta\times\cos N_0\times\beta+(N-N_0)\times\cos\theta\times\beta$$

$$N=[(V\times\cos\theta-U\times\sin\theta)/\beta]+N_0$$

$$E=[(V\times\sin\theta+U\times\cos\theta)/(\beta\times\cos N_0)]+E_0$$

ただし、β=60×1852 (1分が1マイル)

となり、上記U, Vより(Ujk, Vjk)を求めれば良い。

また、前述のa点の位置(Na, Ea)およびb点の位置(Nb, Eb)夫々は、上記式に基づき、下記のようにして求められる。

$$Na=N_0-Dp\times\sin\theta/\beta$$

$$Ea=E_0+Dp\times\cos\theta/(\beta\times\cos N_0)$$

$$Nb=N_0+Dp\times\sin\theta/\beta$$

$$Eb=E_0-Dp\times\cos\theta/(\beta\times\cos N_0)$$

次に、U軸上を通過する等深線があるかどうかを判断し(ステップN7)、あると判断すれば、そのU軸上の値を地形メモリ12のx方向上の値に変換して書き込む(ステップN8)。

前記ステップN7において、Vjk=0でないと判断した場合には、連続する等深線サンプル位置のVjkの正負の符号が今回と前回とで同じかどうかを判断し(ステップN9)、同じで無いと判断した時、即ち、等深線がU軸を横切った時には、前述の場合と同様にして、そのU軸上の値を地形メモリ12のx方向上の値に変換して書き込む(ステップN10)。

前記ステップN8およびステップN10に供する、表示メモリ上の位置$X_{mjk}$とUjkおよびVjkとの関係を示す関係式について、次に説明しておく。

(i) Vjk=0の時

$$H_{jk}=U_{jk}$$

$$X_{mjk}=\pm R\times 1/Dp\times N/2+N/2$$

ただし、$R^2=D^2_j+H^2_{jk}$であり、そして、Hjkが正の時は−で、負の時は+である。

(ii) Vjk≠0の時

$$H_{jk}=-\{U_{jk}-U_{j(k-1)}\}\times|V_{jk}|/\{|V_{jk}|+|V_{j(k-1)}|\}+U_{jk}$$

$$X_{mjk}=\pm R\times 1/Dp\times N/2+N/2$$

上記(i)(ii)において、$0\leq X_{mjk}\leq(N-1)$である。

信号メモリ9および地形メモリ12夫々への書き込みは、クロックパルス発生器cp50の出力パルスが"H"の時に行なわれ、そして、"L"の時には読み出しが行なわれる。地形メモリ12への書

き込みは、CPU101によりx方向書き込み位置Xmjkがラッチ108に、Djがラッチ106に、|Hjk|がラッチ107に夫々セットされた後、CPU101によりフリップフロップF／F15がセットされ、更にフリップフロップF／F15がセットされたその後の最初のMS(単安定マルチバイブレータ)44の出力パルスにより行なわれる。なお、この時、第10図のタイミングチャートに示すように、y方向番地はyカウンタ35により出力される。ステップN2における記憶内容の消去時には|Hjk|とDjがともに0となる。

前記ステップN8およびステップN10を経た後、ならびに、ステップN9で正負の符号が同じと判断された時には、k=k+1としてから(ステップN11)、k=Kjかどうかを判断し(ステップN12)、k=Kjで無いと判断すればステップN6に戻し、逆にk=Kjと判断すれば、J=J+1とした(ステップN13)後、j=Lかどうかを判断する(ステップN14)。ここで、j=Lで無いと判断すれば、ステップN5に戻し、そして、j=Lと判断すればステップN1に戻す。

以上のようにして、等深線図の作成を終了する。

前記クロックパルス発生器cp50の出力パルス周期は表示器上で一画素を表示する時間と等しく、またパルスのデューティは50%である。

信号メモリ9および地形メモリ12に記憶されている信号はクロックパルス発生器cp50のパルスが"L"になる毎に、信号の書き込み中あるいは等深線図書き込み中にかかわらず1つずつ読み出され、表示器25に表示される。そしてその読み出し番地はxカウンタ49およびyカウンタ48の計数値により決定される。

xカウンタ49およびyカウンタ48の計数値は表示器25の各画素と対応しているので、xカウンタ49はN進アップカウンタであり、またyカウンタ48もN進アップカウンタである。11は加算器であり、yカウンタ35の計数値が示す信号メモリ9および地形メモリ12のy方向最新探知信号番地の信号を画面の上端に表示するようになっている。

16はROMであり、ここに地形メモリ12の出力Dが入力され、その入力値にしたがって、例えば、第11図の設定値テーブル$T_1$に示すようにあらかじめ定められた値を出力する。この設定値テーブル$T_1$によれば、5m毎の等深線が異なる10色で表示されるようになっている。

43は可変マーカ設定器であり、水平距離Phv値(単位m)を出力するようになっている。比較器17には上記水平距離Phv値と地形メモリ12の出力Hとが入力されており、この2つの値が一致した時、可変マーカが可変マーカ値表示器42により表示される。可変マーカ値表示器42はLED、液晶などによって数値を表示するようになっている。

14はAND回路、15はフリップフロップ、32,33は加算器、39はカウンタ、40はROMである。

21は色変換ROMであり、地形メモリ12からの出力をROM16およびラッチ18を介して入力するとともに、信号メモリ9からの出力をラッチ19を介して入力し、かつ、可変マーカ設定器43からの出力を比較器17およびラッチ20を介して入力し、それらの入力に基づき、D／A変換器22,23,24夫々を介して表示器25に所定の表示を行なわせるように構成されている。

26はy偏向コイル、27はx偏向コイル、28はy偏向アンプ、29はx偏向アンプである。

なお、第4図および第5図で示す回路の夫々の入力端子に付した記号について説明しておく。

(i)RAM、ROM

A:アドレス入力または出力

D:データ入出力

Di:データ入力

Do:データ出力

R／W:読み書き制御入力("H"の時に書き込み状態となる)

(ii)カウンタ

CK:クロック入力(入力パルスの立ち上がりで動作)

C:桁上げ出力

CLR:リセット入力

Do:計数出力

(iii)ラッチ

Di:データ入力

Do:データ出力

CK:クロック入力(入力パルスの立ち上がりで動作)

(iv)フリップフロップ(F/F)

S:セット入力(入力パルスの立ち上がりで動作)

R:リセット入力(入力パルスの立ち上がりで動作)

Q:Q出力(セットされると"H"になる)

(v)単安定マルチバイブレータ(MS)

CK:クロック入力(入力パルスの立ち上がりで動作)

Q:Q出力

(vi)切換器

C:コントロール入力("H"の時"ON"になる)

(効果)

以上のように、本発明の水中探知表示装置によれば、サイドルッキングソナーによって映し出される映像と海底地形図とを同一画面に重ね合わせて表示するから、ひとつの画面を見ることによって、海岸線や危険物の船体からの水平距離、および、それらの深さといった船体からの位置関係を一目瞭然にして知ることができ、サイドルッキングソナーによる映像と海底地形図とを交互に見比べて位置関係を知るような手間をかけずに済み、かつ、海岸線や危険物の映像そのものから目を離さずに深さや水平距離を読み取ることができ、海岸線や危険物と船体との位置関係を容易にかつ正確に把握できるようになった。その結果、従来に比べてより一層航行を安全にかつ楽に行なえるようになった。

4、図面の簡単な説明

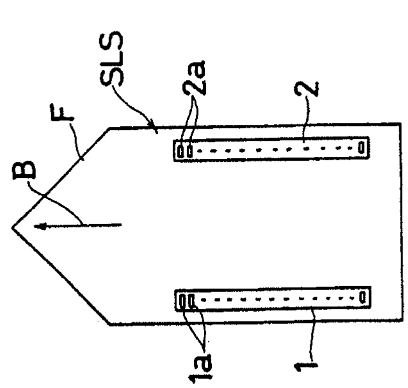
図面は本発明の実施例を示し、第1図は、サイドルッキングソナーの取付構成を示す平面図、第2図はサイドルッキングソナーの探知範囲を示す斜視図、第3図は表示画面の例示図、第4図および第5図はブロック回路図、第6図は等深線上の位置を示すテーブルの例示図、7図はフローチャート、第8図および第9図は、夫々N−E座標とU−V座標との相関を示す図、第10図はタイミングチャート、第11図は設定値テーブルを示す図である。

図中、符号12は第2出力手段、Fは船体、SLSはサイドルッキングソナー、Tは第1出力手段、$M_1$,$M_2$はマーカである。

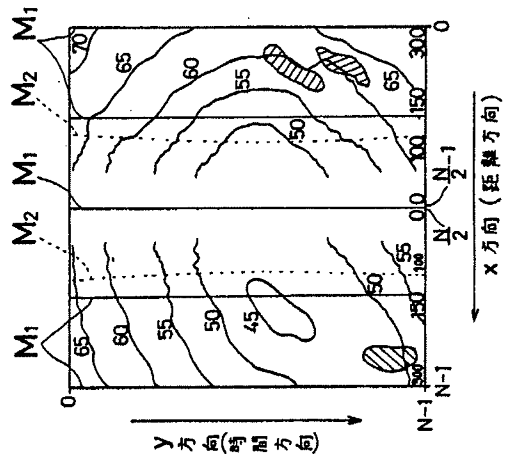
出願人 古野電気 株式会社

代理人 弁理士 岡田和秀

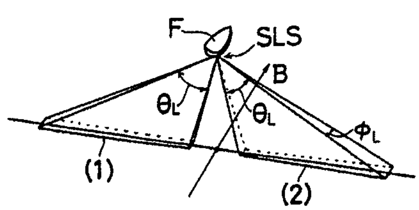
第 1 図




第 3 図



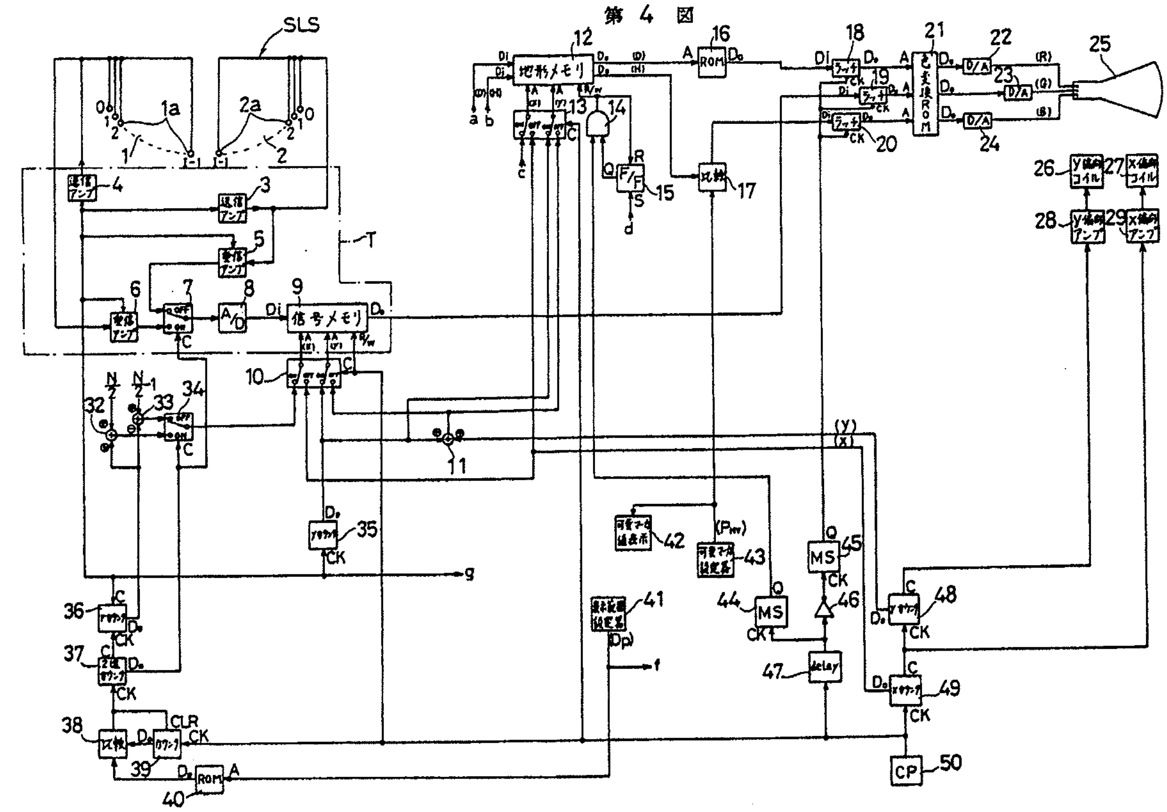

第 2 図



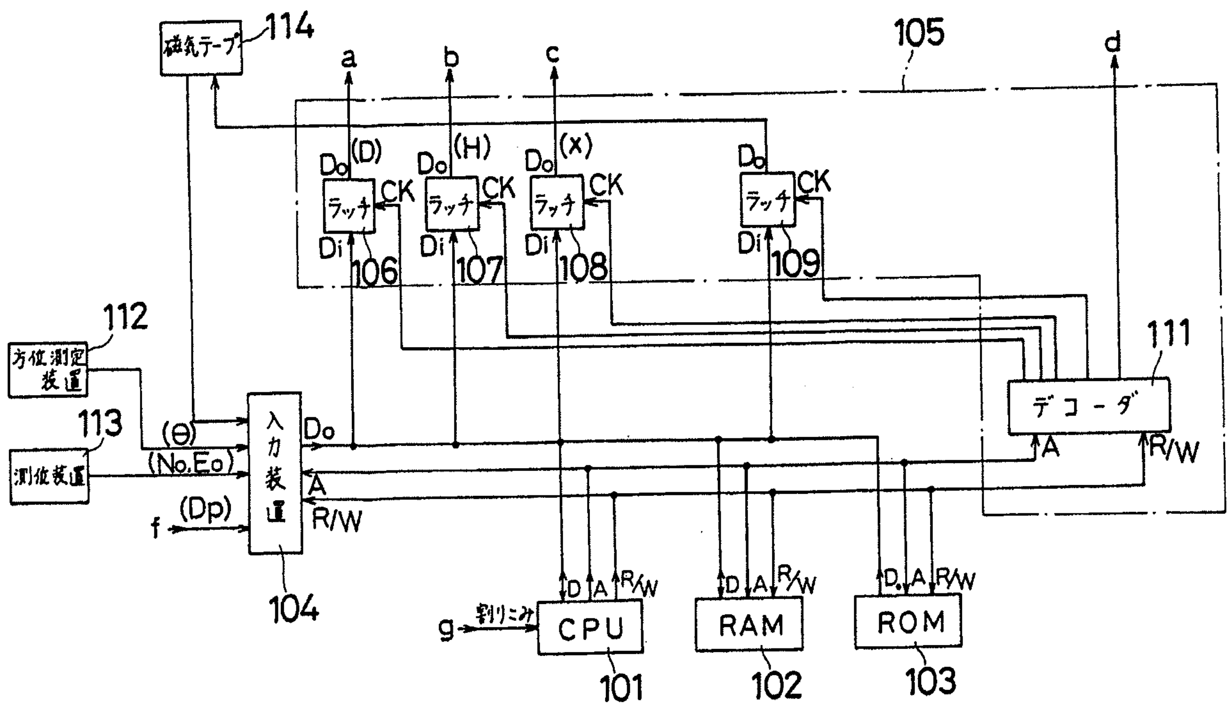

第 6 図

| 等深線番号(j) | 深度(Dj) | サンプル数(Kj) | 等深線サンプル位置 (Njk, Ejk) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 298 | 299 | 300 |
| 1 | m | | N E 度 | N E 度 | N E 度 | N E 度 | N E 度 | N E 度 | N E 度 | N E 度 | N E 度 | N E 度 |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | | | | |

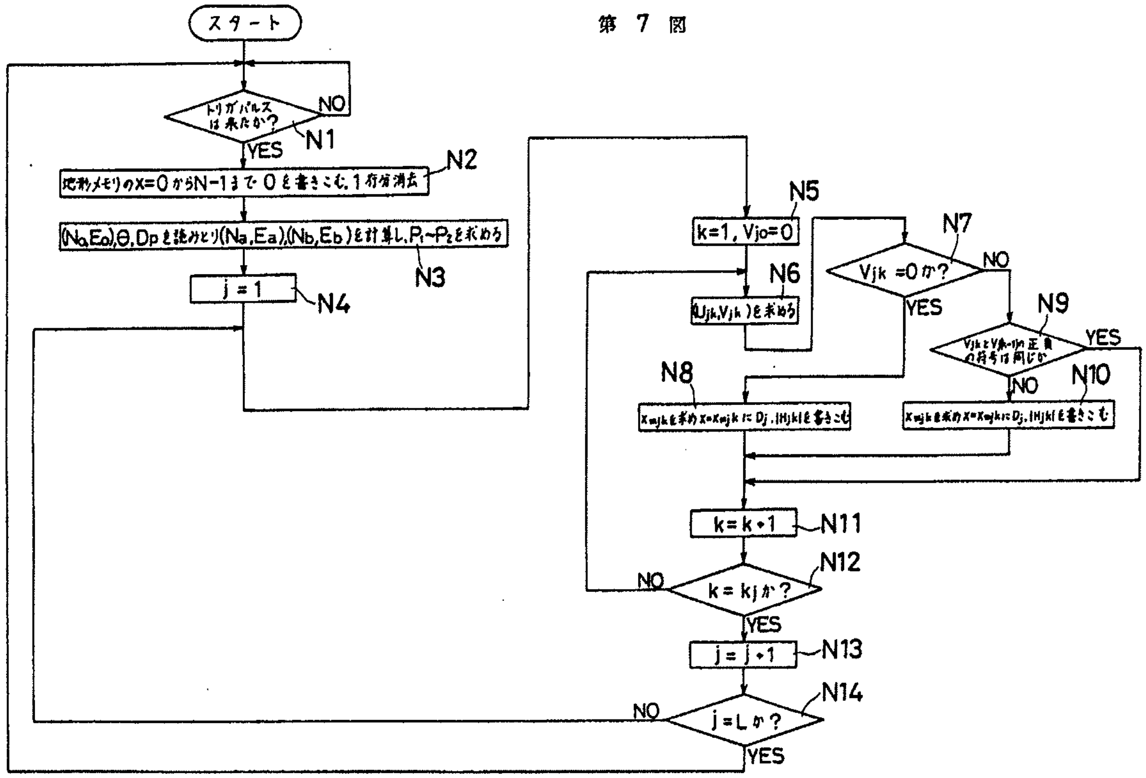
第 4 図


SLS
1a
2a
1
2
T
地形メモリ
信号メモリ
ROM
比較
F/F
A/D
delay
MS
CP
D/A
(R)
(G)
(B)
(y)
(x)
a
b
c
d
f
g

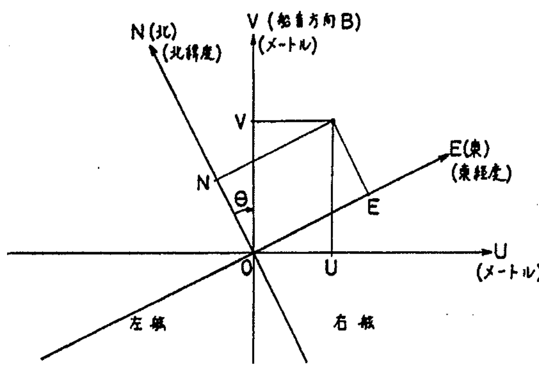
第 5 図


磁気テープ
114
105
a
b
c
d
Do (D)
Do (H)
Do (x)
Do
ラッチ
ラッチ
ラッチ
ラッチ
CK
Di
106
107
108
109
112
方位測定装置
113
測位装置
(θ)
(No.Eo)
f
(Dp)
入力装置
Do
A
R/W
104
デコーダ
111
D
A
R/W
g
割りこみ
CPU
101
RAM
102
ROM
103

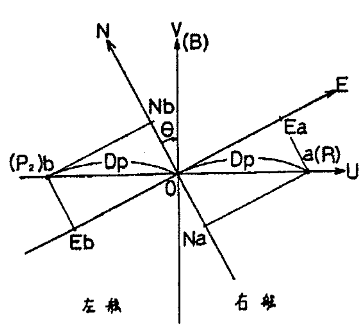
第 7 図


スタート
トリガパルスは来たか？
NO
YES
N1
地形メモリのX=0からN-1まで0を書きこむ、1行分消去
N2
(Na,Ea),θ,Dpを読みとり(Na,Ea),(Nb,Eb)を計算し、P1~P2を求める
N3
j=1
N4
k=1, Vjo=0
N5
(Ujk,Vjk)を求める
N6
Vjk=0か？
N7
NO
YES
VjkとVj(k-1)の正負の符号は同じか
N9
YES
NO
N8
Xmjkを求めX=XmjkにDj,|Hjk|を書きこむ
N10
Xmjkを求めX=XmjkにDj,|Hjk|を書きこむ
k=k+1
N11
NO
k=kjか？
N12
YES
j=j+1
N13
NO
j=Lか？
N14
YES

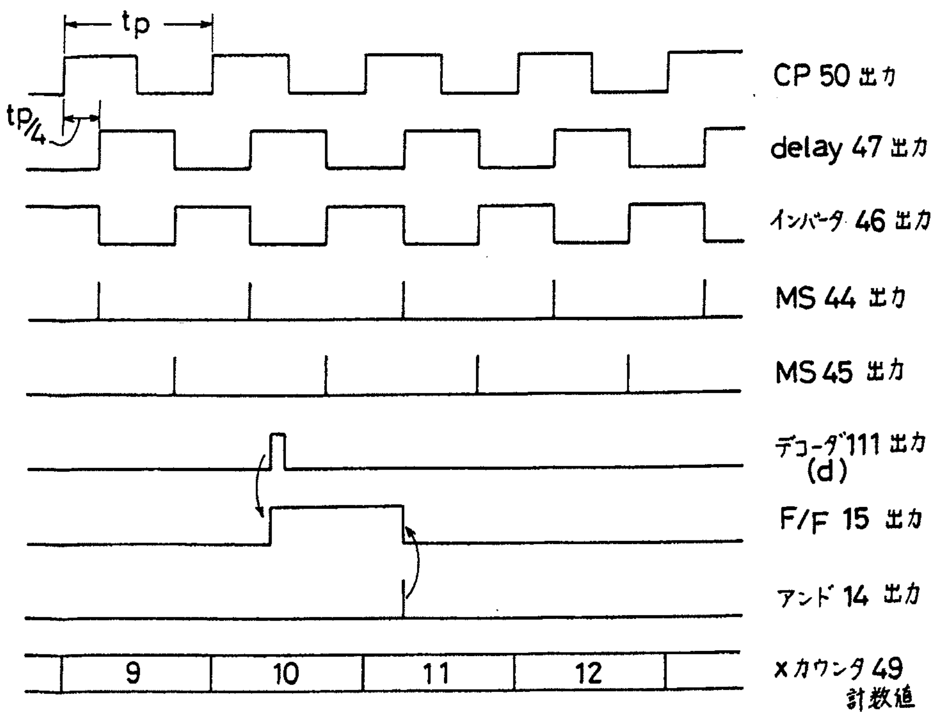
第 8 図


N(北)
(北緯度)
V (鉛直方向B)
(メートル)
V
N
θ
E(東)
(東経度)
E
0
U
U
(メートル)
左舷
右舷

第 9 図


N
V(B)
E
Nb
θ
Ea
(P2)b
Dp
Dp
a(P1)
U
0
Eb
Na
左舷
右舷

第10図




第11図

| Dの値の下2桁 | 出力値 |
|---|---|
| 4 ~ 6 , 54 ~ 56 | 1 |
| 9 ~ 11 , 59 ~ 61 | 2 |
| 14 ~ 16 , 64 ~ 66 | 3 |
| 19 ~ 21 , 69 ~ 71 | 4 |
| 24 ~ 26 , 74 ~ 76 | 5 |
| 29 ~ 31 , 79 ~ 81 | 6 |
| 34 ~ 36 , 84 ~ 86 | 7 |
| 39 ~ 41 , 89 ~ 91 | 8 |
| 44 ~ 46 , 94 ~ 96 | 9 |
| 49 ~ 51 , 99 ~ 01 | 10 |
| 上記以外 | 0(無色) |

$T_1$

手続補正書(自発)

昭和60年9月4日

特許庁長官　殿

1、事件の表示
昭和59年特許願第239064号

2、発明の名称
水中探知表示装置

3、補正をする者
事件との関係　特許出願人
住　所　兵庫県西宮市芦原町9番52号
名　称　古野電気株式会社
代表者　古野清孝

4、代理人
住　所　大阪市北区浪花町13番38号千代田ビル北館
電話(06)376−0857
氏　名　弁理士(8673)岡田和秀

5、補正命令の日付　自発補正

6、補正により増加する発明の数
なし

7、補正の対象
明細書の特許請求の範囲の欄、
明細書の発明の詳細な説明の欄

方式審査

8、補正の内容

(1)特許請求の範囲を別紙の通りに補正する。

(2)明細書の第1頁、第20行目の「船体両側下方の」を「水面から斜め下方の」に訂正する。

(3)同第3頁、第6行目の「船体の両側下方の」を「水面から斜め下方の海底」に訂正する。

(4)同第3頁、第9行目の「船体下方の」を「上記斜め下方の海底」に訂正する。

(5)同第20頁、第1行目の「(効果)」の前に、次の文を挿入する。

「前記両超音波送受波器1,2としては、船体Fに直接装備するものに限らず、船体Fに曳航される曳航体に装備するものでも良い。なお、この場合、船体Fと曳航体との位置ずれの修正は、船体Fに対する曳航体の方向と両者間の水平距離とにより補正を加え、船体Fからの水平距離を示すようにすれば良い。」

9、添付書類の目録

(1)補正後の特許請求の範囲　1通

特許請求の範囲

(1)サイドルッキングソナーによる水面から斜め下方の海底映像を示す画像信号を出力する第1出力手段と、

海底地形図を示す画像信号を出力する第2出力手段と、

前記第1および第2手段から出力された画像信号に基づき、上記斜め下方の海底映像と海底地形図とを、同一画面上に重ね合わせ状態で表示する表示手段と、

前記表示手段によって表示された画面上で船体からの水平距離を示すマーカとを有する水中探知表示装置。

# Espacenet

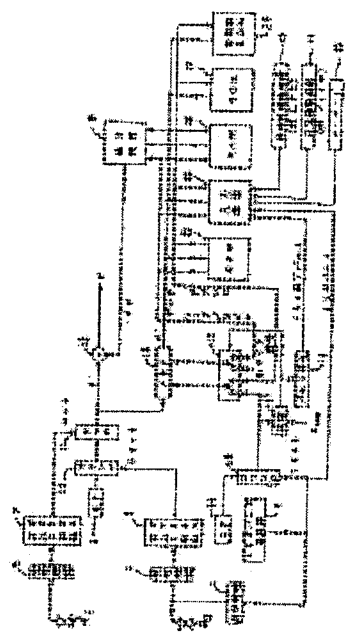
## Bibliographic data: JP 4357487 (A)

### SIDE LOOKING SONAR

| | |
|---|---|
| **Publication date:** | 1992-12-10 |
| **Inventor(s):** | MORIMATSU HIDEJI; SHIBUYA SHOZO + |
| **Applicant(s):** | FURUNO ELECTRIC CO + |
| **Classification:** | **- international:** ***G01S15/89;*** (IPC1-7): G01S15/89<br>**- European:** |
| **Application number:** | JP19910172240 19910712 |
| **Priority number(s):** | JP19910172240 19910712; JP19900212189 19900810 |

### Abstract of JP 4357487 (A)

PURPOSE:To measure the position of an object under water accurately by a method wherein a phase difference is determined at input points of two receivers with respect to a measuring point by calculation and a phase difference is measured with two receivers for the same measuring point to obtain a deviation of phase so that the phase difference measured is corrected by the deviation of phase. CONSTITUTION:When a trigger pulse from a trigger pulse generator 3 is inputted into a CPU21 through an input device 22, a measuring position of own ship and the bearing of navigation are read in form a highly accurate position measuring device 23 and a bearing measuring device 24 to determine an intersection with a contour line based on the value and a probing range inputted from a keyboard 25 beforehand. Distances are determined from the centers of receivers R1 and R2 to the sea surface below the intersection to obtain a phase difference phi" corresponding thereto. A phase difference phi' is measured between two receivers for the same measuring point to obtain phi'-phi"=dphi as deviation of phase between the two receivers. The phase difference measured actually thereafter is corrected by the deviation dphi of phase to remove the deviation of phase difference generated between two receiving systems thereby measuring the position of an object under water accurately.



Last updated:
12.10.2011 Worldwide Database 5.7.23.2; 92p

(19)日本国特許庁（ＪＰ）　(12) 公開特許公報（A）　(11)特許出願公開番号

特開平4－357487

(43)公開日　平成４年(1992)12月10日

| (51)Int.Cl.5 | 識別記号 | 庁内整理番号 | ＦＩ | 技術表示箇所 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ｇ０１Ｓ　15/89 | Ａ | 8113－５Ｊ | | |

審査請求　未請求　請求項の数２(全 11 頁)

(21)出願番号　特願平3－172240

(22)出願日　平成３年(1991)７月12日

(31)優先権主張番号　特願平2－212189

(32)優先日　平２(1990)８月10日

(33)優先権主張国　日本（ＪＰ）

(71)出願人　000166247
古野電気株式会社
兵庫県西宮市芦原町９番52号

(72)発明者　森松　秀治
兵庫県西宮市芦原町９番52号　古野電気株式会社内

(72)発明者　渋谷　正三
兵庫県西宮市芦原町９番52号　古野電気株式会社内

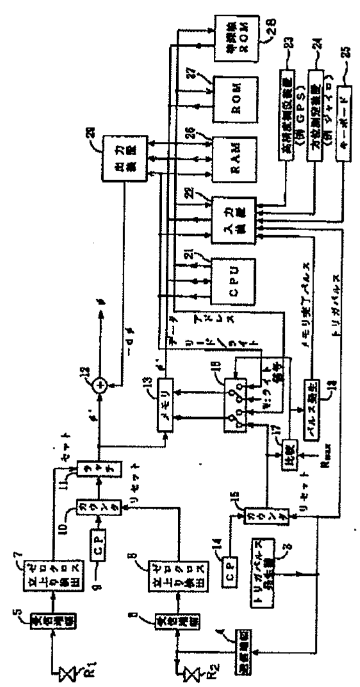
(74)代理人　弁理士　青山　葆　（外１名）

(54)【発明の名称】　サイドルツキングソナー

(57)【要約】

【目的】　２つの受信系間で生じ位相のずれをなくして正確な水中探知を可能にする。

【構成】　予め正確に測定されたある測定点に対し、計算により、２つの受波器の入力点での位相差φ”を求めておき、そして同じ測定点に対して２つの受波器により位相差φ’を測定し、φ’－φ”＝ｄφを２つの受信系間での位相のずれとして、これ以降に実際に測定した位相差をこの位相のずれｄφで補正することにより、２組の受信系間で生じる位相差のずれを除去して水中物体の位置を正確に測定する。






RAY-1002
451 of 737

【特許請求の範囲】

【請求項1】　鉛直線に対し所定角を形成する直線上の所定距離離れた位置に設けられた一対の第1および第2の受波器を備え、いずれか一方の受波器より、垂直方向に広くて水平方向に狭い送波ビームを形成し、前記ビームのエコーを第1及び第2の受波器で捕捉し、これら第1および第2の受波器にそれぞれ接続される第1および第2の受信回路より得られる両受信号間の位相差を位相差検出手段で検出し、該位相差とエコーの帰来に要した時間とに基づき被探知物体の深度および自船からの被探知物体までの水平距離を算出表示するサイドルッキングソナーにおいて、予め計測した海底の深度情報を記憶する深度情報記憶手段と；海底のある測定点よりのエコーに対して上記位相差検出手段で検出された位相差φ'と、前記と同じ測定点に対して前記深度情報記憶手段より読み出した深度及び、測位装置で得られる前記測定点に対する自船位置の水平距離により求められる、第1および第2の受波器の入力点での位相差φ"とから、第1の受波器および受信回路と、第2の受波器および受信回路との位相特性の差異により、両受信系を通過する信号間に生じる位相のずれとしてφ'－φ"＝dφを演算する位相ずれ演算手段と；測定時に前記位相差検出手段で検出される位相差を、前記位相ずれ演算手段で演算された位相のずれdφで補正する補正手段と；を備えたことを特徴とするサイドルッキングソナー。

【請求項2】　鉛直線に対し所定角を形成する直線上の所定距離離れた位置に設けられた一対の第1および第2の受波器を備え、いずれか一方の受波器より、垂直方向に広くて水平方向に狭い送波ビームを形成し、前記ビームのエコーを第1及び第2の受波器で捕捉し、これら第1および第2の受波器にそれぞれ接続される第1および第2の受信回路より得られる両受信号間の位相差を位相差検出手段で検出し、該位相差とエコーの帰来に要した時間とに基づき被探知物体の深度および自船からの被探知物体までの水平距離を算出表示するサイドルッキングソナーにおいて、当該サイドルッキングソナーの送受波ビームと一部重なる多数のペンシル形送受波ビームを自船の下方および側方に形成し、エコーの帰来するまでに要する時間と、各ペンシルビームの方向から被探知物体の深度および自船からの被探知物体までの水平距離を算出するスキャニングソナーで計測した前記深度および水平距離を受ける深度情報入力部と；水中のある測定対象よりのエコーに対して上記位相差検出手段で検出された位相差φ'と、前記深度情報入力部に入力された、前記同じ測定対象に対する深度および水平距離により求められる、第1および第2の受波器の入力点での位相差φ"とから、第1の受波器および受信回路と、第2の受波器および受信回路との位相特性の差異により、両受信系を通過する信号間に生じる位相のずれとしてφ'－φ"＝dφを演算する位相ずれ演算手段と；測定時に前記位相差検出手段で検出される位相差を、前記位相ずれ演算手段で演算された位相のずれdφで補正する補正手段と；を備えたことを特徴とするサイドルッキングソナー。

【発明の詳細な説明】

【0001】

【産業上の利用分野】本発明は、自船の側方に対し広範囲に水中を探知するサイドルッキングソナーに関する。

【0002】

【従来の技術】サイドルッキングソナーは、図1に示すように、自船の両舷に装備した送受波器から左右に拡がる扇状の超音波ビーム(例えば扇形角60°、航行方向の拡がり角1.6°)を送波し、そのエコーを同送受波器にて検出することにより、海底の起伏、底質変化、魚群等を検出レベルに応じて濃淡あるいは色別表示するものである。

【0003】図2は送受波器の取り付け例を示しており、両舷にそれぞれ二つの受波器$R_1$,$R_2$を備え、一方の受波器$R_2$は送波兼用としている。以下に、これらの送受波器を用いた水中物体の深度および水平距離の測定法を図3を用いて説明する。

【0004】$R_1$および$R_2$は右舷側の受波器であり、Sを水中物体とする。両受波器$R_1$，$R_2$間の距離をD、鉛直方向に対して両受波器$R_1$，$R_2$を結ぶラインのなす角度をα、両受波器$R_1$，$R_2$の中点Oと水中物体Sとを結ぶ線分OSの長さをr、中点Oに対する水中物体Sの水平および深度をh，d、両受波器$R_1$，$R_2$を結ぶラインに垂直な方向と線分OSのなす角度をθとする。

【0005】線分$R_1$－Sと線分$R_2$－Sとの長さの差をΔYとすると、

$\Delta Y = 2 \cdot (D/2) \cdot \sin\theta$　(1)

とみなせ、用いた音波の波長をλとするとΔYにおける位相差φは、

$\phi = 360° \cdot \Delta Y / \lambda$

$= 360° \cdot D \cdot \sin\theta / \lambda$　(2)

となる。(2)式より、

$\theta = \sin^{-1}\{\phi \cdot \lambda / (360° \cdot D)\}$　(3)

中点Oからみた水中物体Sの方向をθhとすると、

$\theta h = \alpha + \theta$　(4)

が得られる。

【0006】水中音速をc、線分OSを音波が往復する時間をtとすると直線距離rは、

$r = t \cdot c / 2$　(5)

従って、

$d = r \cdot \sin\theta h$　(6)

$h = r \cdot \cos\theta h$　(7)

が得られる。尚、tは、O－Sを往復する時間であるが、$R_2$－S≒O－Sとみなせるので線分$R_2$－Sを往復する時間とした。

【0007】このように、受波器$R_2$で送波したビームに伴う同一水中物体よりのエコーを二つの受波器$R_1$，R

$_2$にて受波し、このときの受波信号の位相差、つまり距離差を測定することにより、二つの受波器に対する水中物体の方向が求まる。一方、水中物体Ｓまでの直線距離ｒは、音波の要した往復時間より求まるので(6)および(7)式から水中物体の深度ｄおよび自船直下からの水平距離ｈが決定される。

【０００８】

【発明が解決しようとする課題】上記の従来の測定装置では、各舷毎に受波器およびこれらに接続される受信回路の２組の受信系が設けられているため、上記位相差を正確に求めるためには、２組の受信系の間で位相特性が同じになるように、つまり両受信系で生じる位相遅れが等しくなるように調整する必要があるが、経年変化や温度変化等により、受波器および受信回路で位相特性に差が生じ、測定した前記位相差にこのような位相特性の差異による位相のずれが含まれると、水中物体の正確な位置を測定できなくなるといった課題があった。本発明は、上述した課題を解決するためになされたものであり、２組の受信系間で生じる位相のずれを補正することにより、水中物体の位置を正確に測定できるサイドルッキングソナーを提供することを目的とする。

【０００９】

【課題を解決するための手段】第１発明のサイドルッキングソナーは、鉛直線に対し所定角を形成する直線上の所定距離離れた位置に設けられた一対の第１および第２の受波器を備え、いずれか一方の受波器より、垂直方向に広くて水平方向に狭い送波ビームを形成し、前記ビームのエコーを第１及び第２の受波器で捕捉し、これら第１および第２の受波器にそれぞれ接続される第１および第２の受信回路より得られる両受信号間の位相差を位相差検出手段で検出し、該位相差とエコーの帰来に要した時間とに基づき被探知物体の深度および自船からの被探知物体までの水平距離を算出表示するサイドルッキングソナーにおいて、予め計測した海底の深度情報を記憶する深度情報記憶手段と；海底のある測定点よりのエコーに対して上記位相差検出手段で検出された位相差$\phi'$と、前記と同じ測定点に対して前記深度情報記憶手段より読み出した深度及び、測位装置で得られる前記測定点に対する自船位置の水平距離により求められる、第１および第２の受波器の入力点での位相差$\phi''$とから、第１の受波器および受信回路と、第２の受波器および受信回路との位相特性の差異により、両受信系を通過する信号間に生じる位相のずれとして$\phi'-\phi''=d\phi$を演算する位相ずれ演算手段と；測定時に前記位相差検出手段で検出される位相差を、前記位相ずれ演算手段で演算された位相のずれ$d\phi$で補正する補正手段と；を備えたことを特徴とする。

【００１０】第２発明のサイドルッキングソナーは、鉛直線に対し所定角を形成する直線上の所定距離離れた位置に設けられた一対の第１および第２の受波器を備え、いずれか一方の受波器より、垂直方向に広くて水平方向に狭い送波ビームを形成し、前記ビームのエコーを第１及び第２の受波器で捕捉し、これら第１および第２の受波器にそれぞれ接続される第１および第２の受信回路より得られる両受信号間の位相差を位相差検出手段で検出し、該位相差とエコーの帰来に要した時間とに基づき被探知物体の深度および自船からの被探知物体までの水平距離を算出表示するサイドルッキングソナーにおいて、当該サイドルッキングソナーの送受波ビームと一部重なる多数のペンシル形送受波ビームを自船の下方および側方に形成し、エコーの帰来するまでに要する時間と、各ペンシルビームの方向から被探知物体の深度および自船からの被探知物体までの水平距離を算出するスキャニングソナーで計測した前記深度および水平距離を受ける深度情報入力部と；水中のある測定対象よりのエコーに対して上記位相差検出手段で検出された位相差$\phi'$と、前記深度情報入力部に入力された、前記同じ測定対象に対する深度および水平距離により求められる、第１および第２の受波器の入力点での位相差$\phi''$とから、第１の受波器および受信回路と、第２の受波器および受信回路との位相特性の差異により、両受信系を通過する信号間に生じる位相のずれとして$\phi'-\phi''=d\phi$を演算する位相ずれ演算手段と；測定時に前記位相差検出手段で検出される位相差を、前記位相ずれ演算手段で演算された位相のずれ$d\phi$で補正する補正手段と；を備えたことを特徴とする。

【００１１】

【作用】図４において、ある海底点からのエコーが受波器$R_1$および$R_2$に入射するときの位相差が$\phi$であっても、受波器$R_1$および受信回路$S_1$で生じる位相遅れを$d\phi_1$、受波器$R_2$および受信回路$S_2$で生じる位相遅れを$d\phi_2$とすると、位相差検出回路Ｔより出力される位相差$\phi'$は、

$$\phi'=\phi+(d\phi_1-d\phi_2) \quad (8)$$

となる。$d\phi_1-d\phi_2=d\phi$が二つの受信系間で生じる位相のずれである。

【００１２】一方、等深線図などから各海底点に対する深度を記憶させた深度情報記憶手段から読み出し、この深度と、前記測定点に対して測位装置の出力する自船位置を用いて演算した自船からの水平距離とに基づき、第１および第２の受波器の入力点での位相差$\phi''$が演算により求められる。深度情報記憶手段から読み出した深度が正確でかつ、二つの受信系統間で位相のずれがなければ、$\phi''=\phi'$となるが実際には二つの受信系統間に位相のずれ$d\phi$があり、この位相のずれ$d\phi$は、次式で求まる。

$$\phi'-\phi''=d\phi \quad (9)$$

【００１３】このようにして位相差のずれ$d\phi$がわかれば、測定時に位相差検出手段で検出された位相差$\phi'$に対して、補正手段により位相差のずれ$d\phi$で補正すれ

ば、前記位相差φ'に含まれていた位相差のずれdφが除去される。

【0014】第2発明は、上記の予め計測した海底の深度情報に代えて、スキャニングソナーによる正確な深度情報を用いるものであり、ここでサイドルッキングソナーとスキャニングソナーとの相異点について説明する。サイドルッキングソナーは図5に示すように、船底から船首方向には狭い角度(φL)で左舷および右舷方向にはそれぞれ広い角度(θL)の送受波ビーム100を形成することにより、X、Yで示す領域が探査される。このソナーは、航行方向の分解能が優れており、これにより海底を探査すれば水中俯瞰図ともいうべきものが得られ、例えば朝日に照らされた山々を飛行機から眺めているかのごとく、遠方まで海底の起伏が陰影でもって細かに表示されるので海底質を的確に知ることができる。しかし、このソナーでは、上述した両受波系統における位相差が原因で探知物体に対する深度および水平距離が不正確であるという欠点がある。

【0015】一方、スキャニグソナーでは図6に示すように、船底より、船首方向に狭く(例えば1.6°)、両舷側方向に扇状に広い(90°)送波ビーム101を形成し、一方、この送波ビーム101と直交するように、船首方向に広く(20°)、側方向に狭い(2°)受波ビーム102を形成し、かつこの受波ビーム102を側方向に走査することにより、送波ビーム101による領域Zが順に探査される。船の真下付近での探知物体の深度および水平距離を正確に検出できるという利点があるが、俯角が小さくなる側方遠方で分解能が悪くなり、そのため海底の細かな起伏がわからず、深度および水平距離も不正確になるという欠点がある。

【0016】このようにスキャニングソナーにおいては船の直下方向で高い分解能が得られるので、この直下方向の正確な探査結果でもってサイドルッキングソナーにおける両送受波系統の位相差を補正しようとしたものであり、その具体的な構成については実施例にて説明することとする。

【0017】

【実施例】図7は、本発明のサイドルッキングソナーの一実施例を示す制御ブロック図であり、この図7では、右舷側の2つの受波器$R_1$、$R_2$の受信系における位相差を検出する部分のみを示しており、左舷側も同じ構成となる。$R_1$および$R_2$は既述の受波器であり、いずれもI個の超音波振動子で構成され、一方の受波器$R_2$は送波兼用としている。3は、トリガパルスを発生するトリガパルス発生器であり、4は、トリガパルス発生器3よりのトリガパルスにより受波器$R_2$に送信電力を供給する送信増幅器である。5および6は、受波器$R_1$および$R_2$で検出されたそれぞれI個の受波信号を増幅する受信増幅器である。7及び8は受信増幅器5および6よりの出力信号が零点を負から正に横切る時点を検出してパルスを出力するゼロクロス立上り検出器である。9は、クロックパルスを発生するクロックパルス回路であり、10は、カウンタであり、ゼロクロス立上り検出器8よりのパルスがリセット信号として入力されると、クロックパルス回路9よりのクロックパルスを0からカウントする。11は、ラッチ回路であり、ゼロクロス立上り検出器7よりのパルスがセット信号として入力されたとき、カウンタ10におけるカウント値をラッチし、その値は、加算器12とメモリ13とに送出される。



【0018】14は、クロックパルス回路であり、15は、カウンタであり、前記トリガパルス発生器3より出力されるトリガがリセット信号として入力されたときにクロックパルス14よりのクロックパルスを0からカウントする。そのカウント値は、切替器16に供給されると共に、$R_{max}$値と比較する比較器17に入力され、この比較器17の出力信号は、切替器16の切替信号として送出されるとともにパルス発生器18に入力される。

【0019】21は、CPUであり、ROM27に格納された制御プログラムに従って後で述べるような演算を行う。22は入力装置であり、自船の位置を検出する高精度測位装置23、方位を検出する方位測定装置24およびキーボード25よりの信号が入力されるとともに、前記トリガパルス発生器3よりのトリガパルスおよびパルス発生器18より出力されるメモリ完了パルスが入力される。26は、CPU21での演算に必要となる各種データを随時記憶するRAMである。28は、深度情報記憶手段である等深線ROMであり、各等深線毎の位置を緯度経度で表したものをROM化したものであり、位置をアクセスすることによりその地点の海底深度が得られる。29は出力装置であり、CPU21で求められた$-d\phi$の値を前記加算器12に送出する。

【0020】上記構成の制御回路の動作を説明する。図8に示す時点$T_0$、$T_2$、$T_4$は受波器$R_2$の送信タイミングを示しており、時点$T_0$にて送信のためにトリガパルス発生器3よりトリガパルスが出力されると、カウンタ15は“0”にリセットされクロックパルス回路14よりのクロックパルスがカウントされると共に、送信増幅器4より送信信号が出力され、受波器$R_2$より図1に示したような右舷側に扇状に拡がる超音波のビームが送波される。この超音波ビームの送波により、最初に自船直下の海底面よりのエコーが受波器$R_2$で検出され、次にわずかな時間差をおいて受波器$R_1$で検出され、受信増幅器6,5より図9に示すような信号が出力される。受信増幅器6の出力信号に対して、ゼロクロス立上り検出器8により零レベルを負から正に横切ったときの時点$t_1$が検出されてパルスが出力される。このパルスがリセット信号としてカウンタ10に供給されることにより、カウンタ10はクリアされクロックパルス回路9より出力されるクロックパルスがカウントされ、そのカウント値が逐次にラッチ回路11に入力される。

【0021】一方、受信増幅器5の出力信号に対しては、ゼロクロス立上り検出器7により零レベルを負から正に横切ったときの時点$t_2$が検出されてパルスが出力され、このパルスがセット信号としてラッチ回路11に供給されると、このラッチ回路11は、入力されていたカウント値をラッチする。従ってラッチ回路11は、時点$t_1$から時点$t_2$までの間のクロックパルスの数をラッチすることになる。このパルス数は、二つの受波器$R_1$, $R_2$の取り付け位置と水平物体の方向に起因する時間差であり、クロックパルス回路9のパルスの周期を、用いた音波の周期の1／360にすれば、この時間差は上記の位相差φ'で表され、この値φ'は加算器12およびメモリ13に入力される。続く時点$t_3$から$t_4$間においても同様にして位相差φ'が求められ、このようにして時間が経過するにつれて自船直下より右方に次第に遠ざかる海底面よりのエコーが次々に検出されてそれらの位相差φ'がメモリ13に送出される。

【0022】一方、カウンタ15のカウント値が切替器16を介してメモリ13にアドレスとして送出されており、かつ、この切替器16を介してライト信号が印加されているので、メモリ13に入力される位相差φ'は所定のアドレスに次々に格納される。又、時点$T_0$以降においてはCPU21にて図10のフローチャートに示した動作が並行して行われる。

【0023】即ち、トリガパルス発生器3よりのトリガパルスが入力装置22を介してCPU21に入力されると、ステップS1からステップS2へと進み、高精度測位装置23および方位測定装置24よりの自船の測位置および航行の方位を読み込み、この値と予めキーボード25により入力されている探査範囲（本実施例では両舷側方向に1000m）をもとにして、図11に示す等深線図において右舷側の探査範囲での等深線との交点A, B, C, D, Eを求める。次のステップS3で前記の各交点までの水平距離hを求め、このhと、このときの深度d（等深線の値）とを(6)式及び(7)式に入力することにより、受波器$R_1$と$R_2$の中心から各交点下の海面までの距離rを求め、又、そのときの位相差φ"を(2)式から求める。ステップS4では、カウンタ15のカウント値が$R_{max}$となり、パルス発生回路18からメモリ完了パルスが出力される時点$T_1$になるのを待つ。尚、ステップS2およびステップS3の処理時間は短く、メモリ完了パルスが出力される時点$T_1$で既に終了している。

【0024】さて、時点$T_1$になり、比較器17から切替器16に対して切替信号が送出され、切替器16の接点が右方に切り替わることにより、CPU21は、ステップS5において、この切替器16を介してメモリ13に、リード信号を送出し、更に距離rにおける測定位相差φ'を読み出すべく、所定のアドレス信号Rをメモリ13に送出することにより、メモリ13に記憶されていた交点AないしEに対する位相差φ'を順次読み出す。



ここで$r=R\times\Delta r$である。Δrはカウンタ15の入力クロックパルス周期tpとすると、$\Delta r=c\cdot tp/2$となる。以上の説明でわかるように、時点$T_0$ないし$T_1$の間がエコー取り込み期間であり、従って、この期間で所望の範囲よりのエコーが検出されるよう、比較器17に対する$R_{max}$の設定値が決められる。なお、比較器17はカウンタ15のカウント値が0になった時、切替器16を左方へ切り替える。

【0025】図12は、各交点AないしEに対する、実測の位相差φ'（●記号で示す）と等深線図より求めた位相差φ"（記号で示す）とを示したものであり、ステップS6では、これらの各交点で対応する両位相差の引き算、φ'－φ"を行い、それらの平均値を上記の位相差のずれdφとする。このステップS5およびステップS6の処理時間は短く、次にトリガパルスが出力される時点$T_2$には終了している。

【0026】この位相差のずれ－dφが出力装置29を介して加算器12に送出されることにより、この加算器12において、φ'－dφの演算が行われ、両受波器$R_1$、$R_2$の入射時の位相差φが出力される。尚、ここで補正される位相差φ'は前回の送信で得た－dφで補正されることになるが、送信間隔程度の短い時間ではdφの値は変化しないので差し支えない。もし、今回の送信に基づくdφで今回の位相差φ'を補正するには、メモリ13を2個使用して、次回の送信時に片方のメモリに次回の位相差φ'を記憶させると共に今回の位相差φ'をカウンタ15の値に従って読み出し、dφで補正すればよい。

【0027】第2発明になるサイドルッキングソナーの一実施例を図13および図14に示している。図13においては図7と異なる箇所について述べる。31は、後で述べるスキャニングソナーにおける受波ビーム数Mと同値としたM進のHカウンタであり、トリガパルス発生器3より出力されるトリガがリセット信号として入力されたときクロックパルス14よりのクロックパルスを0からカウントする。そのカウント値は、図14の切替器46に供給され、又、図14の切換器43の切換信号として送出され、更にそのカウント値が(M－1)から0になる時の桁上げパルスがRカウンタ15に送出される。Rカウンタ15はN進カウンタであり、トリガパルス発生器3より出力されるトリガがリセット信号として入力されたとき、Hカウンタ31よりの桁上げパルスを0からカウントする。そのカウント値は、切換器16および図14の切換器46に供給されると共に、$R_{max}$（$R_{max}<N$）値と比較する比較器17に入力される。この比較器17の出力は、パルス発生器18と、切換器16および図14の切換器46の各々の切換信号として送出される。入力装置22にはパルス発生器18より出力されるメモリ完了パルスが入力される。

【0028】図14は、図13のサイドルッキングソナ

ーに付加されるスキャニングソナー部の一実施例を示している。$R_3$およびＴＸは、受波器および送波器であり、図１５の展開図に示されるように、受波器$R_3$は、航行方向と直角の方向にｊ個の超音波振動子が配列されており、送波器ＴＸは、航行方向にｋ個の超音波振動子が配列されている。右側にある$R_1$、$R_2$は、図１３における受波器であり、左側の$R_1'$、$R_2'$は左舷側の受波器である。

【００２９】４０は、送信増幅器であり、４１は、受波器$R_3$のｊ個の超音波振動子よりの受波信号をそれぞれ増幅する受信増幅器である。４２は、位相合成回路であり、ｊ系統の各受波信号を公知の技法で位相合成することにより、図６で示されるように、側方向に順に走査されるＭ個の受波ビームを形成する。切換器４３は、位相合成回路４２により形成されたＭ個の受波ビームを順に取り出し、Ａ／Ｄ変換器４４にてデジタル化した後にメモリ４５に供給する。

【００３０】上記構成の制御回路の動作を再び図８および図９を用いて説明する。図８に示す時点$T_0$、$T_2$、$T_4$は受波器$R_2$および送波器ＴＸの送信タイミングを示しており、時点$T_0$にて送信のためにトリガパルス発生器３よりトリガパルスが出力されると、Ｒカウンタ１５およびＨカウンタ３１は“０”にリセットされると共に、送信増幅器４、４０より予め定められたパワー、パルス幅および周波数の送信信号が出力され、受波器$R_2$により図５に示したように右舷側に扇状に拡がる送波ビーム１００が形成され、又、送波器ＴＸにより、図６に示したように両舷方向に拡がる送波ビーム１０１が形成される。そして、海底から反射された探知信号は受波器$R_1$、$R_2$、$R_3$で受波され、受信増幅器５、６、４１にて増幅される。

【００３１】図１３のサイドルッキングソナーにおいては、超音波ビームの送波により、最初に自船直下の海底面よりのエコーが受波器$R_2$で検出され、次にわずかな時間差をおいて受波器$R_1$で検出され、受信増幅器６，５より図９に示すような信号が出力される。受信増幅器６の出力信号に対して、ゼロクロス立上り検出器８により零レベルを負から正に横切ったときの時点$t_1$が検出されてパルスが出力される。このパルスがリセット信号としてカウンタ１０に供給されることにより、カウンタ１０はクリアされクロックパルス回路９より出力されるクロックパルスがカウントされ、そのカウント値が逐次にラッチ回路１１に入力される。

【００３２】受信増幅器５の出力信号に対しては、ゼロクロス立上り検出器７により零レベルを負から正に横切ったときの時点$t_2$が検出されてパルスが出力され、このパルスがセット信号としてラッチ回路１１に供給されると、このラッチ回路１１は、入力されていたカウント値をラッチする。従ってラッチ回路１１は、時点$t_1$から時点$t_2$までの間のクロックパルスの数をラッチすることになる。このパルス数は、二つの受波器$R_1$，$R_2$の取り付け位置と水平物体の方向に起因する時間差であり、クロックパルス回路９のパルスの周期を、用いた音波の周期の１／３６０にすれば、この時間差は上記の位相差$\phi'$で表され、この値$\phi'$は加算器１２およびメモリ１３に入力される。続く時点$t_3$から$t_4$間においても同様にして位相差$\phi'$が求められ、このようにして時間が経過するにつれて自船直下より右方に次第に遠ざかる海底面よりのエコーが次々に検出されてそれらの位相差$\phi'$がメモリ１３に送出される。

【００３３】一方、図１４のスキャニングソナー部においては、送波器ＴＸによる送波により、海底面よりのエコーが受波器$R_3$で受波される。このＪ個の受波信号は、位相合成回路４２により位相合成され、走査角の異なるＭ個の受波ビームが形成される。Ｈカウンタ３１よりの切換信号により切換器４３が制御されることにより、Ｍ個の受波ビームの中からＨカウンタ３１のカウント値が示す方向の受波ビームが選択され、Ａ／Ｄ変換器４４を介してメモリ４５に格納される。

【００３４】ここでスキャニングソナーにおける動作を図１７を用いて更に詳しく述べる。$\theta sm$は、ｍ番目のビームの直下方向ｄよりの角度（右舷側を＋）を示し、$\theta sm = \Delta\theta s\{(M-1)/2-m\}$、ここでＭは奇数であり、（Ｍ－１）／２番目のビームは直下方向である。$Rm$は、ｍ番目のビーム内に存在していた海底のメモリ４５におけるＲ方向の位置を示す。$rm$は、ｍ番目のビーム内に存在していた海底の自船からの直線距離（単位m）を示し、$rm = \Delta r \times Rm$である。$hm$、$dm$は、ｍ番目のビーム内に存在していた海底の自船からの水平距離と進度である。$hm$は右舷側を＋、$dm$は下方を＋としており、いずれも単位はメートルである。

$hm = rm \times \sin\theta sm$、$dm = rm \times \cos\theta sm$

の関係がある。又、$\Delta r$はメモリ１３およびメモリ４５にデータを取り込むｒ方向（距離方向）の間隔でＨカウンタ３１の出力する桁上げパルスの周期を$tp$とすると、$\Delta r = c \cdot tp/2$となる。

【００３５】図１３、図１４に戻り、メモリ１３およびメモリ４５には、それぞれサイドルッキングソナーの位相差とスキャニングソナーの探知信号が$\Delta r$(m)ごとに$r_{max}$まで１送信分記憶される。$r_{max}$は、本発明装置が使用される海域において図５におけるビーム端でも海底に到達するのに十分な船からの直線距離である。ここで$r_{max} = R_{max} \times \Delta r$である。ラッチ回路１１およびＡ／Ｄ変換器４４の出力ビット数を$\beta_1$、$\beta_2$とすると、メモリ１３、４５の記憶容量は、それぞれ$\beta_1 \times R_{max}$、$\beta_2 \times R_{max} \times M$となる。

【００３６】Ｒカウンタ１５のカウント値が$R_{max}$になるまでの$T_0$ないし$T_1$間は切換器１６、４６は図示したように左方に切り替わっており、従って、Ｒカウンタ１５のカウント値は切換器１６を介してメモリ１３にアド

レスとして送出され、かつ、この切換器１６を介してライト信号が印加されているので、メモリ１３に入力される位相差φ'は所定のＲアドレスに次々に格納される。

【００３７】一方、Ｈカウンタ３１およびＲカウンタ１５のカウント値が切換器４６を介してメモリ３８に送出されており、かつ、この切換器４６を介してライト信号が印加されているので、メモリ４５に入力される探知信号は所定のＲとＨで決まるアドレスに次々に格納される。

【００３８】さて、時点$T_1$になり、メモリ１３、４５への信号の書込みが終了すると、比較器１７から切替器１６、４６に対して切替信号が送出され、切替器１６、３４の接点が右方に切り替わると同時に、パルス発生器１８よりのメモリ完了パルスが入力装置２２を介してＣＰＵ２１に入力されると、ＣＰＵ２１は、図１６のステップＳ１１からステップＳ１２へと進み、切換器４６を介してメモリ４５にリード信号を送出し、スキャニングソナーのｍ番目のビームで受信したｒ＝０ないしｒmaxまでの探知信号を読み出すべく、所定のアドレス信号をメモリ４５に送出する。つまりＨアドレスはｍとし、Ｒアドレスを０から順に$R_{max}$-1とする。

【００３９】次に読み出した$R_{max}$個の探知信号中、例えば最大の探知信号が存在している位置すなわちＲアドレス値$R_m$を海底位置とする。そして$R_m$、$\theta_{sm}$より$r_m$、$d_m$、$h_m$を求め、その時の位相差φ"を(2),(4),(6),(7)式から求める。なお、図１７と図３の０点は一致しているものとみなす。

【００４０】次にＣＰＵ２１は、ステップＳ１３において、切替器１６を介してメモリ１３に、リード信号を送出し、$R_m$のアドレス信号をメモリ１３に送出することにより、メモリ１３に記憶されていた$r_m$に対する位相差φ'を読み出す。これをスキャニングソナーの右半分のビームに対して、即ちｍ＝０から(Ｍ－１)／２まで繰り返す。

【００４１】以上の説明でわかるように、時点$T_0$ないし$T_1$の間がエコー取り込み期間であり、従って、この期間で所望の範囲よりのエコーが検出されるよう、比較器１７に対する$R_{max}$の設定値が決められる。

【００４２】図１８は、スキャニングソナーによる実測の位相差φ"（●記号で示す）と同じ距離上のサイドルッキングソナーにより求めた位相差φ"(記号で示す)とを示したものであり、ステップＳ４では、これらの各点で両位相差の引き算、$\phi_m' - \phi_m''$を行い、それらの平均値を上記の位相差のずれｄφとする。このステップＳ１１およびステップＳ１４の処理時間は短く、次にトリガパルスが出力される時点$T_2$には終了している。

【００４３】この位相差のずれ－ｄφが出力装置２９を介して加算器１２に送出されることにより、この加算器１２において、φ'－ｄφの演算が行われ、両受波器$R_1$、$R_2$の入射時の位相差φが出力される。尚、ここで補正される位相差φ'は前回の送信で得た－ｄφで補正されることになるが、送信間隔程度の短い時間ではｄφの値は変化しないので差し支えない。もし、今回の送信に基づくｄφで今回の位相差φ'を補正するには、メモリ１３を２個使用して、次回の送信時に片方のメモリに次回の位相差φ'を記憶させると共に今回の位相差φ'をＲカウンタ１５の値に従って読み出し、ｄφで補正すればよい。上記の実施例においては、送波器ＴＸと受波器$R_2$から送波される超音波パルスの周波数は互いに干渉しないよう異なるものでなければならないが、送波器ＴＸと受波器$R_3$は同じ周波数のものであり、受波器$R_1$と$R_2$とは同じものである。又、受波器$R_1$、$R_2$、$R_3$をすべて同じ周波数のものにして送波器ＴＸを省略することもできる。

【００４４】

【発明の効果】以上説明したように、本第１発明では、予め正確に測定されたある測定点に対し、計算により、２つの受波器の入力点での位相差φ"を求めておき、そして同じ測定点に対して２つの受波器により位相差φ'を測定し、φ'－φ"＝ｄφを２つの受信系間での位相のずれとして、これ以降に実際に測定した位相差をこの位相のずれｄφで補正するようにしたので、２組の受信系間で生じる位相差のずれを除去することができ、よって水中物体の位置を正確に測定できる。第２発明は、上記の予め計測した海底の深度情報に代えて、スキャニングソナーによる正確な深度情報を用いるものであり、この装置によればリアルタイムで正確な水中探知を行える。

【図面の簡単な説明】

【図１】　サイドルッキングソナーで形成されるビームを示す斜視図

【図２】　サイドルッキングソナーにおける送受波器の取付け例を示す図

【図３】　サイドルッキングソナーの動作原理を説明するために用いた図

【図４】　本発明の原理を説明するために用いた図

【図５】　サイドルッキングソナーにおける送受波ビームを示す図

【図６】　スキャニングソナーにおける送受波ビームを示す図

【図７】　本第１発明のサイドルッキングソナーの一実施例を示す制御ブロック図

【図８】　図７の制御ブロック図の動作を示すタイムチャート

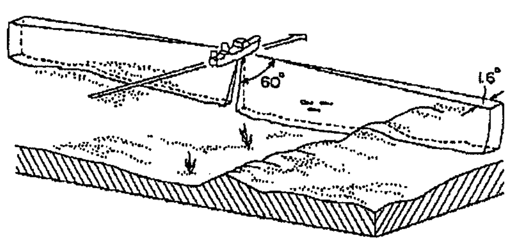
【図９】　図７の制御ブロック図の動作を示すタイムチャート

【図１０】　図７の制御ブロック図の動作を示すフローチャート

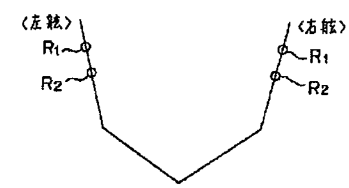
【図１１】　右舷方向の探査範囲内における等深線図との交点を示す図

【図１２】　実測により得た位相差と、等深線からのデータに基づき得た位相差とを示すグラフ
【図１３】　本第２発明のサイドルッキングソナーの一実施例を示す制御ブロック図
【図１４】　図１３の装置に付加されるスキャニングソナー部の一実施例を示すブロック図
【図１５】　図１３の装置における送受波器の取り付け例を示した展開図
【図１６】　図１３の装置の動作を示すフローチャート
【図１７】　図１３の装置において位相差の計算を説明するために用いた図
【図１８】　スキャニングソナーにおけるビームの走査を示した図
【符号の説明】
R　受波器
3　トリガパルス発生器
4　送信増幅器
5　受信増幅器
6　受信増幅器
7　ゼロクロス立上り検出器
8　ゼロクロス立上り検出器
9　クロックパルス回路
１０　カウンタ
１１　ラッチ回路
１２　加算器
１３　メモリ
１４　クロックパルス回路
１５　カウンタ
１６　切替器
１７　比較器
１８　パルス発生器
２１　ＣＰＵ
２２　入力装置
２３　高精度測位装置
２４　方位測定装置
２５　キーボード
２６　ＲＡＭ
２７　ＲＯＭ
２８　等深線ＲＯＭ
２９　出力装置
３１　カウンタ
ＴＸ　送波器
４０　送信増幅器
４１　受信増幅器
４２　位相合成回路
４３　切換器
４４　Ａ／Ｄ変換器
４５　メモリ
４６　切換器

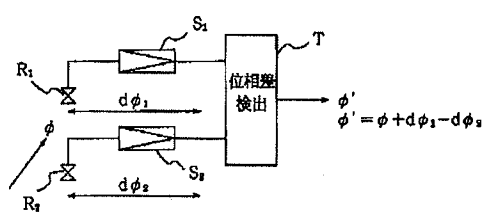
【図1】



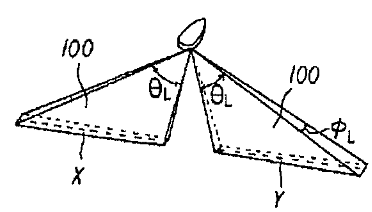

【図2】



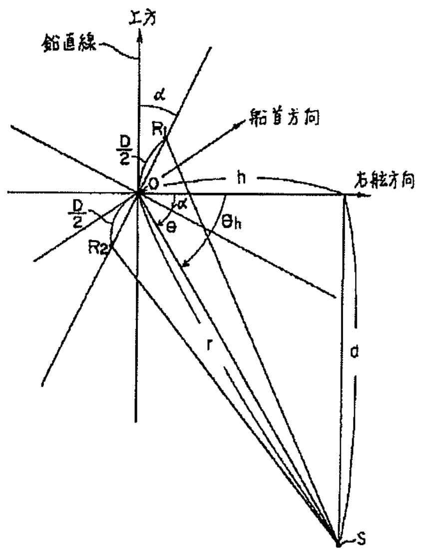

【図4】



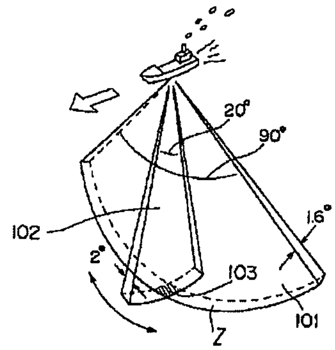

【図5】



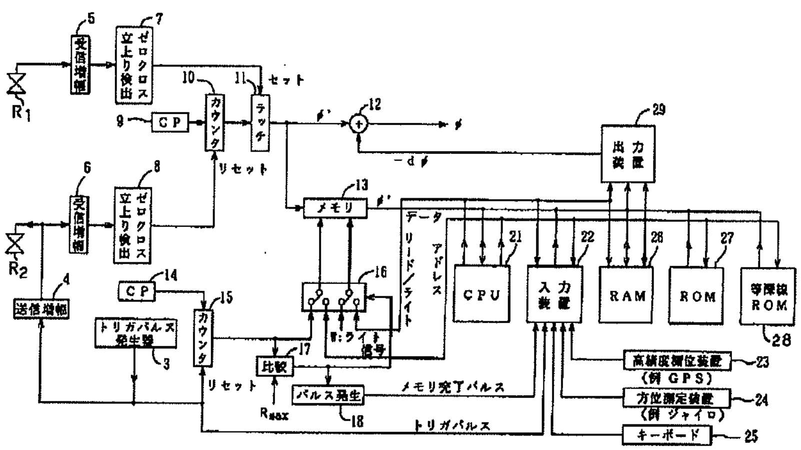
【図3】


上方
鉛直線
船首方向
右舷方向
α
R1
R2
D/2
O
h
θ
θh
r
d
S

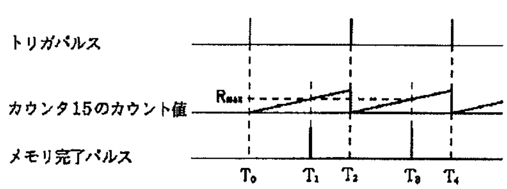
【図6】


20°
90°
1.6°
2°
102
103
101
Z

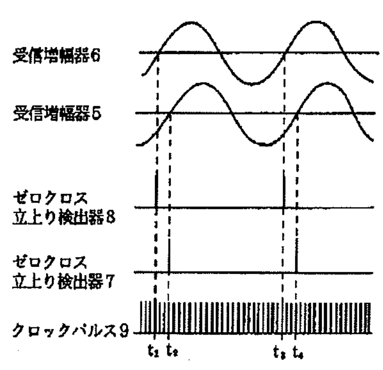
【図7】


受信増幅
ゼロクロス立上り検出
R1
R2
CP
カウンタ
ラッチ
セット
リセット
メモリ
出力装置
データ
リード／ライト
アドレス
CPU
入力装置
RAM
ROM
等深線ROM
送信増幅
トリガパルス発生器
比較
パルス発生
Rmax
W:ライト信号
メモリ完了パルス
トリガパルス
高精度測位装置（例 GPS）
方位測定装置（例 ジャイロ）
キーボード

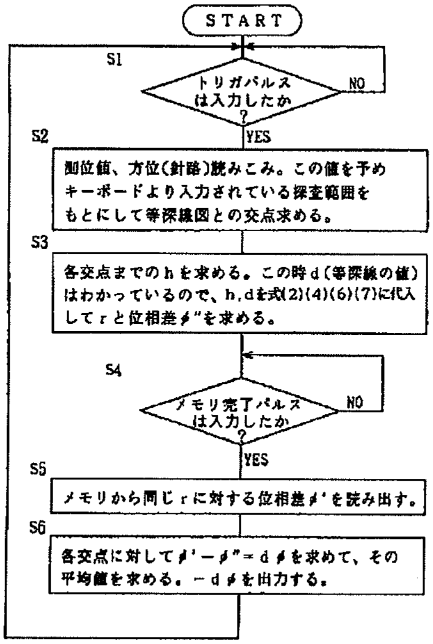
【図8】


トリガパルス
カウンタ15のカウント値
メモリ完了パルス
Rmax
T0
T1
T2
T3
T4

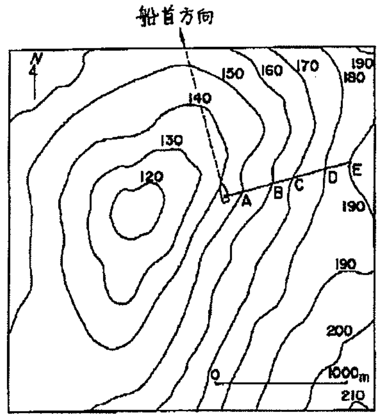
【図9】


受信増幅器6
受信増幅器5
ゼロクロス立上り検出器8
ゼロクロス立上り検出器7
クロックパルス9
t1
t2
t3
t4

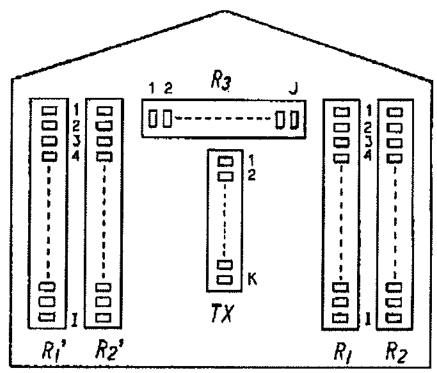
【図10】



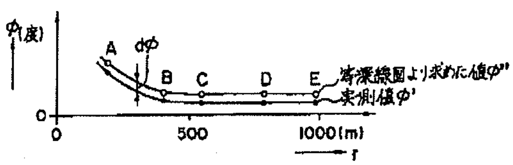

【図11】



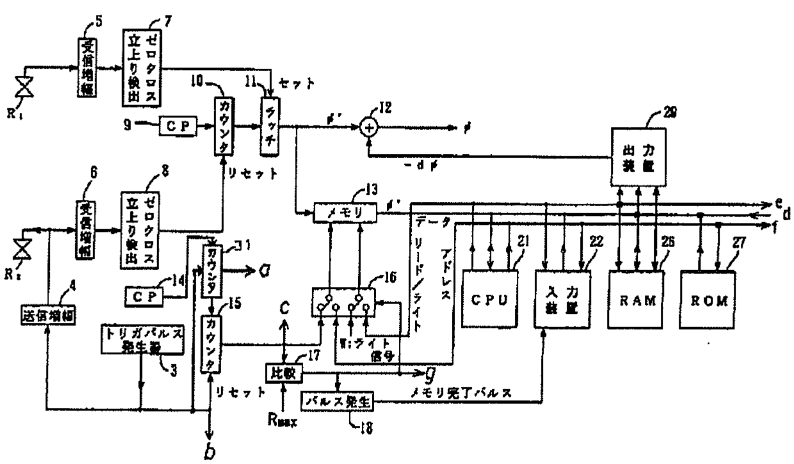

【図15】



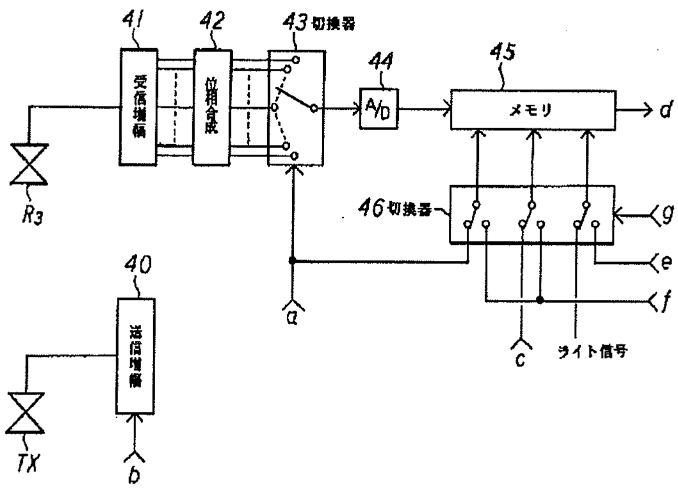

【図12】



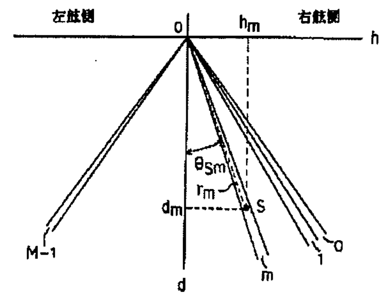

【図13】



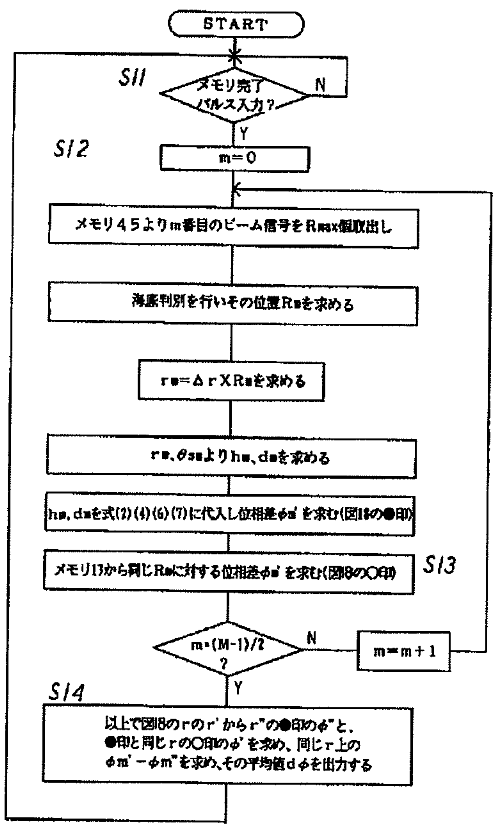
【図１４】



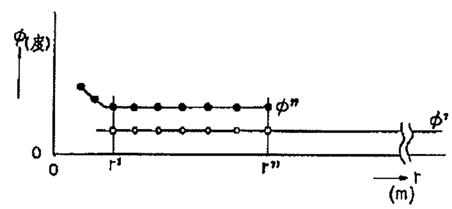

【図１７】




【図１６】




【図１８】



PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : G01S 15/60, 15/89 A1

(11) International Publication Number: WO 98/15846

(43) International Publication Date: 16 April 1998 (16.04.98)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/18061

(22) International Filing Date: 7 October 1997 (07.10.97)

(30) Priority Data:
08/726,644 7 October 1996 (07.10.96) US

(71) Applicant: ROWE–DEINES INSTRUMENTS, INCORPORATED [US/US]; 9855 Businesspark Avenue, San Diego, CA 92131 (US).

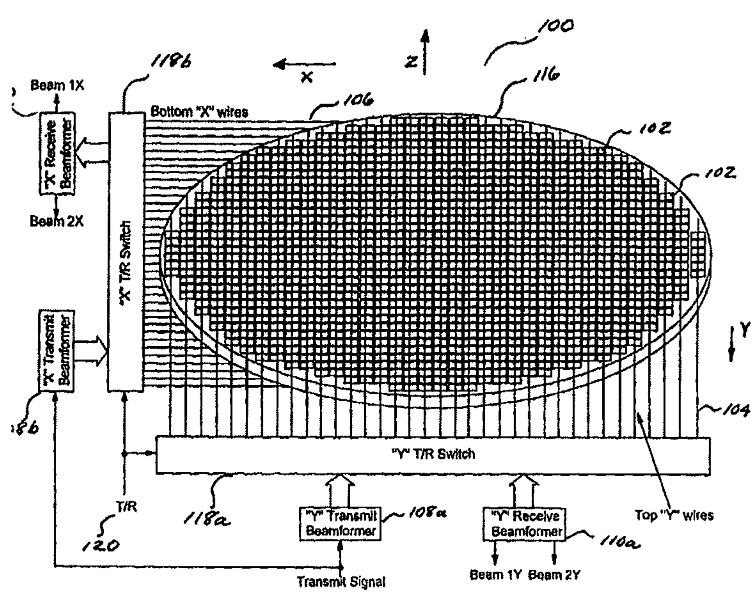
(72) Inventors: YU, Xiaolong; 10631 Calston Way, San Diego, CA 92126 (US). BRADLEY, Steven, E.; 5096 Corte Playa Catalina, San Diego, CA 92124 (US). ROWE, Francis, D.; 5723 Lodi Street, San Diego, CA 92117 (US).

(74) Agent: SIMPSON, Andrew, H.; Knobbe, Martens, Olson and Bear, 16th floor, 620 Newport Center Drive, Newport Beach, CA 92660 (US).

(81) Designated States: JP, NO, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).

**Published**
*With international search report.*

(54) Title: TWO–DIMENSIONAL ARRAY TRANSDUCER AND BEAMFORMER




(57) Abstract

An acoustic array transducer capable of forming narrow dispersion, broadband or narrowband acoustic beam sets in two dimensions with a minimum aperture size. Concurrent yet independent electrical interfacing with array transducer elements allows simultaneous formation of multiple transmit and receive beams inclined within two planar orientations normal to the array face, while requiring a minimum amount of supporting circuitry. A method of economically and accurately fabricating the aforementioned transducer array by incrementally dicing bonded layers of solid discs of transducer materials being rigidly held together is also disclosed.

*FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY*

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

| | |
|---|---|
| AL | Albania |
| AM | Armenia |
| AT | Austria |
| AU | Australia |
| AZ | Azerbaijan |
| BA | Bosnia and Herzegovina |
| BB | Barbados |
| BE | Belgium |
| BF | Burkina Faso |
| BG | Bulgaria |
| BJ | Benin |
| BR | Brazil |
| BY | Belarus |
| CA | Canada |
| CF | Central African Republic |
| CG | Congo |
| CH | Switzerland |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire |
| CM | Cameroon |
| CN | China |
| CU | Cuba |
| CZ | Czech Republic |
| DE | Germany |
| DK | Denmark |
| EE | Estonia |
| ES | Spain |
| FI | Finland |
| FR | France |
| GA | Gabon |
| GB | United Kingdom |
| GE | Georgia |
| GH | Ghana |
| GN | Guinea |
| GR | Greece |
| HU | Hungary |
| IE | Ireland |
| IL | Israel |
| IS | Iceland |
| IT | Italy |
| JP | Japan |
| KE | Kenya |
| KG | Kyrgyzstan |
| KP | Democratic People's Republic of Korea |
| KR | Republic of Korea |
| KZ | Kazakstan |
| LC | Saint Lucia |
| LI | Liechtenstein |
| LK | Sri Lanka |
| LR | Liberia |
| LS | Lesotho |
| LT | Lithuania |
| LU | Luxembourg |
| LV | Latvia |
| MC | Monaco |
| MD | Republic of Moldova |
| MG | Madagascar |
| MK | The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia |
| ML | Mali |
| MN | Mongolia |
| MR | Mauritania |
| MW | Malawi |
| MX | Mexico |
| NE | Niger |
| NL | Netherlands |
| NO | Norway |
| NZ | New Zealand |
| PL | Poland |
| PT | Portugal |
| RO | Romania |
| RU | Russian Federation |
| SD | Sudan |
| SE | Sweden |
| SG | Singapore |
| SI | Slovenia |
| SK | Slovakia |
| SN | Senegal |
| SZ | Swaziland |
| TD | Chad |
| TG | Togo |
| TJ | Tajikistan |
| TM | Turkmenistan |
| TR | Turkey |
| TT | Trinidad and Tobago |
| UA | Ukraine |
| UG | Uganda |
| US | United States of America |
| UZ | Uzbekistan |
| VN | Viet Nam |
| YU | Yugoslavia |
| ZW | Zimbabwe |

# TWO-DIMENSIONAL ARRAY TRANSDUCER AND BEAMFORMER

## Background of the Invention

### 1. Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to a planar array sonar transducer which simultaneously forms multiple, narrow dispersion acoustic beam sets in two planar dimensions normal to the array face.

### 2. Description of Related Technology

Transducers which simultaneously generate multiple narrow acoustic beams inclined outward in two axes from a plane are currently used in different types of acoustic backscatter systems that measure velocity and/or distance in two or three dimensions. Examples include Acoustic Doppler Velocity Sensors (ADVS) which employ a simple set of four beams in a "Janus" configuration for two or three axis velocity measurement, sonars which measure distance to target in the water (such as forward scanning sonars), and bottom mapping sonars.

ADVS's are widely used for measurement of vertical profiles of water current measurements and for earth and/or water referenced velocity measurement for vessel navigation. They measure 3-axis velocities by measuring velocity along lines of position defined by narrow acoustic beams. A minimum of three beams oriented at different directions are required to measure the three orthogonal velocity components. Typically four narrow (1-4°) conical transmit/receive beams are employed positioned in two axes of a plane surface and inclined relative to the normal to that plane. This configuration, well known in the acoustic arts, is referred to as a Janus configuration; the two sets of narrow conical beams are symmetrically inclined outward and positioned at four 90° circumferential increments on the surface of a larger (typically 60°) outward opening cone. Currently available transducer technology used to produce this four beam configuration include assemblies of 4-piston transducers or a pair of one-dimensional phased array transducers (i.e., arrays in which acoustic beams are formed in one plane only).

Conventional 4-piston transducer assemblies consist of four independent circular piston-type transducers, each producing a single narrowly dispersed conical transmit/receive beam directed normal to the piston face. As shown in Fig. 1, the four transducers are physically positioned in a rigid assembly to achieve the required Janus beam configuration. For conventional narrowband ADVS applications, each of these transducers requires an effective transmit and receive bandwidth of approximately 2% of the nominal acoustic carrier frequency. Typical carrier frequencies range from 100 kHz to 5 MHz. Each piston transducer is typically fabricated from either a single solid disc of ceramic material or from a flat array of small ceramic elements. Modern broadband ADVS's operate with fractional bandwidths on the order of 50%. They are also fabricated from solid ceramic discs or flat arrays, but have one or more additional impedance matching layers bonded to the face to achieve the required bandwidth. U.S. Patent No. 5,343,443, "Broadband Acoustic Transducer", discloses such a system. The primary advantage of this 4-piston method is simplicity of the transducer construction and operation. Each piston transducer is driven by a separate signal, and no beamformer circuitry is required.

Single beam transducers such as those previously described may also be beamforming arrays. These arrays generally have all of the transducer elements electrically connected in parallel. Beam angle alignment is achieved primarily by virtue of proper positioning of the piston. Disadvantages associated with such arrays include 1) the requirement for a large, heavy mechanical structure to support the transducers; 2) the shape of its face, whether concave or convex, does not lend itself to a smooth hydrodynamic form unless a thick, acoustically transparent material with a flat face is attached to the front portion of the assembly; 3) a large aperture is required to form the beams; and 4) accurate measurement of velocity requires that the speed of sound at the transducer face be known.

An improved transducer physical configuration for producing the four Janus configuration beams in 2 axes for ADVS applications is to use a pair of one-dimensional phased array transducers. As shown in Fig. 2, a single one-dimensional planar array produces two conical beams inclined relative to the direction perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the array (see U.S. Patent No. 4,641,291, "Phased Array Doppler Sonar Transducer"). To produce the four ADVS beams, two adjacently positioned arrays are used, with one rotated 90° relative to the other about the aforementioned perpendicular direction. Since each one-dimensional array utilizes a single aperture, which is only slightly larger than a single beam piston, to produce two beams, a factor of approximately two improvement in aperture spatial efficiency is realized relative to the multiple piston approach.

One-dimensional phased arrays are typically constructed with parallel line arrays separated by a half wavelength of the carrier frequency. Each line array may be constructed using a number of small square or circular ceramic elements wired in parallel on both faces, or from a singular, elongated rectangular element. Alternate line arrays are wired together electrically in parallel to provide the necessary beamforming functions. One such wiring arrangement involves electrically connecting each fourth line array in parallel. Both circular and rectangular array geometries are used. To produce a beam dispersion of 4° required for a typical ADVS, an aperture of about 16 wavelengths (32 elements spaced at 1/2 wavelengths) in diameter is required. For typical ADVS operating frequencies in the range of 100 kHz to 5 MHz (single piece commercially available line elements normally operate in this region), an array of 32 parallel long elements is preferred over a 32 X 32 diced array (i.e., one which is cut or diced from a single solid element) due to production assembly cost advantages.

When the array is operating in the "receive" mode (i.e., receiving incoming signals), a simple phase shift beamformer is used to phase shift the signals received by the two arrays (assuming the configuration previously described) by ±90° to compensate for the time delay produced by acoustic propagation over the half wavelength path length in the medium between alternate line arrays. A phase shift is an approximation to time delay which is valid only for narrow fractional bandwidth signals. For narrowband signals, the summation process forms two receive beams inclined to the flat array plane surface. When operating in the "transmit" mode, the two arrays are driven by narrowband signals with appropriate relative phase shifts to form the four (two per array) simultaneously transmitted beams.

When these phased arrays are driven by wideband signals, the different frequencies contained in the signals are dispersed from the transducers in different angular directions, effectively broadening the beams. The phased array technique forms narrow beams only when signal bandwidths are less than about 3%. This is adequate for narrowband ADVS applications, but falls short of the bandwidth associated with modern broadband ADVS systems by a factor of roughly between 8 and 16 (see, for example, U.S. Patent No. 5,483,499, "Broadband Acoustic Doppler Current Profiler").

An improvement in bandwidth/dispersion performance can be obtained for the pair of one-dimensional phased array transducers previously described by replacing the simple 90° phase shifting beamformer network (in both transmit and receive modes) with a more complex time-delay network. Use of the time delay decouples frequency from the relative angle of incidence of the received/transmitted wave, thereby reducing angular beam spreading in large bandwidth applications. With this time-delay array method, each of the individual line array signals are time delayed and summed together to form a composite signal which is independent of the angle of incidence. The primary drawback associated with this technique is the more complex transmit and receive beamformer.

An added performance benefit of the phased and time-delay array approach is that, for the ADVS application, the velocity components parallel to the array face are inherently self-correcting for changes in the speed of sound through the medium. As the speed of sound varies, differential path lengths and the corresponding time delays associated with various array transducers will vary accordingly. Self-correction results from the fact that the beam angle varies with the speed of sound in such a way as to directly compensate for errors in computing the velocity component parallel to the transducer face (usually horizontal). This minimizes, but does not completely eliminate, the need to measure sound velocity at the transducer face for high accuracy navigation.

Thus, relative to 4-piston assemblies, one-dimensional phased arrays provide improved spatial efficiency for fixed beam characteristics, have a flat face for better hydrodynamic performance, and have improved velocity resolution in media with varying sound propagation velocities, yet do not adequately support broadband ADVS operation. One-dimensional time-delay arrays have the added benefit of supporting broadband ADVS operation as well.

One-dimensional phased and time-delay array techniques are also commonly used for bottom mapping and forward scanning applications to form more than two beams within a single plane of the array face. For these applications, multiple phase and/or time-delay beamformers are coupled to a single one-dimensional array, each beamformer having different phase/time-delays to simultaneously form multiple beams at different angles of inclination relative to the array face, but all within a single planar orientation perpendicular to the array face. If measurement in a second planar orientation is required, two adjacent one-dimensional phase or time-delay arrays are used, with one physically rotated 90° from the other as previously described.

For each of the above mentioned techniques of forming multiple acoustic beams inclined within two planes perpendicular to the array face plane, an aperture of at least twice the size of that required to form any single narrow beam is necessary. It is possible to form two or more conical beams within two planes perpendicular to the array face if the proper signal can be provided to each element of the array. The formation of four beams in two perpendicular planes from a single planar array is depicted in Fig. 3. It is well understood in the art that such planar arrays can form beams centered around arbitrary angles relative to the array face if appropriate phase shifts are introduced between individual transducer elements; this concept has been in use for many years in radar antenna arrays and to a lesser extent in sonar transducer arrays. It is also well understood that beam forming for wide bandwidth applications requires true time delays between elements to compensate for the time delays produced by propagation over different path lengths in the medium associated with different elements.

A substantial reduction in the size, weight, and cost of the ADVS transducer assembly could be achieved if four inclined beams oriented in two planes perpendicular to the array face could be formed from a single planar array of transducer elements, using the full available aperture to form all beams, as shown in Fig. 3. To accomplish this, a 32 x 32 array of about 800 elements is required, with the array elements precisely aligned at 1/2 wavelength increments in both plane face dimensions, i.e., with respect to the X-Y coordinate system of Fig. 2. Assembly of this precision array from 800 individual elements is relatively complex. Complex phase and/or time-delay circuitry is also required to support beamforming in two dimensions for this large number of elements. Using existing array technology, a separate power amplifier and phase and/or time-delay circuit would generally be required for each individual element of the array. These array fabrication and beamformer complexity factors make the use of a two dimensional planar array an economically impractical solution for nearly all applications.

Hence, it would be highly desirable to provide an improved planar array which could produce narrow dispersion beam sets in two dimensions relative to the array face within a substantially reduced aperture, and which would utilize simplified phase and/or time-delay beamforming circuitry to support the large number of individual transducer elements inherent in such arrays. Furthermore, it would be highly desirable to provide an efficient and cost-effective method of fabricating the aforementioned array to make its manufacture and use economically practical.

## Summary of the Invention

The present invention satisfies the aforementioned needs by providing an improved system and method of forming a multi-planar narrowband or broadband beam set inclined relative to a transducer array face, with reduced aperture area. A cost effective and simplified method for manufacturing the transducer array is also disclosed.

In a first aspect of the invention, each 2-axis beam set formed from the single 2-axis planar array of transducer elements uses all of the elements in the array and the full available aperture to form each of the beams. From an aperture spatial efficiency viewpoint, this is an optimal approach to forming multiple narrow 2-axis beams, because each beam can be made as narrow as allowed by the available aperture area. The overall aperture area will be minimized for a given beamwidth of each of the multiple 2-axis beams. Relative to the previously described 4-piston approach, the aperture diameter is reduced by a factor of 2.5, (a factor of 6 for the area), the transducer face is substantially more hydrodynamic (thereby reducing flow resistance, noise, and potential inaccuracies resulting from air coalescing near the aperture), and the transducer assembly volume is reduced by a factor of roughly 10. Relative to the previously described dual 1-dimensional array approach, the aperture area is reduced by a factor of two.

In a second aspect of the invention, the multi-planar (2 axis) array disclosed herein utilizes a greatly reduced number of phase or time-delay beamforming circuits relative to the number of elements in the array. The capability to produce multiple narrow beams in two axes from a single planar array is achieved by a method of electrically interfacing independently with the two sides of the array permitting independent and simultaneous formation of multiple inclined transmit and receive beams in two dimensions of the array plane. This is accomplished by electrically connecting together the backside rows and frontside columns of the array, connecting the backside and frontside parallel sets to beamformer networks which have a low electrical impedance (relative to the impedance of the rows and columns) in both the transmit and receive mode of operation, and processing the transmit/receive signals to/from the two array sides to simultaneously and independently form multiple inclined transmit/receive beams in two dimensions of the array plane. The two directions are normally but not necessarily orthogonal to each other.

In another aspect of the invention, a cost effective method of fabricating the planar array of approximately 800 precisely aligned elements is disclosed. While, as previously described, prior art one-dimensional multibeam arrays may be fabricated from an array of on the order of 32 long rectangular transducer elements of about 1/2 wavelength in width, the preferred embodiment of the present invention requires the use of array elements which have dimensions of approximately 1/2 wavelength of carrier frequency in both face dimensions. Furthermore to achieve the necessary bandwidth for broadband applications, each element must be constructed of several layers of different materials which must be bonded together. Hence, an array of roughly 800 multi-layered elements (32 x 32) is required to be precisely assembled in a cost effective manner to make the aforementioned design economically feasible. To accomplish this, an improved method of fabricating this complex array is disclosed in which several cylindrical discs (each having a diameter equal to that of the final array) are sequentially bonded together and partially sliced with a parallel diamond blade saw at various stages of the process such that at all stages of fabrication, the sliced elements are rigidly held together by a solid layer. When completed, the array is internally diced into the desired form with the required precision, and held in shape by the combination of a mechanically rigid and acoustically transparent front facing and a solid backing disc.

The aforementioned simplified design and fabrication techniques make it economically practical to produce cost effective commercial products with the form and performance advantages of the 2-dimensional flat array. The present invention provides significantly improved performance for typical ADVS (i.e. a four beam 150 kHz transducer with 4° one-way beamwidths) applications. These and other objects and features of the present invention will become more fully apparent from the following description and appended claims taken in conjunction with the following drawings.

## Brief Description of the Drawings

Fig. 1 is a top view of a prior art 4-piston transducer array in Janus configuration.

Fig. 2 is a perspective view of a prior art one-dimensional phased acoustic array, illustrating the formation of two narrow acoustic beams.

Fig. 3 is a perspective view illustrating a typical configuration of four acoustic beams inclined relative to the array normal (i.e., Z-axis) and positioned within two planes perpendicular to the array face plane (i.e., X-Y plane).

Fig. 4 a functional block diagram of the preferred embodiment of the two-dimensional transducer array, including the method of electrical array element interconnection, and the method of array-to-beamformer interconnection to the transmit and receive beamformers.

Fig. 5 is a functional block diagram illustrating the operation of a simplified sixteen element 2-dimensional phased array transducer operating in the receive mode.

Fig. 6 is a functional block diagram illustrating the operation of a simplified sixteen element 2-dimensional phased array transducer operating in the transmit mode.

Fig. 7 is a functional block diagram illustrating the operation of a simplified sixteen element 2-dimensional time-delay transducer operating in the receive mode.

Fig. 8 is a functional block diagram illustrating the operation of a simplified sixteen element 2-dimensional time-delay transducer operating in the transmit mode.

Fig. 9 is a perspective view illustrating the formation of multiple beams in two planes perpendicular to the face of an array using the time-delay technique.

Fig. 10 is a top view of one preferred circular 150 kHz transducer array with 800 individual square faced piezo-electrical ceramic elements closely spaced at a center-to-center distance of 5mm.

Fig. 11 is a perspective view of one preferred embodiment of the transducer assembly with the thickness dimension expanded to illustrate the layered construction thereof.

Fig. 12 is a schematic block diagram of one preferred embodiment of the time-delay receive beamformer used in conjunction with the present invention.

Fig. 13 is a schematic block diagram of one preferred embodiment of the time-delay transmit beamformer used in conjunction with the present invention.

Fig. 14 is a graph of signal amplitude versus beam angle (measured from the Z-axis, normal to the array face) for a 150 kHz nominal 32 x 32 phased array transducer, as viewed in the X-Z or Y-Z planes, illustrating the formation of acoustic one beam.

Fig. 15 is a process diagram illustrating the preferred manufacturing process for fabricating the preferred array transducer of the present invention.

## Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiment

Reference is now made to the drawings wherein like numerals refer to like parts throughout. The discussion in this section is organized with headings as follows: Functional Description, Hardware Description and Fabrication Description.

### 1. Functional Description:

A block diagram of the preferred embodiment of the two-dimensional transducer array is shown in Fig. 4. A typical planar acoustic transducer array configuration 100 is depicted. Individual Array elements 102 are electrically interconnected along front-side columns 104 and back-side rows 106. Array elements 102 are interconnected to the associated beamformer 108, 110 through 2-axis transmit/receive (T/R) switches 118. The transmit 108 and receive 110 beamformers may be either phase or time-delay beamforming networks. The coordinate system used for the purposes of this description is as shown with the rows 106 oriented in the X axis, columns 104 in the Y axis, and the Z axis normal to the plane face 116.

The array face 116 is circular, but other form factors such as ellipses or polygons which are generally symmetrical in the two face dimensions are also suitable for forming narrow inclined beams of general conical form. The array is composed of a large number of small elements 102 which have symmetrical faces, typically square, circular, or rectangular in form (i.e., their facial crossection). The face width of each element is approximately $0.5\lambda$, where $\lambda$ is the acoustic wavelength in water of the desired center frequency. To form beams with 4° beam width, an array diameter of approximately $16\lambda$ is required, consisting of a 32 X 32 element array of approximately 800 elements. The back side rows 106 (X direction) and front side columns 104 (Y direction) of the array elements are electrically connected together along parallel lines of elements with thin acoustically transparent material, as shown in Fig. 4. The rows and columns are normally but not necessarily orthogonal to each other.

Each of the array X axis rows 106 and Y axis columns 104 are connected to a T/R switch 118 which, as controlled by a T/R logic signal 120, electrically connects the sets of X and Y lines to respective X and Y receive beamformers 110 in the receive mode, and to X and Y transmit beamformers 108 in the transmit mode. When in the transmit mode, the array lines are connected through the T/R switch 118 to the transmit beamformers 108 which provide the electrical transmit drive signals from a low impedance electrical source (relative to the electrical impedance of the line of transducer elements). When in the receive mode, the array lines are connected through the T/R switch to receive beamformers 110 which receive the electrical signals from the transducer lines while providing a low electrical impedance path (relative to the electrical impedance of the line of transducer elements) to signal ground on each X and Y line.

This low electrical source/load impedance on each Y and Y line (low source impedance during transmit and low load impedance during receive) allows simultaneous and independent access to each X row 106 and Y column 104 for application of transmit electrical drive signals and receipt of signals from each X row and Y column. Furthermore, parallel sets of X and Y axis line arrays can be simultaneously and independently formed. X-axis transmit and receive line arrays are formed by the parallel electrical connection along the back side rows 106 and the presence of the low impedance signal ground on all of the front side Y-axis columns 104.

During transmit mode, transmit drive signals are applied through the T/R switch to the parallel X-axis back side electrical interconnection lines from a transmit amplifier which has a low output impedance relative to signal ground. While the X-axis drive signals are being applied to individual X-axis line arrays, the entire Y-axis 32 parallel line array face is maintained as a low impedance path to signal ground (via the signal path through the Y-axis T/R switch 118a to the low impedance Y-axis drivers of the Y beamformer 108a) to ensure that the X-axis drive signal is imposed solely across the X-axis rows, and does not couple to the Y-axis side of the array. Similarly, while the Y-axis drive signals are being applied to Y-axis line arrays, the entire X-axis array face is maintained as a low impedance path to signal ground to allow signals to be independently applied the Y-axis without coupling to the X-axis. Thus, by superposition of both X and Y axis transmit drive signals, the low impedance associated with the transmit beamformer sources permits X- and Y-axis line transmit arrays to be formed simultaneously and independently.

During receive mode, the electrical signal present on each X-axis row 106 (with the front side low impedance path to signal ground) represents the sum of the received electrical signals of all elements in each row. Most conventional sonar receiver amplifiers provide a high impedance load to the receiving transducer. However, for the 2-dimensional array application of the present invention, an amplifier has been developed for use in the receiving beamformer which provides a low impedance load while receiving. This is accomplished by connecting each of the X and Y-axis lines to a virtual ground node (a point having the same potential level as ground but not directly connected to ground) on the receiving preamplifier within the receive beamformers. The signal current flowing into each virtual ground node is the sum of the signal currents from all the ceramic elements in the column or row. When receiving signals from a column, the column signal is independent of the row signals being simultaneously received due to the low impedance load presented by the virtual ground on all rows. Similarly, when receiving signals from row, because of the low impedance load presented by the virtual ground on all columns, this row signal is independent of the column signals being simultaneously received.

This independent and simultaneous X row and Y column electrical access during both transmit and receive modes via the X and Y signal lines allows the array to be used as a 2-dimensional array to simultaneously and independently form multiple inclined acoustic beam set in both the X-Z and Y-Z planes. The beamforming operation in each plane is the same as conventional 1-dimensional phased and/or time-delay arrays. Thus, the 2-dimensional beamforming operation is in general the equivalent of two overlaid 1-dimensional arrays, with one array rotated 90°.

During transmit mode operation, phase or time-delayed signals applied to the X rows form inclined acoustic transmit beams in the Y direction (YZ plane). Simultaneously and independently, phase or time-delayed signals applied to the Y columns to produce inclined acoustic transmit beams in the X direction (XZ plane). During receive mode operation electrical signals received on the X rows are phase or time delayed and combined in the X row receiver beamformer to produce inclined receive acoustic beams in the Y direction. Simultaneously and independently, signals received on the Y columns and combined in the Y side beamformer produce inclined receive acoustic beams in the X direction. Thus, through superposition of the X and Y axis electrical and acoustic signals, 2-dimensional acoustic beam formation from a single planar array in both transmit and receive modes is achieved.

To understand the fundamental principles of operation how these two-dimensional transmit and receive acoustic beams are formed, the operation of sixteen element array subset of the 32 X 32 element two-dimensional array transducer is considered. Operation with both phase (narrowband) and time-delay (narrowband or broadband) beamformers is described herein.

*Phased Array Operation*

Operation of a sixteen-element (4 X 4) subset of the previously described two-dimensional array with a phase-shift beamformer is illustrated in Figs. 5 and 6. During receipt of a long tone burst acoustic signal at a single frequency (narrowband), f, with wavelength, $\lambda = c/f$, where c is the sound propagation velocity in the fluid media, incoming sound ray wavefronts 200 traveling in the -X direction and at an angle $\theta$ 202 with the Z axis (Z being normal to the array plane, or normal to the plane of the Figure) travel different distances to each of the Y-axis (frontside) column line-arrays 204, and thus strike each of the line arrays at different times, and in general, with different phases. As illustrated in Fig. 5, the path length differences between adjacent line-arrays ($\alpha$) 206 is related to the element center-to-center separation distance (d) by

$$\alpha = d \sin\theta.$$

The wavefront arrival time differences ($\tau$) between adjacent line-arrays is

$$\tau = \alpha/c = (d/c)\sin\theta$$

If the elements are spaced at distances corresponding to a half-wavelength of the arriving narrowband signal ($d = \lambda/2$), the path length difference expressed in terms of arriving signal wavelengths is given by

$$\alpha = (\lambda/2)\sin\theta.$$

For an arrival angle of 30°,

$$\alpha = (\lambda/2)\sin 30 = \lambda/4.$$

This corresponds to an inter-element angular phase shift of 90° for arriving narrowband signals. Thus, when the narrowband pulse is being received by all Y-axis line-arrays with the backside coupled to the low impedance virtual grounds 208 as described above, the received electrical signal phases along the set of four Y-axis line-arrays will be 0, 90, 180, and 270 degrees, respectively.

Receive operation of the frontside (Y) columns with the backside rows 106 all coupled to signal ground in the X-axis receive beamformer 110b will first be considered. Each set of four X-axis electrical signals (in the 4x4 array used for illustration) are connected to virtual ground nodes 208 in the receiver preamplifier of the receive beamformer 110a to form a signal reference for the backside rows, and phase shifted -90° between adjacent line-arrays (0, -90, -180, and -270 degrees), as shown. The imposed phase shifts compensate for those arising from the different inter-element path lengths of the narrowband acoustic pulse incident on the line arrays, as illustrated in Fig. 5. The resulting four signals 210 will be in phase and, when summed, will form a maximum acoustic interference pattern when receiving a wavefront arriving at a 30° incidence angle. This maximum corresponds to the central axis of one of the main lobes of the formed beams.

A second receive beam can be formed for incoming sound ray wavefronts traveling in the -X direction and at an angle $\theta$ with the Z direction (at a -30° incidence angle) by reversing the sign of the 90° imposed phase shift on the four signals and summing the signals. Since the set of four signal phases repeats for additional sets of four line-arrays, larger arrays can be implemented by summing the signals from all sets of four line-arrays to further enhance the interference patterns at ± 30°. When additional sets of four line-array segments are utilized as described, the acoustic signal gain along the ± 30° directions is increased, or correspondingly, the beamwidth in that direction is reduced, as additional sets of arrays are added.

An equivalent beamforming method is to first sum all of the equal phase signals from different array sets, then apply the imposed 90° phase shifts between the summed set of four signals. This can be accomplished by simply electrically connecting each fourth line-array in parallel, as is commonly done in practice for one-dimensional phased arrays as previously described (see Fig. 2). The effective beamwidth in the X direction is determined by the number of line-array sets in the array. In the Y direction, the beamwidth is determined by the beam patterns of the line-arrays, which is inversely proportional to the length (in acoustic wavelengths) of the array lines. For the ADVS application, narrow inclined acoustic beams with similar widths in both planes are desired and the X and Y plane dimensions are maintained about the same.

During the transmit mode, operation of the 2-axis array is similar to the above described receive mode except the flow of signals is reversed, as illustrated in Fig. 6. Transmit operation of the frontside columns with the backside rows all coupled to signal ground will first be considered. A long tone burst carrier frequency 300 is applied to a phase shift transmit beamformer 108a, generating four drive signals with relative phases of 0, 90, 180 and 270 degrees. These are applied to the four parallel wired sets 302 of Y columns from low impedance drivers. The imposed phase shifts will compensate for those arising from the different path lengths between line arrays, and a transmitted acoustic signal interference pattern at a 30° incidence angle will be formed, corresponding to the center of one of the main beam lobes. Another transmitted beam can be formed at a -30° incidence angle by reversing the sign of the 90° imposed phase shift as previously described.

Receive and transmit operation in the Y-axis is the same. When considering signals applied and received from the backside rows, the frontside columns are coupled through a low impedance to signal ground. The presence of the low transmit drive and receiver load impedance to ground on each side results in fully independent X and Y axis operation. From superposition of the X and Y axis signals, it can also be seen that both axes (i.e., rows and columns) can be in operation simultaneously.

The above described 2-axis beamforming technique using fixed phase delays in forming narrow transmit and receive beams and is referred to as a "two-dimensional phased array" transducer. It is suitable for use in narrowband applications which transmit a single frequency (narrowband) long tone burst. Four inclined narrow beams positioned in the X-Z and Y-Z planes and all inclined at an angle relative to the Z direction are formed from a single flat array aperture, as shown in Fig. 3.

From the sound ray diagram in Fig. 5, it is seen that for a fixed element spacing of d, the angle of each beam is related to the acoustic frequency by

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}(\lambda/4d) = \sin^{-1}(c/4fd).$$

Thus, the beam angle will be frequency dependent and, if the incoming or outgoing wave has a broad spectrum, the mainlobe beam pattern will be correspondingly broadened in angular space. Because of this bandwidth induced beam spreading, the phased array technique described above does not work with broadband ADVS's which transmit signals with a broad spectrum (typically 20-50% of the carrier frequency). To use this 2-dimensional array method with broadband signals requires an alternate time-delay beamforming method, as described in the following paragraphs.

*Time delay Array operation:*

As previously shown, incoming sound ray wavefronts traveling in the -X direction at a velocity c and at an angle $\theta$ with the Z direction, strike the various Y-axis front side column line-array locations at different times due to the path length differences between adjacent line-arrays. The path length distance difference, $\alpha$, was shown to be equal to d $\sin\theta$. The corresponding path length time delay difference ($\tau$) is (d $\sin\theta$)/c. While the phased array employs a beamformer which compensates for the inter-element phase delays which apply only for narrowband signals, the time delay array employs a beamformer which compensates for the inter-element time delays which apply for signals of broader frequency band.

Considering now the receive mode of operation of a 4 X 4 array subset as illustrated in Fig. 7, with the backside rows connected to virtual ground in the X-axis receive beamformer 110b, each set of four Y-axis electrical received signals are connected to virtual ground nodes in the receiver beamformer amplifiers 402 to form a signal reference for the backside rows. The amplifier outputs are applied to a tapped bidirectional time-delay summing network 404 as shown in Fig. 7. The imposed inter-element electrical time delay 406, $\tau$, compensates for the time delay arising from the different inter-element path lengths of the arriving acoustic signals, resulting in formation of two beams in the ± X-axis (X-Z plane) at incidence angles of

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}(c\tau/d).$$

By inspection of this equation, it can be appreciated that the beam angles are now independent of the acoustic frequency, and thus not spatially broadened in space by a broad frequency spectrum. This broadband capability is the primary benefit of the time-delay technique over the previously described phase shift technique.

During the transmit mode, operation of the 4 X 4 array is similar to the above described receive mode except the flow of signals is reversed as illustrated in Fig. 8. Considering first the operation of the frontside columns with the backside rows all coupled to signal ground in the X-axis beamformer 500, the transmit signal 502 is applied to a time delay transmit beamformer 504, generating four drive signals with relative time delays 508 of 0, $\tau$, $2\tau$, and $3\tau$. These are applied to the four parallel wired sets 506 of Y columns from low output impedance drivers.

The imposed time delays compensate for the time delays arising from the different path lengths between line arrays, and a transmitted acoustic signal interference pattern at an incidence angle $\theta$ will be formed, corresponding to the center of one of the main beam lobes. Another transmitted beam can be formed at a $-\theta$ incidence angle by reversing the direction of the signal flow through the time delay network.

Time-delay array receive and transmit operation in the other dimension (Y-axis) is completely analogous to that previously described. In Y-axis operation, signals are applied to and received from the backside rows while the frontside columns are coupled through a low impedance to signal ground. The presence of the low transmit drive and receiver load impedance to signal ground on each side results in complete independence of X and Y axis operation; accordingly, both X and Y axes can be in operation simultaneously.

For large arrays, the aforementioned time-delay method is more complex to implement than the phase shift method because a separate time delay element is required between each individual line-array, whereas only four discrete phase shifts are required when utilizing the phase shift method. A 32 element time delay network is required for a 32 element array, thereby substantially increasing the complexity of a time delay array over a corresponding phased array of similar size. A further advantage of the time delay approach (in addition to the ability to form narrow beams in broadband operating environments) is that because the beam angle $\theta$ is determined by $\sin^{-1}(c\tau/d)$ for a single fixed array physical configuration (element spacing d being fixed), multiple inclined beams in each axis can easily be formed by using a different set of time delays for each beam set. This concept is illustrated in Fig. 9. In this example, four sets of 4-beam combinations 550 oriented symmetrically about the Z axis 552 at four inclination angles $\theta$ are achieved by utilizing four sets of X and Y beamformers (BF1X - BF4X 554 and BF1Y - BF4Y 556), each set operating as described above for the basic time-delay array.

**2. Hardware Description**

As can be appreciated from the previous description, the present invention may be embodied to produce many combinations of 2-axis inclined beams with different carrier frequency, beam characteristics and signal bandwidth capabilities. The specific preferred hardware embodiment described in this section employs the time-delay beamformer which was functionally described in the previous section, and produces two narrow beamwidth broadband beams at a 150 kHz carrier frequency in each of two axes for use in ADVS applications.

The hardware associated with the preferred embodiment disclosed herein is comprised of a circular transducer array and two substantially identical beamforming networks, each of which provide the electrical signal transfer to form two inclined transmit/receive beams. A top view of the transducer array is provided in Fig. 10. The diameter D 600 of the array is approximately 160 mm. There are 800 individual square faced 150 kHz piezo-electrical ceramic elements 102 closely spaced at a center to center distance of 5 mm 604 (about 1/2 wavelength at 150 kHz, based on a propagation velocity of roughly 1500 m/s).

The multilayer construction of the transducer array is illustrated in the three dimensional view shown in Fig. 11. This thickness dimension in this view is expanded to show the layered structure. The ceramic array elements 700, e.g., the 800 elements 102 shown in Figure 10 are electrically and mechanically connected by two pieces of thin, acoustically transparent flexible printed circuits (FPC) 702, 704 on the top and bottom surfaces of the ceramics. Such circuits may be fabricated from Kapton™ (polyimide) or other suitable material. Electrical connection to each ceramic element 700 is achieved by press fitting and bonding (or alternatively, low temperature soldering) the printed electrical conductor lines to the conductive face of the array elements. Bonding may be accomplished by use of a suitable adhesive or glue, although it can be appreciated that other forms of bonding may also be suitable. The connection pattern is along element columns on the front side and along rows on the back side, with access to columns on one side (Y wires 705) and rows on another side (X wires 707). A piece of 1/8 inch (3.18 mm) thick fiberglass material 706 (such as that bearing the tradename "G-10" or other similar material) with face dimensions matching the ceramic is bonded to the front of the top flexible circuit on each 150 kHz transducer array. This fiberglass (G-10 or equivalent) piece is an acoustic quarter wave transformer used to improve the impedance coupling between the array and water, and to significantly increase the transducer element bandwidth. The significant increase in the transducer bandwidth is required by the broadband ADVS technology. A layer of urethane 708 bonded to the front of the fiberglass piece seals the face to the water in front. A layer of air filled cardboard 710 is placed between the back plane of the housing 712 and the back of the bottom flexible circuit to reflect the acoustic energy transmitted backward and to provide the necessary mechanical support against the water pressure incident on the front of the transducer array surface 714.

The preferred time-delay receive mode beamformer circuitry (one axis only) is illustrated in Fig. 12. In the receive mode of operation, the received signals from all frontside columns and backside rows 104, 106 are coupled to the X and Y axis beamformers 110a, 110b, respectively, through T/R switches 118. Each T/R switch is implemented with a Field Effect Transistor (FET) 806 in series with the receiver amplifier input terminals 808. A virtual ground low impedance load on all X and Y lines during receive mode operation is implemented with a high gain differential preamplifier 810 which has a low noise figure when coupled to the relatively low impedance transducer line arrays. Each X and Y transducer line array is connected to the negative terminal of the high input impedance differential amplifier, the positive terminal is connected to signal ground 812, and a feedback impedance 814 is connected between the low impedance preamplifier output and the negative input terminal. This forms a well known inverting operational amplifier configuration (the resulting gain of the amplifier is proportional to the negative of the ratio of the feedback impedance to source impedance 816) with the transducer line array providing the input signal with a source impedance 816 equal to the electrical impedance of the line array. If the amplifier open loop gain is much higher than the closed loop gain determined by the ratio of the feedback resistor to the source impedance of each 150 kHz line array ($\approx$ 200 ohms), the voltage across the input terminals will be small with respect to the received signal. Since the positive amplifier terminal is grounded, the negative terminal is maintained by the amplifier loop action at essentially ground potential also. Thus, the negative terminal input 808 is considered a "virtual" ground.

The output of the preamplifier is converted to a high output impedance current source via a transistor 818 which injects the signal current derived from the line array into a tapped analog time-delay summing network 404. This network has 32 taps (corresponding to each of the 32 rows or columns used in each dimension); each segment between the taps has a time delay of t microseconds, corresponding to the delay required to compensate for the t microsecond acoustic time delay occurring for arriving and departing signals at the line arrays at the chosen angle of incidence. Each time-delay segment is implemented with a four-component inductor/capacitor network 822 which approximates a second order all-pass filter. This inductor/capacitor network provides an approximation of a wide bandwidth time delay which is accurate to 0.1% over a 25% bandwidth.

The above description applies to the receive beamformer associated with one of the two axes of a 2-axis array. It can be appreciated that a corresponding set of receive beamformer electrical hardware is utilized for processing the receive signals for the other axis.

Fig. 13 shows the preferred time-delay transmit beamformer (one axis only) associated with the present invention. The transmit beamformer time delays are achieved with digital circuits and square waveforms to simplify the circuits and achieve precise time delays determined by an accurate clock signal. TB1 and TB2 850 are square waveforms at the frequency to be transmitted by the four acoustic beams. For each of the 32 rows, TB1 and TB2 are summed together by summing circuits 851 after an appropriate time delay (achieved through use of 32 bit shift registers 852) and applied to the 32 array rows through the transmit amplifiers 854. Harmonics associated with the square wave output signals of the transmit amplifiers are attenuated by the bandpass characteristics of the transducer array row or column 856; the transmitted signal is therefore dominated by the fundamental transmit frequency. The transmit amplifiers are implemented with low impedance FET push/pull output stages 858 which have a low output impedance when driving the transducers. During receive mode operation, a high output impedance load is supplied by turning both push/pull stages off.

During the transmit mode, the electrical potential between the two faces of each ceramic element is determined by the summation of four appropriately delayed waveforms: the two row drive signals (TB1 and TB2) described above, and a corresponding set of time-delayed column drive signals (TB3 and TB4). Four inclined acoustic beams in 2 axes (X-Z and Y-Z planes) will be generated with these time delayed drive waveforms.

The time delay array forms four transmit and receive beams each with a 4° beam width (based on two side, 3 dB downpoints). Fig. 14 is a graph of signal amplitude versus beam angle (measured from the Z-axis, normal to the array face) for a 150 kHz nominal 32 x 32 phased array transducer, as viewed in the X-Z or Y-Z planes, illustrating the formation of one acoustic beam 900. As shown, the sidelobe attenuation at the neighbor and opposite beam position (-+30 degree beam angle, 904) is about -40 dB.

**3. Fabrication Description:**

Another aspect of the present invention relates to a unique method of manufacturing a transducer array suitable for use in such a multiple beam sonar in an economical manner, and which preserves the precise geometrical relationships among the elements. This method is described in detail in the following paragraphs.

For high frequency arrays as previously described, the diameter of the individual transducer elements and the distance between the individual transducer elements is small, e.g., < 5 mm, and a large number of precisely placed elements are required. Since it is not practical to assemble this many small individual elements into the array, the elements must remain in their original position during and after dicing, and must be electrically connected as previously described. Therefore, one cannot simply glue the ceramic element, fiberglass, acoustically transparent Flexible Printed Circuit (FPC), and backing material together and then cut it into the desired number of pieces. A reliable and economical method of manufacturing the 2-axis transducer array which preserves precise geometrical relationships among the elements is required.

The preferred process used to manufacture the preferred embodiment of the present invention is illustrated in Fig. 15. The necessary components for assembly of the preferred transducer array include a cylindrical solid fiberglass element 706 (G-10 or equivalent), front side (Y-axis) Y FPC sheets 702, a cylindrical ceramic element 700, back side (X-axis) X FPC sheets 704, a cardboard backing layer 710, and a urethane layer 708. A cup housing may also be utilized to house the transducer array assembly when the fabrication process is completed. Note that other forms such as ellipses or polygons which are generally symmetrical in the two face dimensions are also suitable for use in lieu of the aforementioned cylindrical shapes.

The fabrication process generally involves use of a parallel blade diamond saw to slice through the front and back sides of a solid piece of ceramic and an attached impedance layer to create electrically and mechanically independent elements. This is done in such a way that all array elements are held in place during and after slicing to preserve precise geometrical relationships among the elements. Specifically, the disclosed process for manufacturing the preferred embodiment of the present invention is as follows, with reference being made to Fig. 15:

1. First, a parallel blade diamond saw (not shown) is used to slice the front face of the fiberglass matching layer 706 halfway through its thickness, defined by the Z-axis, in the X and Y directions.
2. Second, a layer of acoustically transparent urethane 708 is bonded to the front face of the fiberglass matching layer 706.

3. The diamond saw is then used to slice the back side of the fiberglass matching layer 706 through its remaining thickness in both the X and Y directions.

4. Next, the diamond saw is used to slice the back face of the transducer array blank 700 halfway through its thickness, defined by the Z axis, in the X and Y directions.

5. A thin layer of X-axis conducting foil (X FPC) 704 is then bonded on the back face of the blank 700.

6. A layer of backing material 710 is next bonded to the back face of the X-FPC 704.

7. The front face of the blank 700 is next sliced through its remaining thickness (Z direction) in the X and Y directions.

8. A thin layer of Y-axis conducting foil (Y FPC) 702 is then bonded on the front face of the ceramic/X FPC transducer assembly.

9. Finally, the sliced fiberglass matching layer/urethane assembly 706, 708 and ceramic/FPC/backing assembly 700, 702, 704, 710 are bonded together as shown.

A cup housing or other support element may subsequently be fitted as required to provide for mounting the transducer array to the desired platform (such as a ship hull or current profiler) and sealing against water intrusion. It can be appreciated that a large number of different housing designs and sealing mechanisms may be utilized in conjunction with the present invention to fulfill these needs.

While the above detailed description has shown, described, and pointed out the fundamental novel features of the invention as applied to various embodiments, it will be understood that various omissions, substitutions, and changes in the form and details of the device or process illustrated may be made by those skilled in the art without departing from the intent of the invention.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. An acoustic system, comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements arranged to form a single two-dimensional array, wherein the elements are electrically connected into rows in a first dimension and columns in a second dimension and the rows are electrically independent of the columns;

a first beamforming circuit forming a first plane of acoustic beams projected outside of the array plane and substantially normal to the first transducer array dimension, the first beamforming circuit electrically connected to the transducer elements in the second transducer array dimension, wherein the first beamforming circuit delays signals associated, respectively, with each column; and

a second beamforming circuit forming a first plane of acoustic beams projected outside of the array plane and substantially normal to the second transducer array dimension, the second beamforming circuit electrically connected to the transducer elements in the first array dimension, wherein the second beamforming circuit delays signals associated, respectively, with each row, the system thereby capable of forming at least two planes of acoustic beams.

2. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the acoustic beams formed by the system are in the Janus configuration.

3. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the transducer elements are arranged to substantially form a pattern selected from the group consisting of circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

4. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the rows and columns are orthogonal to one another.

5. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein each transducer element has a facial crossection selected from the group consisting of a circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

6. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the transducer elements are arranged within the array such that the centerline-to-centerline distance between individual elements is one-half of the wavelength of the system acoustic carrier frequency as measured in water and at the front face of the array.

7. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the first and second beamforming circuits include multiple bit shift registers.

8. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein each transducer element is symmetric in the facial plane.

9. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the first and second beamforming circuits provide a virtual ground load impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the system is receiving signals.

10. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the first and second beamforming circuits provide a low source impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the system is transmitting signals.

11. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the rows and columns of transducer elements are electrically connected into P sets of elements by interconnecting each Pth row and column, the first and second beamforming circuits being electrically connected to these P sets of rows and columns, respectively.

12. An electro-acoustic transducer capable of forming multiple transmit or receive acoustic beams from a single planar aperture, comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements arranged in a planar array of N substantially parallel rows and M substantially parallel columns, each row of transducer elements being electrically connected along a first face of the array, and each column of transducer elements being electrically connected along a second face;

a first transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the rows;

a second transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the columns and operating in electrical independence of the first beamformer,

a transmit/receive switch electrically connected, respectively, between the first and second beamformers and the rows and columns,

wherein a transmit setting of the switch allows the first and second beamformers to apply signals to the rows and columns of transducer elements, respectively, to form the transmit beams, the signals being time- or phase-delayed, and,

wherein a receive setting of the switch allows the first and second beamformers to receive signals from the row and column transducer elements, respectively, the signals from the rows and columns being, respectively, time- or phase-delayed and combined to form the receive beams.

13. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the acoustic beams formed by the system are in the Janus configuration.

14. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the transducer elements are arranged to substantially form a pattern selected from the group consisting of circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

15. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the rows and columns are orthogonal to one another.

16. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein each transducer element has a facial crossection selected from the group consisting of a circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

17. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the transducer elements are arranged within the array such that the centerline-to-centerline distance between individual elements is one-half of the wavelength of the system acoustic carrier frequency as measured in water and at the front face of the array.

18. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the transmit/receive beamformer includes multiple bit shift registers.

19. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein each transducer element is symmetric in the facial plane.

20. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the first and second transmit/receive beamformers provide a virtual ground load impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the transmit/receive switch is positioned to receive signals.

21. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the first and second transmit/receive beamformers provide a low source impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the transmit/receive switch is positioned to transmit signals.

22. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the rows and columns of transducer elements are electrically connected into P sets of elements by interconnecting each Pth row and column, the first and second transmit/receive beamformers being electrically connected to these P sets of rows and columns, respectively.

23. A method of forming multiple transmit or receive beams from a single planar array having a plurality of transducer elements arranged in N substantially parallel rows and M substantially parallel columns,

wherein the planar array has a first transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the rows, a second transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the columns, and a transmit/receive switch electrically connected, respectively, between the first and second beamformers and the rows and columns, the method comprising the steps of:

setting the transmit/receive switch to a transmit setting; and

applying signals from the first and second beamformers to the rows and columns of transducer elements, respectively, to form transmit beams, the signals being time- or phase-delayed, or, alternatively,

setting the transmit/receive switch to a receive setting; and

allowing signals from the rows and columns of transducer elements to be applied to the first and second beamformers, respectively, with a time- or phase-delay, to form receive beams.

24. The method of Claim 23, wherein the acoustic beams formed by the system are in the Janus configuration.

25. The method of Claim 23, wherein the transducer elements are arranged to substantially form a pattern selected from the group consisting of circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

26. The method of Claim 23, wherein the rows and columns are orthogonal to one another.

27. The method of Claim 23, wherein each transducer element has a facial crossection selected from the group consisting of a circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

28. The method of Claim 23, wherein the transducer elements are arranged within the array such that the centerline-to-centerline distance between individual elements is one-half of the wavelength of the system acoustic carrier frequency as measured in water and at the front face of the array.

29. The method of Claim 23, wherein the transmit/receive beamformer includes multiple bit shift registers.

30. The method of Claim 23, wherein each transducer element is symmetric in the facial plane.

31. The method of Claim 23, wherein the first and second transmit/receive beamformers provide a virtual ground load impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the transmit/receive switch is positioned to receive signals.

32. The method of Claim 23, wherein the first and second transmit/receive beamformers provide a low source impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the transmit/receive switch is positioned to transmit signals.

33. The method of Claim 23, wherein the rows and columns of transducer elements are electrically connected into P sets of elements by interconnecting each Pth row and column, the first and second transmit/receive beamformers being electrically connected to these P sets of rows and columns, respectively.

34. The method of Claim 23, wherein the rows and columns of the planar array simultaneously form either transmit or receive beams in two planes.

35. A method of fabricating an acoustic transducer having a plurality of elements comprising the steps of:

providing a transducer blank having first and second substantially parallel faces;

slicing said transducer blank partway through its thickness in one or more dimensions of said first face;

bonding said first face of said transducer blank to a substantially rigid member, said member providing for the electrical connection of one or more of said elements; and

slicing said transducer blank in one or more dimensions of said second face, said slicing of said second face spatially coinciding with the slicing of said first face such that said blank is sliced completely through its thickness, thereby forming individual transducer elements from said blank, each of said elements being bonded to said substantially rigid member.

36. The method of Claim 35, wherein the transducer blank consists of lead-zircon-titanate.

37. The method of Claim 35, wherein the faces of the transducer blank have a crossection selected from the group consisting of circular, elliptical, square, polygonal, or rectangular shapes.

38. An electro-acoustic transducer capable of simultaneously forming multiple transmit or receive acoustic beams in first and second orthogonal planes and from a single planar aperture, comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements arranged in a planar array of N substantially parallel rows and M substantially parallel columns, each row of transducer elements being electrically connected along a first face of the array, and each column of transducer elements being electrically connected along a second face;

a first transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the rows;

a second transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the columns and operating in electrical independence of the first beamformer,

a transmit/receive switch electrically connected, respectively, between the first and second beamformers and the rows and columns,

wherein a transmit setting of the switch allows the first and second beamformers to apply signals to the rows and columns of transducer elements, respectively, to form multiple transmit beams within the first and second orthogonal planes, respectively, the beams being at the same angle of inclination relative to a direction normal to the to first and second faces of the planar array, the signals being time- or phase-delayed, and,

wherein a receive setting of the switch allows the first and second beamformers to receive signals from the row and column transducer elements, respectively, the signals from the rows and columns being, respectively, time- or phase-delayed and combined to form receive beams oriented within the first and second orthogonal planes, the beams being at the same angle of inclination relative to a direction normal to the first and second faces of the planar array.

39. An electro-acoustic system capable of simultaneously transmitting or receiving multiple acoustic beams in a fluid media, comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements arranged to form a single two-dimensional array wherein the elements are electrically connected on a first array face in N rows in a first direction, and on a second array face in M columns in a second direction, the connection on the first and second faces being electrically independent;

a first transmit/receive beamformer electrically interfaced to the N rows, wherein signals applied to or received from the rows are electrically independent of signals simultaneously applied to or received from the columns;

a means for operating the first transmit/receive beamformer in a transmit mode, wherein the first beamformer generates a set of N electrical signals, each signal being time- or phase-delayed, and applies each electrical signal to its respective transducer row element, thereby forming a set of multiple transmit acoustic beams inclined outward from a direction normal to the first and second faces, and positioned within a plane oriented normal to the first direction;

a means for operating the first transmit/receive beamformer in a receive mode wherein the first beamformer receives a set of electrical signals corresponding to each of the N rows and applies a time or phase delay to each signal, the resulting time-or phase-delayed signals from each row being combined together to form a set of multiple receive acoustic beams inclined outward from a direction normal to the first and second faces, and positioned within a plane oriented normal to the first direction;

a means for operating the second transmit/receive beamformer in a transmit mode, wherein the second beamformer generates a set of M electrical signals, each signal being time- or phase-delayed, and applies each electrical signal to its respective transducer column element, thereby forming a set of multiple transmit acoustic beams inclined outward from a direction normal to the first and second faces, and positioned within a plane oriented normal to the second direction; and

a means for operating the second transmit/receive beamformer in a receive mode wherein the second beamformer receives a set of electrical signals corresponding to each of the M columns and applies a time or phase delay to each signal, the resulting time-or phase-delayed signals being combined together to form a set of multiple receive acoustic beams inclined outward from a direction normal to the first and second faces, and positioned within a plane oriented normal to the second direction.

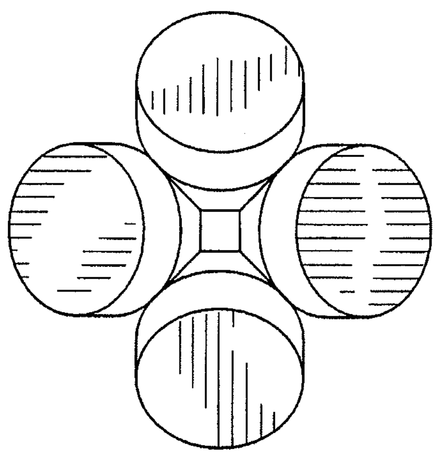


FIG. 1
(PRIOR ART)

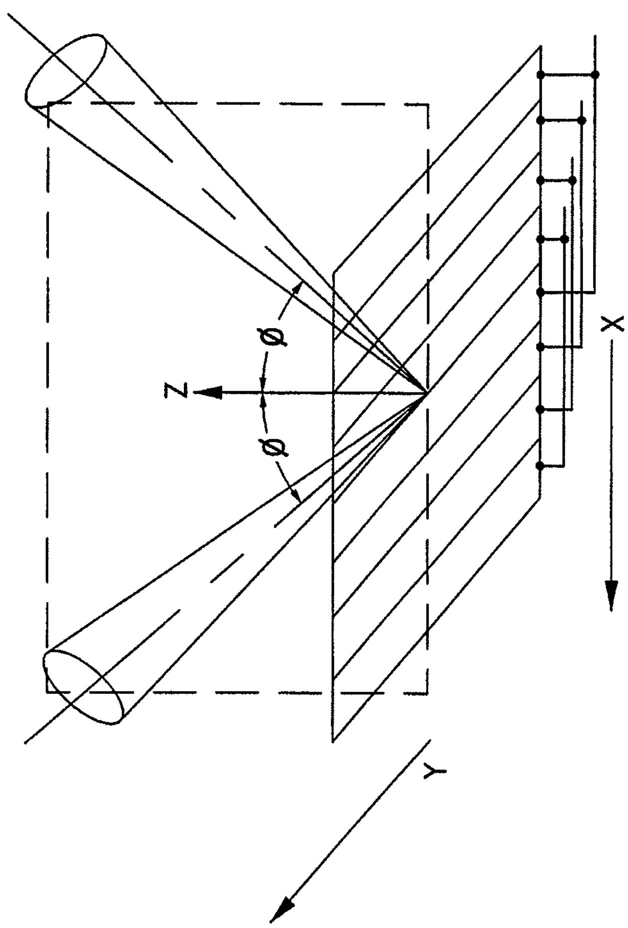



FIG.2
(PRIOR ART)

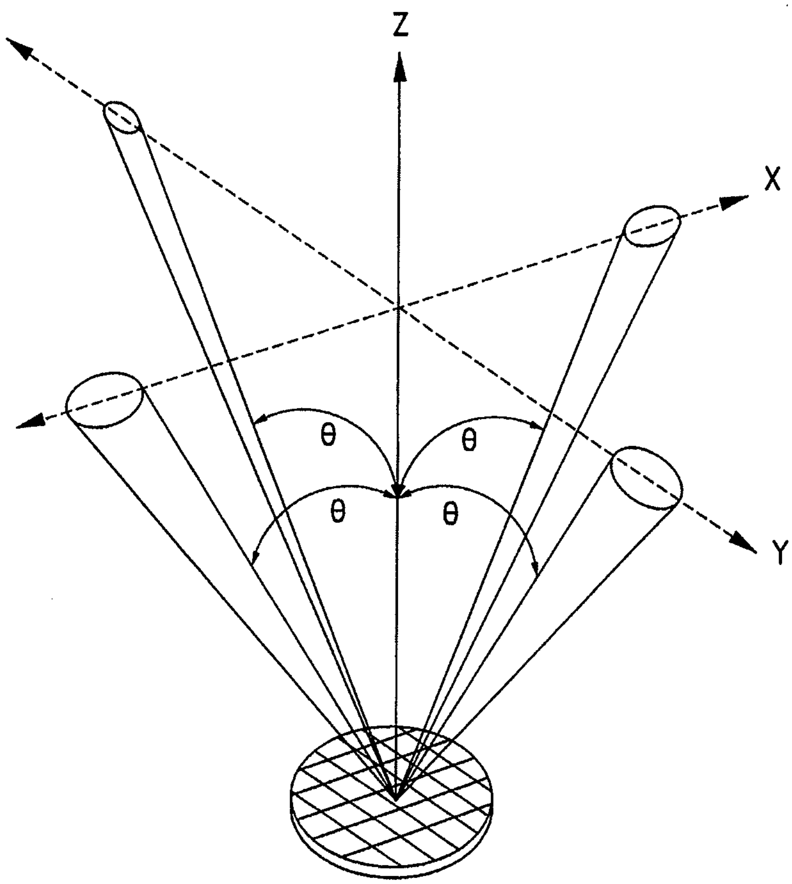



FIG. 3

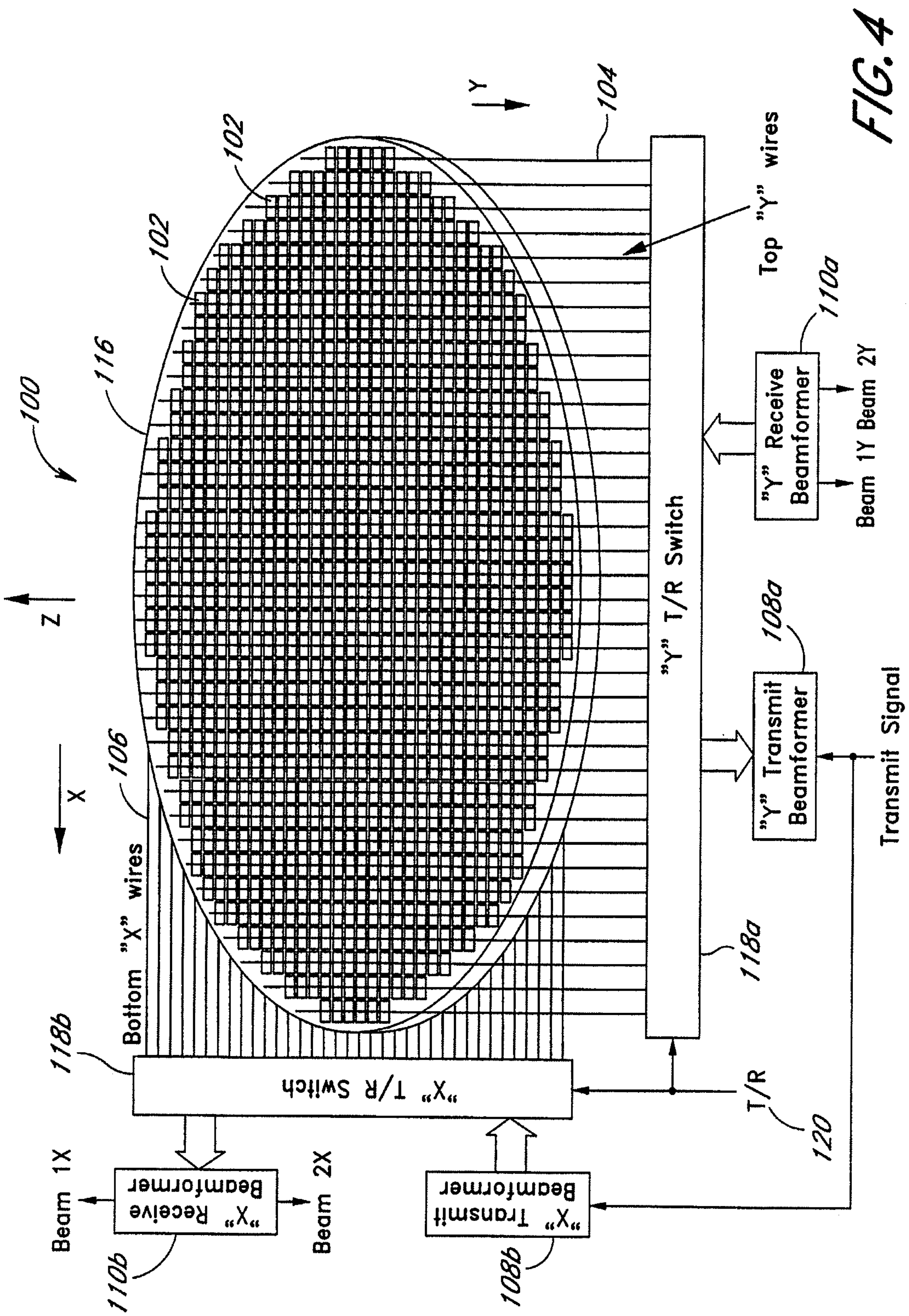

100
116
102
102
104
Y
Z
X
106
Bottom "X" wires
Top "Y" wires
"Y" T/R Switch
"X" T/R Switch
118a
118b
"Y" Receive Beamformer
110a
Beam 1Y Beam 2Y
"Y" Transmit Beamformer
108a
Transmit Signal
T/R
120
"X" Receive Beamformer
110b
Beam 1X
Beam 2X
"X" Transmit Beamformer
108b

FIG. 4

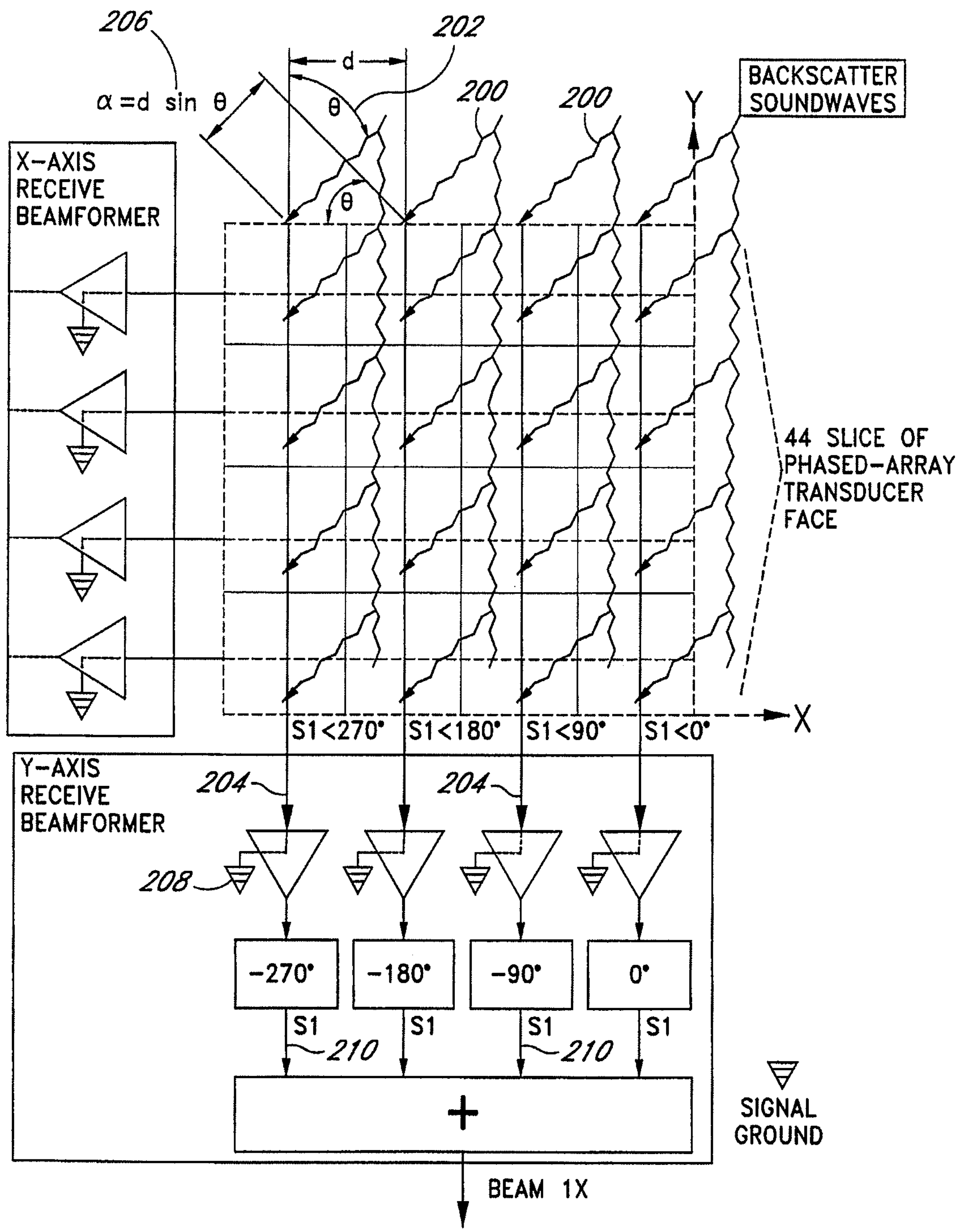

206
202
d
α =d sin θ
θ
200
200
Y
BACKSCATTER SOUNDWAVES
X-AXIS RECEIVE BEAMFORMER
θ
44 SLICE OF PHASED-ARRAY TRANSDUCER FACE
S1<270° S1<180° S1<90° S1<0°
X
Y-AXIS RECEIVE BEAMFORMER
204
204
208
-270°
-180°
-90°
0°
S1
S1
S1
S1
210
210
+
SIGNAL GROUND
BEAM 1X

FIG.5

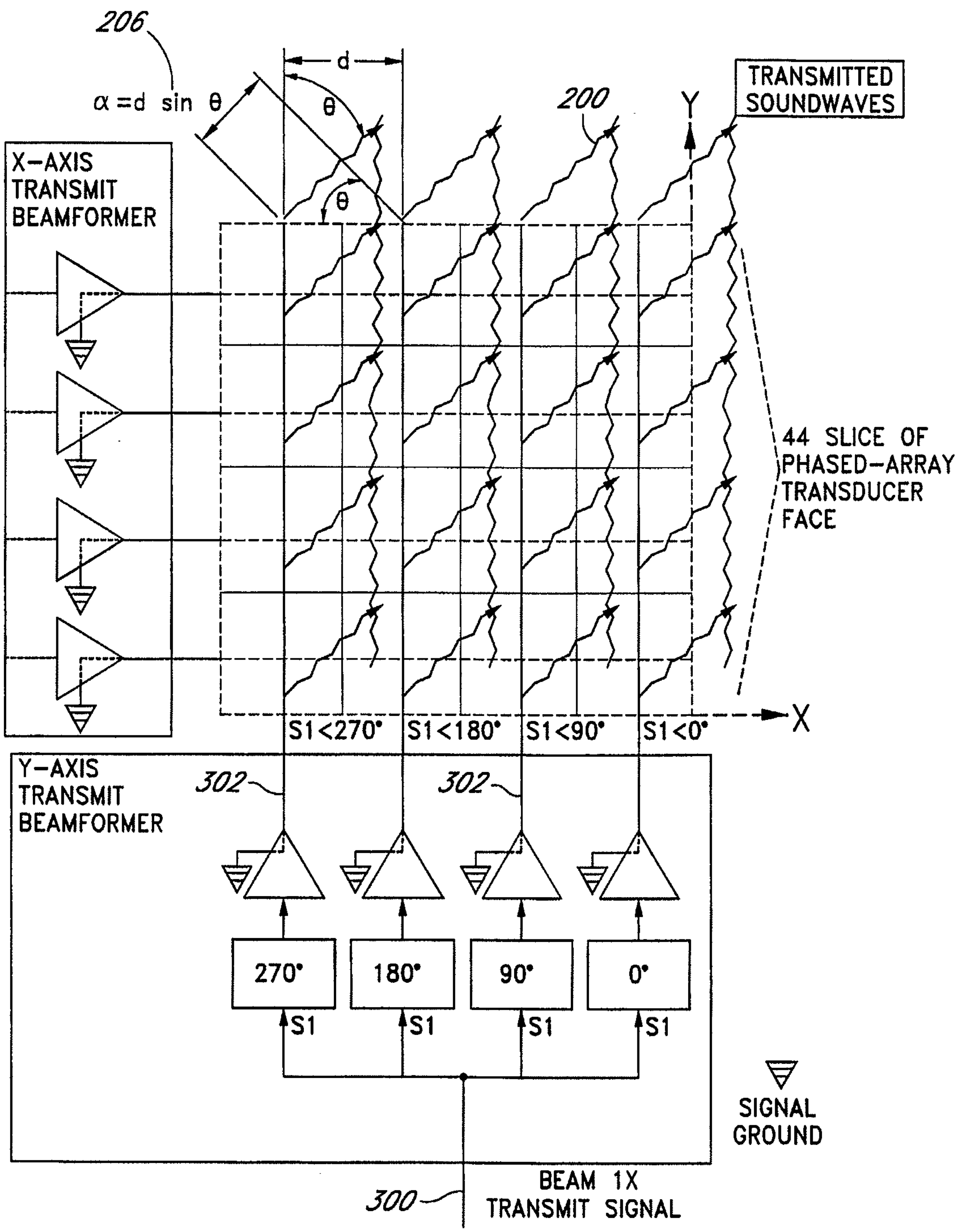
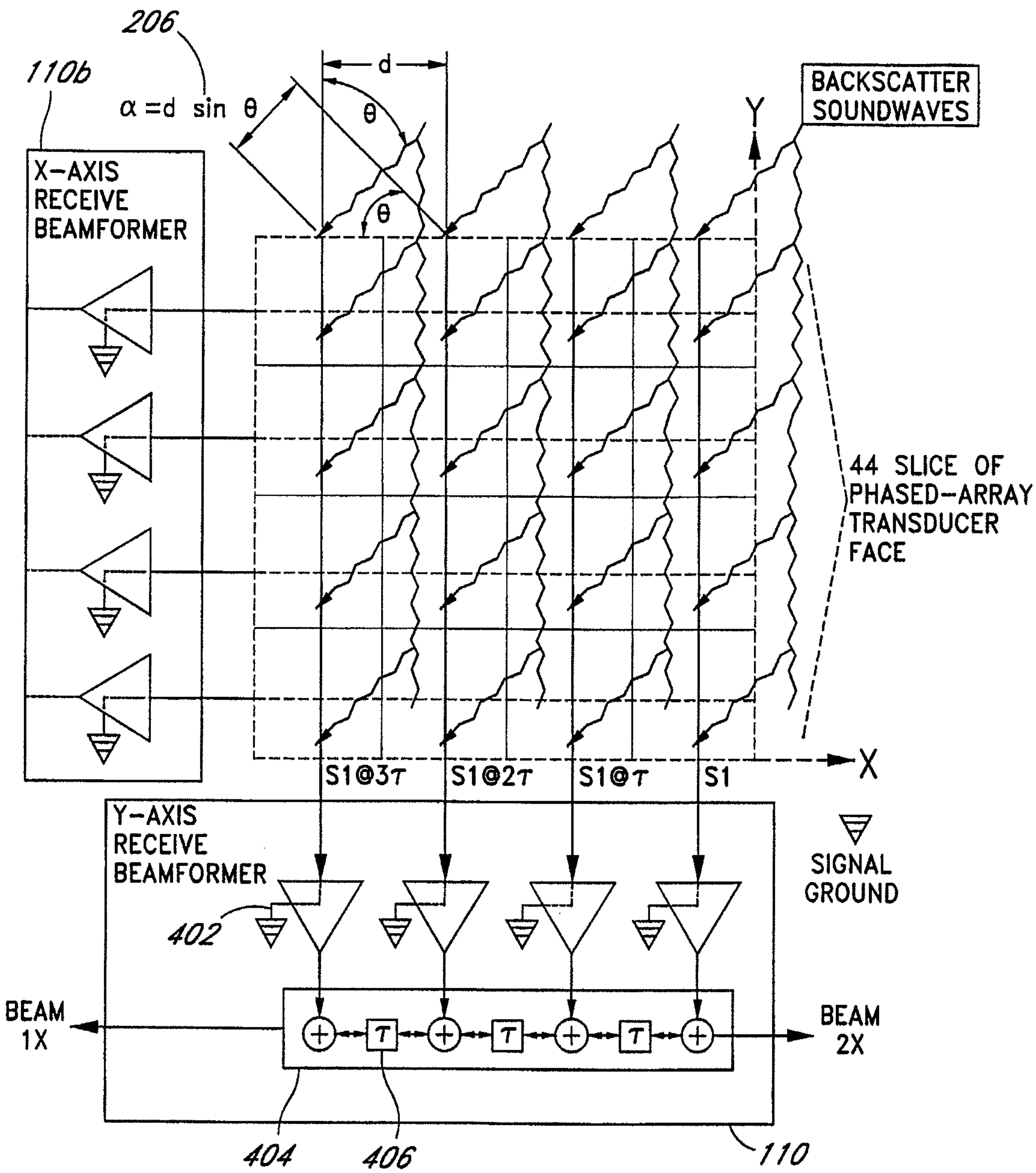

206
α =d sin θ
d
θ
θ
200
Y
TRANSMITTED SOUNDWAVES
X-AXIS TRANSMIT BEAMFORMER
44 SLICE OF PHASED-ARRAY TRANSDUCER FACE
X
S1<270° S1<180° S1<90° S1<0°
Y-AXIS TRANSMIT BEAMFORMER
302
302
270°
180°
90°
0°
S1
S1
S1
S1
SIGNAL GROUND
300
BEAM 1X TRANSMIT SIGNAL

FIG. 6



206
110b
α =d sin θ
d
θ
θ
BACKSCATTER SOUNDWAVES
Y
X–AXIS RECEIVE BEAMFORMER
44 SLICE OF PHASED–ARRAY TRANSDUCER FACE
S1@3τ
S1@2τ
S1@τ
S1
X
Y–AXIS RECEIVE BEAMFORMER
SIGNAL GROUND
402
BEAM 1X
BEAM 2X
τ
404
406
110


FIG. 7

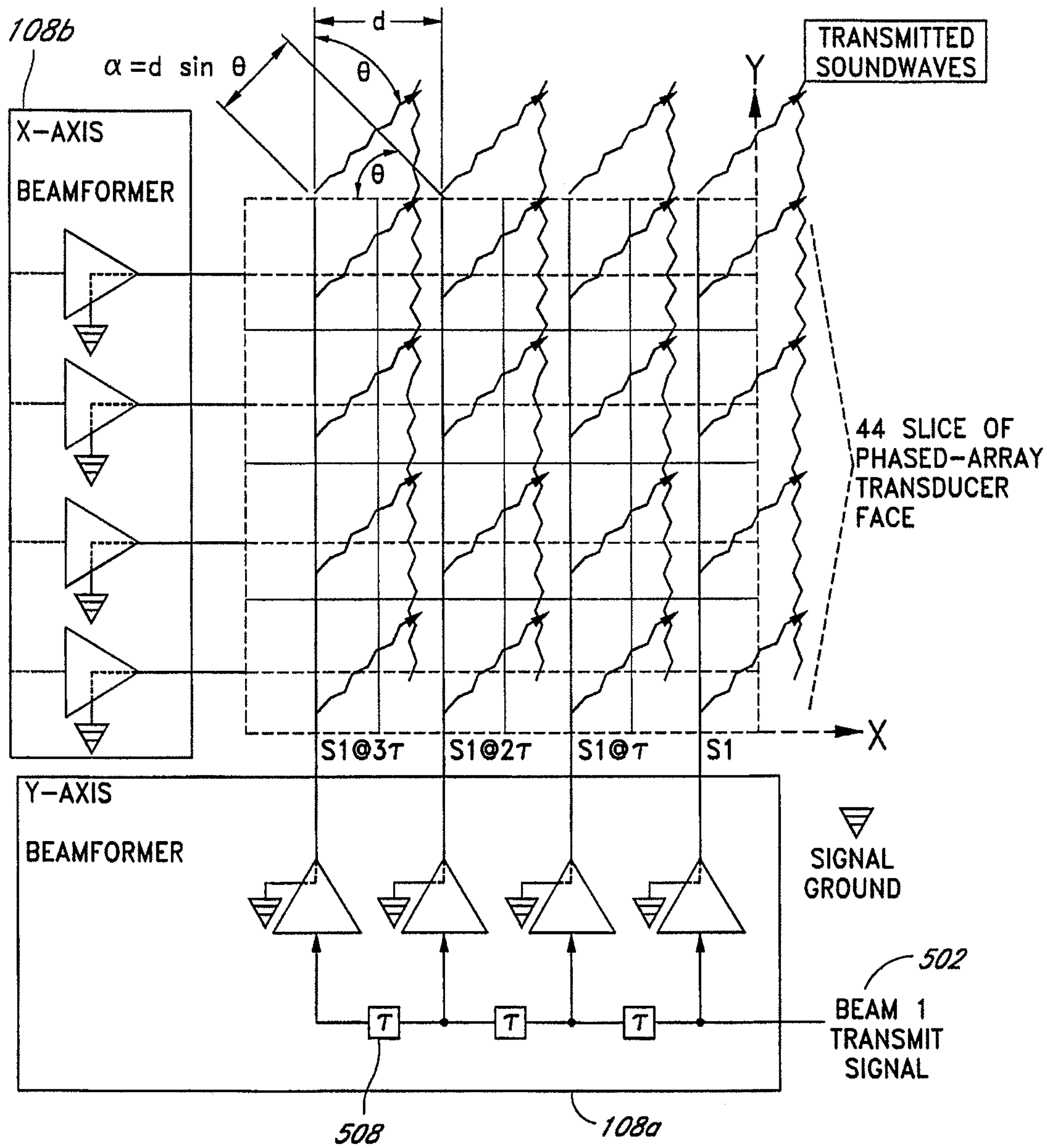

108b
α =d sin θ
d
θ
θ
TRANSMITTED SOUNDWAVES
Y
X-AXIS
BEAMFORMER
44 SLICE OF PHASED-ARRAY TRANSDUCER FACE
X
S1@3τ
S1@2τ
S1@τ
S1
Y-AXIS
BEAMFORMER
SIGNAL GROUND
502
BEAM 1 TRANSMIT SIGNAL
τ
τ
τ
508
108a

FIG.8

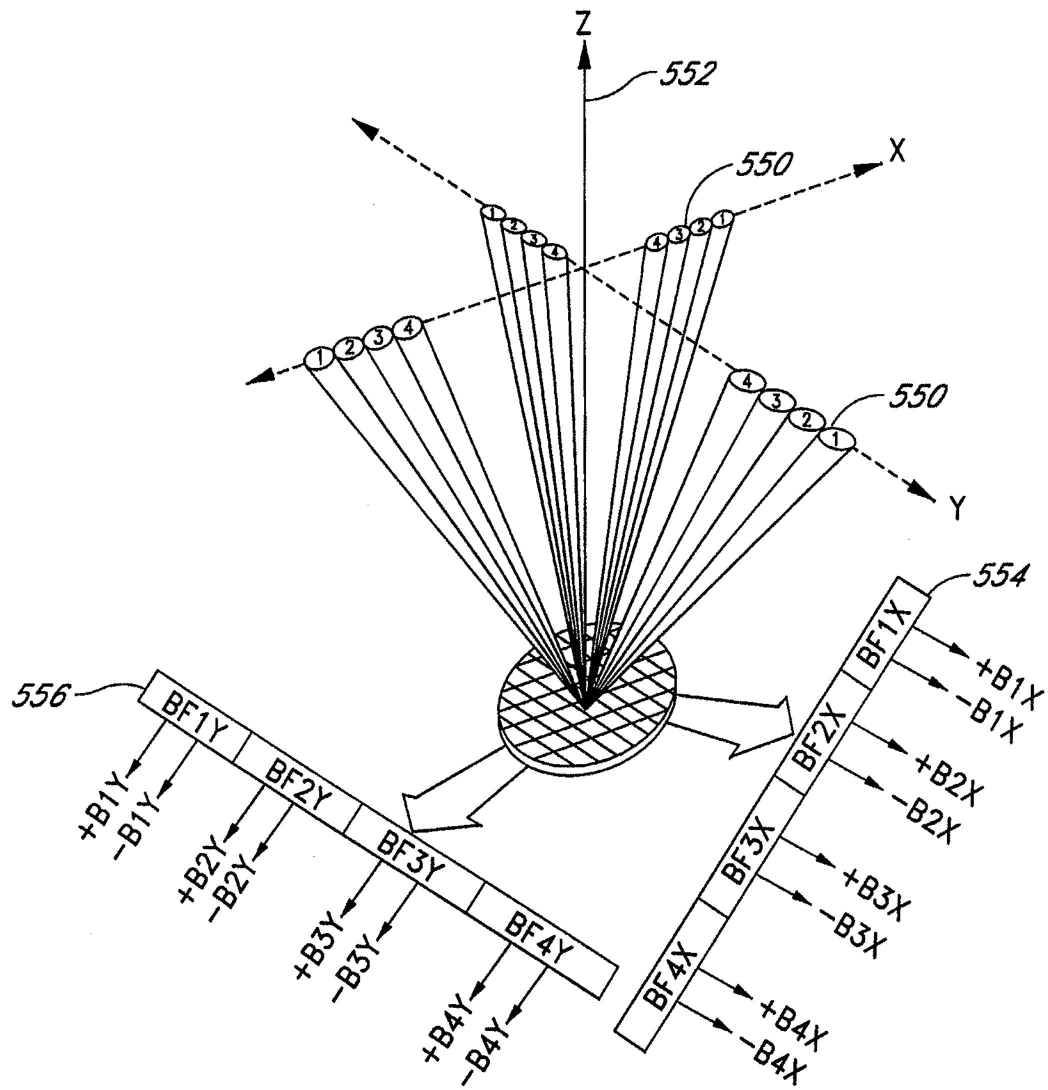

Z
552
X
550
550
Y
554
556
BF1Y
BF2Y
BF3Y
BF4Y
+B1Y
-B1Y
+B2Y
-B2Y
+B3Y
-B3Y
+B4Y
-B4Y
BF1X
BF2X
BF3X
BF4X
+B1X
-B1X
+B2X
-B2X
+B3X
-B3X
+B4X
-B4X

FIG.9

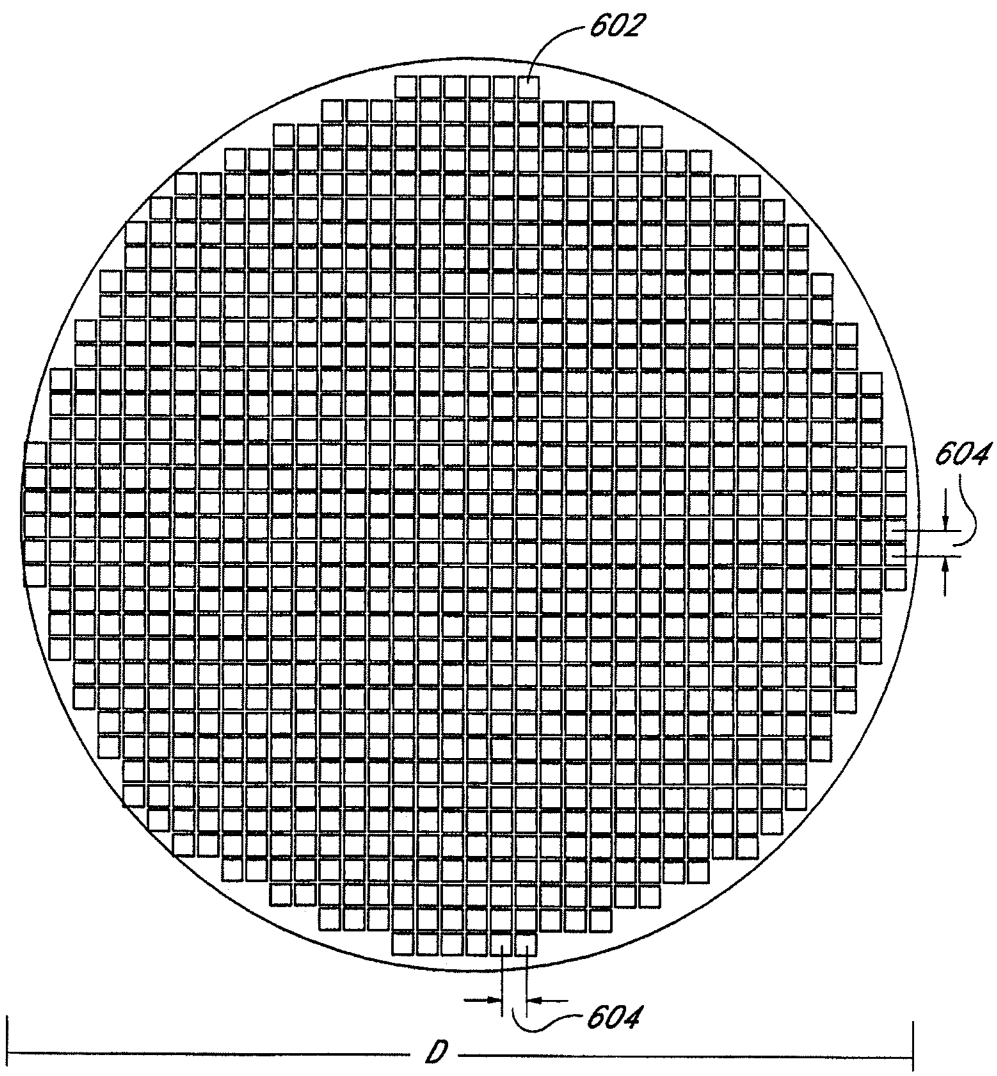



FIG. 10

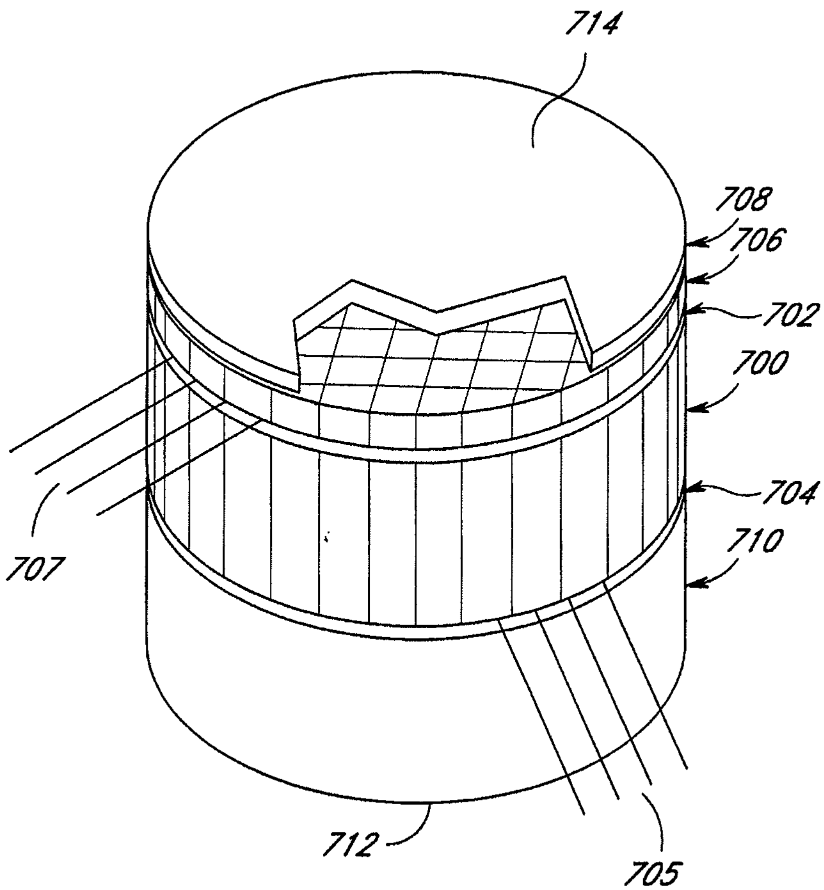



FIG. 11

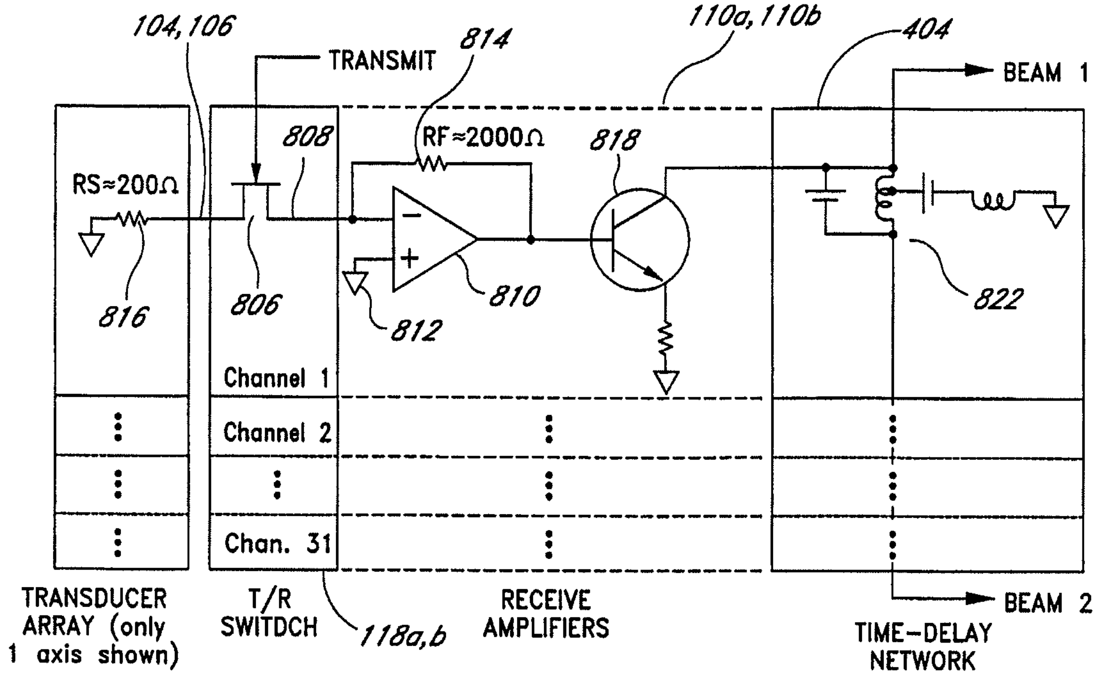

104,106
TRANSMIT
814
110a,110b
404
BEAM 1
808
RF≈2000Ω
818
RS≈200Ω
816
806
810
812
822
Channel 1
Channel 2
Chan. 31
BEAM 2
TRANSDUCER ARRAY (only 1 axis shown)
T/R SWITDCH
118a,b
RECEIVE AMPLIFIERS
TIME-DELAY NETWORK

FIG. 12

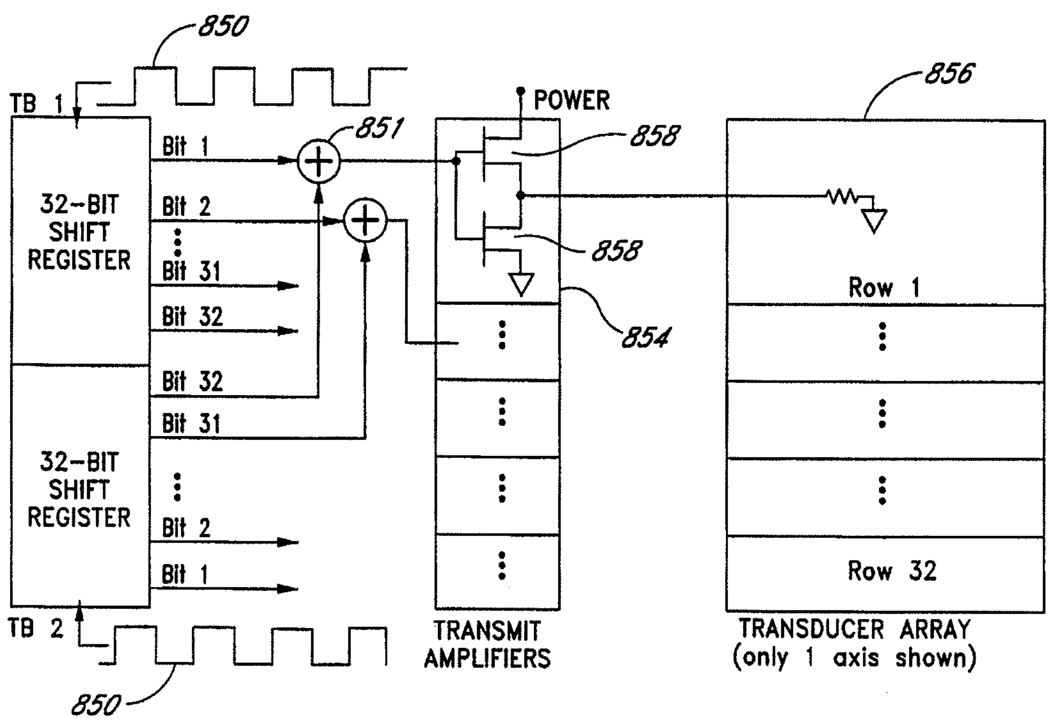

850
856
TB 1
POWER
851
858
32-BIT SHIFT REGISTER
Bit 1
Bit 2
Bit 31
Bit 32
858
Row 1
854
Bit 32
Bit 31
32-BIT SHIFT REGISTER
Bit 2
Bit 1
Row 32
TB 2
TRANSMIT AMPLIFIERS
TRANSDUCER ARRAY (only 1 axis shown)
850

FIG. 13

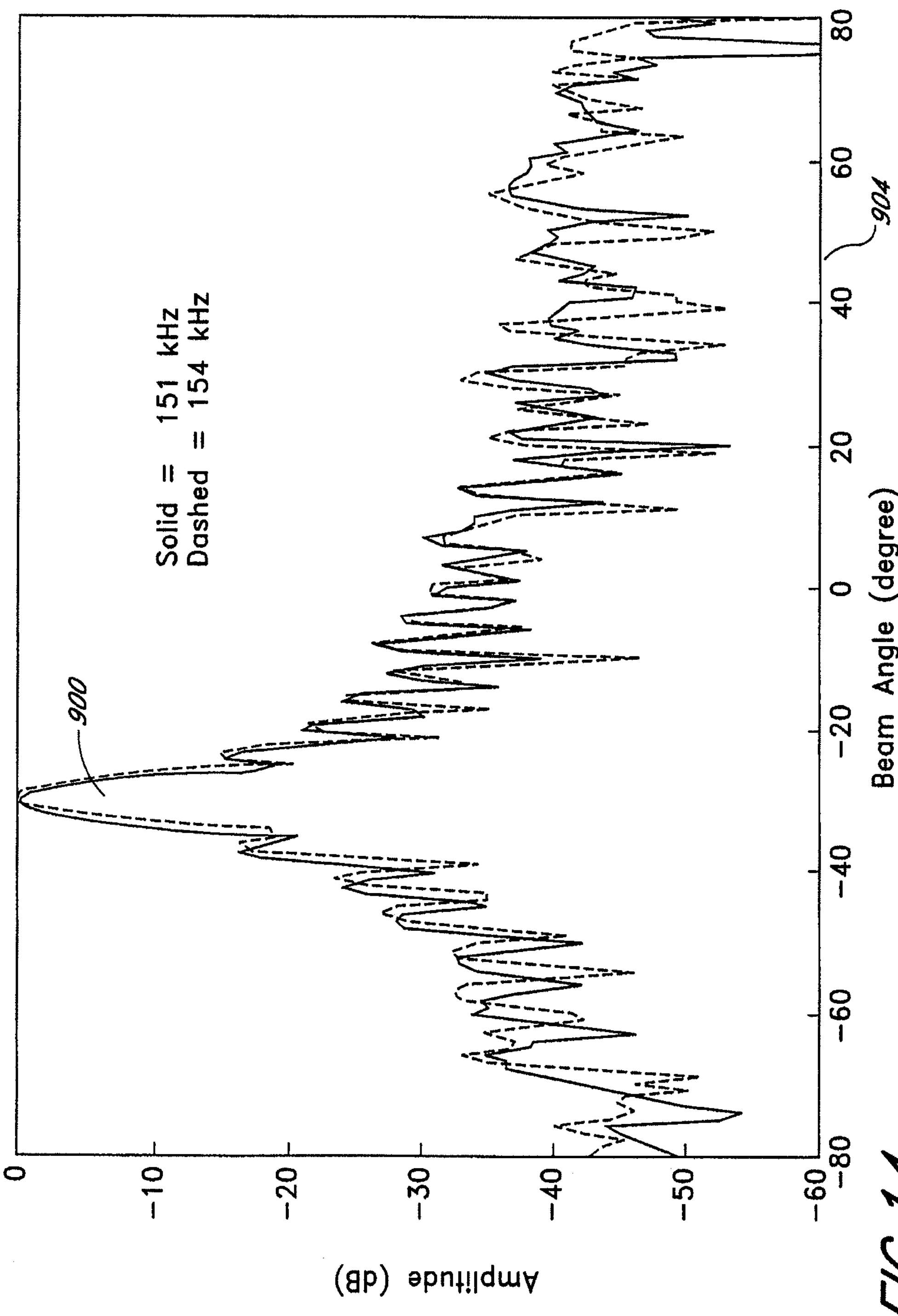

Solid = 151 kHz
Dashed = 154 kHz
900
904
Amplitude (dB)
0
-10
-20
-30
-40
-50
-60
Beam Angle (degree)
-80
-60
-40
-20
0
20
40
60
80

FIG. 14

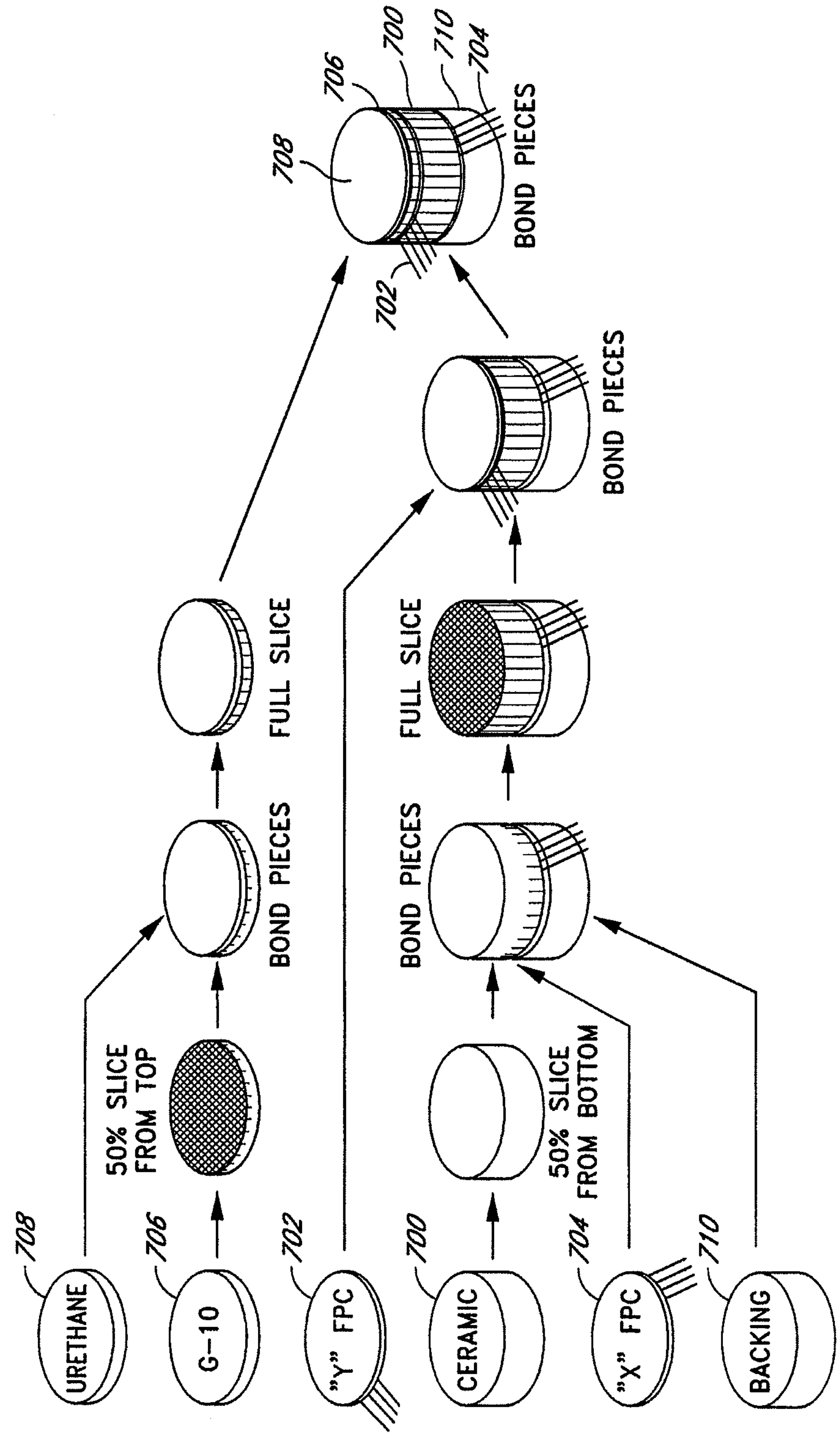

URETHANE
708
G-10
706
"Y" FPC
702
CERAMIC
700
"X" FPC
704
BACKING
710
50% SLICE FROM TOP
50% SLICE FROM BOTTOM
BOND PIECES
FULL SLICE
BOND PIECES
FULL SLICE
BOND PIECES
BOND PIECES
708
706
700
710
704
702

FIG. 15

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 97/18061

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**
IPC 6 G01S15/60 G01S15/89

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 6 G01S G10K H04R B06B

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

| Category ° | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| Y | US 5 550 792 A (CRANDALL F ANTHONY ET AL) 27 August 1996<br>see column 2, line 58 - column 3, line 24; figures 4,5,9<br>--- | 1-4,12, 23,35, 38,39 |
| Y | SHAULOV A ET AL: "BIPLANE PHASED ARRAY FOR ULTRASONIC MEDICAL IMAGING" PROCEEDINGS OF THE ULTRASONICS SYMPOSIUM, CHICAGO, OCT. 2 - 5, 1988, vol. 1, 2 October 1988, MCAVOY B R, pages 635-638, XP000077019<br>see page 635, right-hand column; figure 1<br>--- | 1-4 |
| Y | US 4 641 291 A (SIMMONS SR ROBERT L ET AL) 3 February 1987<br>cited in the application<br>see column 3 - column 4; figure 10<br>--- | 1-4,12, 23,35, 38,39 |

-/--

[X] Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

[X] Patent family members are listed in annex.

° Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
"&" document member of the same patent family

2

| Date of the actual completion of the international search | Date of mailing of the international search report |
|---|---|
| 19 January 1998 | 28.01.98 |

| Name and mailing address of the ISA | Authorized officer |
|---|---|
| European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk<br>Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,<br>Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | Breusing, J |

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inte. .onal Application No
PCT/US 97/18061

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category ° | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| A | WO 92 05456 A (ROWE DEINES INSTR INC) 2 April 1992<br>see page 2, line 14 - page 11, line 1<br>& US 5 483 499 A<br>cited in the application | 2,13,24, 39 |
| A | US 5 530 683 A (LINDBERG JAN F) 25 June 1996<br>see abstract; figures 3,4 | 1 |
| A | EP 0 524 749 A (TOKYO SHIBAURA ELECTRIC CO) 27 January 1993<br>see column 4, line 54 - column 5, line 10; figures 1,4<br>see column 7, line 20 - column 8, line 15 | 1,12,23, 35 |
| A | WO 95 06885 A (THOMSON CSF ;PERENNES MARC (FR)) 9 March 1995<br>see page 1, line 19 - page 2, line 15; figures 1-6 | 1 |
| A | GB 2 053 475 A (PHILIPS NV) 4 February 1981<br>see abstract; figure 1 | 4,15,26 |
| A | EP 0 383 270 A (HITACHI LTD) 22 August 1990<br>see column 2, line 28 - column 3, line 9; figure 1 | 1 |
| A | EP 0 616 231 A (INST BIOMEDIZINISCHE TECHNIK) 21 September 1994<br>see abstract; figure 2 | |

2

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Inter. .onal Application No

PCT/US 97/18061

| Patent document cited in search report | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | Publication date |
|---|---|---|---|
| US 5550792 A | 27-08-96 | NONE | |
| US 4641291 A | 03-02-87 | NONE | |
| WO 9205456 A | 02-04-92 | AU 652699 B | 01-09-94 |
| | | AU 8758191 A | 15-04-92 |
| | | CA 2092564 A | 27-03-92 |
| | | DE 69126040 D | 12-06-97 |
| | | DE 69126040 T | 02-01-98 |
| | | EP 0573431 A | 15-12-93 |
| | | JP 6503163 T | 07-04-94 |
| | | US 5483499 A | 09-01-96 |
| | | US RE35535 E | 17-06-97 |
| | | US 5615173 A | 25-03-97 |
| | | US 5208785 A | 04-05-93 |
| US 5530683 A | 25-06-96 | NONE | |
| EP 0524749 A | 27-01-93 | DE 69213600 D | 17-10-96 |
| | | DE 69213600 T | 27-02-97 |
| | | JP 5228142 A | 07-09-93 |
| | | US 5327895 A | 12-07-94 |
| WO 9506885 A | 09-03-95 | FR 2709559 A | 10-03-95 |
| | | CA 2169935 A | 09-03-95 |
| | | DE 69402084 D | 17-04-97 |
| | | DE 69402084 T | 19-06-97 |
| | | EP 0716751 A | 19-06-96 |
| | | US 5694372 A | 02-12-97 |
| GB 2053475 A | 04-02-81 | FR 2460489 A | 23-01-81 |
| | | AU 537043 B | 31-05-84 |
| | | AU 5976580 A | 15-01-81 |
| | | BE 884155 A | 05-01-81 |
| | | CA 1146662 A | 17-05-83 |
| | | DE 3025168 A | 08-01-81 |
| | | JP 1342741 C | 14-10-86 |
| | | JP 56011374 A | 04-02-81 |
| | | JP 61006348 B | 25-02-86 |
| | | NL 8003770 A | 06-01-81 |

# Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

| | |
|---|---|
| **Application Number:** | 12460139 |
| **Filing Date:** | 14-Jul-2009 |
| **Title of Invention:** | Downscan imaging sonar |
| **First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:** | Brian T. Maguire |
| **Filer:** | Michael D. McCoy/Judy Creel |
| **Attorney Docket Number:** | 038495/369324 |

Filed as Large Entity

## Utility under 35 USC 111(a) Filing Fees

| Description | Fee Code | Quantity | Amount | Sub-Total in USD($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Basic Filing:** | | | | |
| **Pages:** | | | | |
| **Claims:** | | | | |
| **Miscellaneous-Filing:** | | | | |
| **Petition:** | | | | |
| **Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:** | | | | |
| **Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:** | | | | |
| **Extension-of-Time:** | | | | |

| Description | Fee Code | Quantity | Amount | Sub-Total in USD($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Miscellaneous:** | | | | |
| Submission- Information Disclosure Stmt | 1806 | 1 | 180 | 180 |
| | **Total in USD ($)** | | | **180** |

# Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

| | |
|---|---|
| **EFS ID:** | 11407813 |
| **Application Number:** | 12460139 |
| **International Application Number:** | |
| **Confirmation Number:** | 9769 |
| **Title of Invention:** | Downscan imaging sonar |
| **First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:** | Brian T. Maguire |
| **Customer Number:** | 826 |
| **Filer:** | Michael D. McCoy/Judy Creel |
| **Filer Authorized By:** | Michael D. McCoy |
| **Attorney Docket Number:** | 038495/369324 |
| **Receipt Date:** | 15-NOV-2011 |
| **Filing Date:** | 14-JUL-2009 |
| **Time Stamp:** | 11:47:23 |
| **Application Type:** | Utility under 35 USC 111(a) |

## Payment information:

| | |
|---|---|
| Submitted with Payment | yes |
| Payment Type | Deposit Account |
| Payment was successfully received in RAM | $180 |
| RAM confirmation Number | 10365 |
| Deposit Account | 160605 |
| Authorized User | |

## File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | 369324_IDS.PDF | 1297118<br>4bfac3fe77b48730572fb0a38d7937619449a5d2 | yes | 18 |

**Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description**

| Document Description | Start | End |
|---|---|---|
| Transmittal Letter | 1 | 2 |
| Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Form (SB08) | 3 | 18 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | | 369324_FOREIGN_REFS.PDF | 4158489<br>2c78526d86117ee63ac9693084c4f5f9ff2b714e | yes | 84 |

**Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description**

| Document Description | Start | End |
|---|---|---|
| Foreign Reference | 1 | 7 |
| Foreign Reference | 8 | 19 |
| Foreign Reference | 20 | 31 |
| Foreign Reference | 32 | 43 |
| Foreign Reference | 44 | 84 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_144_145.PDF | 9693096<br>7ef857ccc72f08b1d1ac29ef4289958fdf9e0414 | yes | 164 |

**Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description**

| Document Description | Start | End |
|---|---|---|
| Non Patent Literature | 1 | 4 |
| Non Patent Literature | 5 | 164 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 4 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_146_154.PDF | 16680013<br>3fcffe25401201b6851b9c62f847965933672afb | yes | 126 |

| Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|
| Document Description | Start | End |
| Non Patent Literature | 1 | 15 |
| Non Patent Literature | 16 | 21 |
| Non Patent Literature | 22 | 31 |
| Non Patent Literature | 32 | 60 |
| Non Patent Literature | 61 | 74 |
| Non Patent Literature | 75 | 79 |
| Non Patent Literature | 80 | 90 |
| Non Patent Literature | 91 | 98 |
| Non Patent Literature | 99 | 126 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_155_166.PDF | 8610354<br>03d06215eccd8103dc498e8507848a9f991c4843 | yes | 87 |

| Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|
| Document Description | Start | End |
| Non Patent Literature | 1 | 11 |
| Non Patent Literature | 12 | 29 |
| Non Patent Literature | 30 | 35 |
| Non Patent Literature | 36 | 39 |
| Non Patent Literature | 40 | 44 |
| Non Patent Literature | 45 | 48 |
| Non Patent Literature | 49 | 59 |
| Non Patent Literature | 60 | 65 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Non Patent Literature | | 66 | 73 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 74 | 75 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 76 | 81 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 82 | 87 | |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 6 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_167_176.PDF | 10230476<br>c3b05d3ba35e55ccc1f510d677acdfc2493e062e | yes | 158 |
| | **Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description** | | | | |
| | **Document Description** | | **Start** | **End** | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 1 | 11 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 12 | 64 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 65 | 70 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 71 | 81 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 82 | 86 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 87 | 92 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 93 | 97 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 98 | 145 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 146 | 152 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 153 | 158 | |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 7 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_177_179.PDF | 13457115<br>41452a17076223b6fd63fd1a0259bbe50c7563df | yes | 322 |
| | **Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description** | | | | |
| | **Document Description** | | **Start** | **End** | |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Non Patent Literature | | 1 | 316 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 317 | 318 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 319 | 322 | |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 8 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_180_189.PDF | 17905592<br>15b1a760c6d0a77943210b51843978c04a330ec6 | yes | 217 |
| | **Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description** | | | | |
| | **Document Description** | | **Start** | **End** | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 1 | 5 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 6 | 10 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 11 | 13 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 14 | 17 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 18 | 21 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 22 | 24 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 25 | 28 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 29 | 107 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 108 | 127 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 128 | 217 | |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 9 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_190_191.PDF | 5087041<br>b01e8ec761e2e5370b6f5f14dd3fa787246e28e4 | yes | 162 |
| | **Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description** | | | | |
| | **Document Description** | | **Start** | **End** | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 1 | 79 | |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Non Patent Literature | | 80 | 162 | |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 10 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_192_193.PDF | 7090736<br>11cc36a462563197bec1fcc995a59ea00599537b | yes | 194 |
| | **Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description** | | | | |
| | **Document Description** | | **Start** | **End** | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 1 | 102 | |
| | Non Patent Literature | | 103 | 194 | |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 11 | Fee Worksheet (SB06) | fee-info.pdf | 29873<br>7dfa1afbad57c9ad743e07f056fd358b8140ce5d | no | 2 |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| | | **Total Files Size (in bytes):** | 94239903 | | |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**
**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**
**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**
**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

Attorney's Docket No. 038495/369324

PATENT

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| In re: | Brian T. Maguire | Confirmation No.: | 9769 |
| Appl. No.: | 12/460,139 | Art Unit: | 3662 |
| Filed: | July 14, 2009 | Examiner: | HULKA, James R. |
| For: | DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR | | |

Mail Stop Amendment
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT**
**CITATION UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.97**

Attached is a list of documents on form PTO-1449 along with a copy of any cited foreign patent documents and non-patent literature document in accordance with 37 CFR 1.98(a)(2). Also enclosed is a translation or a concise explanation of each non-English language document.

It is requested that the Examiner consider these documents and officially make them of record in accordance with the provisions of 37 C.F.R. § 1.97 and Section 609 of the MPEP. By identifying the listed documents, Applicant in no way makes any admission as to the prior art status of the listed documents, but is instead identifying the listed documents for the sake of full disclosure.

This Information Disclosure Statement is submitted in accordance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.97(c), before final Office Action or Allowance, whichever is earlier.

In re: Brian T. Maguire
Appl. No.: 12/460,139
Filed: July 14, 2009

The $180.00 fee specified in 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(p) is being paid at the time of e-filing. The Commissioner is authorized to charge any additional fee, or credit any refund, to our Deposit Account No. 16-0605.

Respectfully submitted,

Patrick L. Kartes
Registration No. 64,678

**Customer No. 00826**
**ALSTON & BIRD LLP**
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000
Fax Charlotte Office (704) 444-1111

**ELECTRONICALLY FILED USING THE EFS-WEB ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE ON NOVEMBER 15, 2011.**

# Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

| | |
|---|---|
| **EFS ID:** | 11407979 |
| **Application Number:** | 12460139 |
| **International Application Number:** | |
| **Confirmation Number:** | 9769 |
| **Title of Invention:** | Downscan imaging sonar |
| **First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:** | Brian T. Maguire |
| **Customer Number:** | 826 |
| **Filer:** | Michael D. McCoy/Judy Creel |
| **Filer Authorized By:** | Michael D. McCoy |
| **Attorney Docket Number:** | 038495/369324 |
| **Receipt Date:** | 15-NOV-2011 |
| **Filing Date:** | 14-JUL-2009 |
| **Time Stamp:** | 11:59:41 |
| **Application Type:** | Utility under 35 USC 111(a) |

## Payment information:

| | |
|---|---|
| Submitted with Payment | no |

## File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_194_198.PDF | 20295920<br>2b91be281ab287cb339ef5af4a310ac0aaac58cf | yes | 285 |

| | Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| | Non Patent Literature | 1 | 16 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 17 | 18 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 19 | 79 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 80 | 89 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 90 | 285 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_199_205.PDF | 15131138<br>970dd93f761515200db97eacbd6bcd78b004f96d | yes | 261 |

| | Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| | Non Patent Literature | 1 | 43 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 44 | 127 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 128 | 147 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 148 | 152 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 153 | 176 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 177 | 186 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 187 | 261 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_206_213.PDF | 22796785<br>cc17e28b412e81dcfb5fb35fbb8a95963aab687c | yes | 252 |

| | Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| | Non Patent Literature | 1 | 4 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Non Patent Literature | 5 | 32 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 33 | 48 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 49 | 52 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 53 | 54 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 55 | 77 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 78 | 165 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 166 | 252 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Total Files Size (in bytes):** | 58223843 |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**
**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**
**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**
**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

LFM
pull

From the INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

**PCT**

To:
Thorson, Chad L.
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
ETATS-UNIS D'AMERIQUE

Alston & Bird
OCT 12 2010
Received By Q?

NOTIFICATION OF TRANSMITTAL OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT AND THE WRITTEN OPINION OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY, OR THE DECLARATION

(PCT Rule 44.1)

| | |
|---|---|
| | Date of mailing *(day/month/year)* 11 October 2010 (11-10-2010) |
| Applicant's or agent's file reference 38495/388216 | **FOR FURTHER ACTION** See paragraphs 1 and 4 below |
| International application No. PCT/US2010/039441 | International filing date *(day/month/year)* 22 June 2010 (22-06-2010) |
| Applicant NAVICO, INC. | |

1. [X] The applicant is hereby notified that the international search report and the written opinion of the International Searching Authority have been established and are transmitted herewith.

   **Filing of amendments and statement under Article 19:**
   The applicant is entitled, if he so wishes, to amend the claims of the International Application (see Rule 46):

   **When?** The time limit for filing such amendments is normally two months from the date of transmittal of the International Search Report.

   **Where?** Directly to the International Bureau of WIPO, 34 chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland, Fascimile No.: (41-22) 338.82.70

   **For more detailed instructions,** see the notes on the accompanying sheet.

2. [ ] The applicant is hereby notified that no international search report will be established and that the declaration under Article 17(2)(a) to that effect and the written opinion of the International Searching Authority are transmitted herewith.

3. [ ] **With regard to any protest** against payment of (an) additional fee(s) under Rule 40.2, the applicant is notified that:

   [ ] the protest together with the decision thereon has been transmitted to the International Bureau together with the applicant's request to forward the texts of both the protest and the decision thereon to the designated Offices.

   [ ] no decision has been made yet on the protest; the applicant will be notified as soon as a decision is made.

4. **Reminders**

   Shortly after the expiration of **18 months** from the priority date, the international application will be published by the International Bureau. If the applicant wishes to avoid or postpone publication, a notice of withdrawal of the international application, or of the priority claim, must reach the International Bureau as provided in Rules 90*bis*.1 and 90*bis*.3, respectively, before the completion of the technical preparations for international publication.

   The applicant may submit comments on an informal basis on the written opinion of the International Searching Authority to the International Bureau. The International Bureau will send a copy of such comments to all designated Offices unless an international preliminary examination report has been or is to be established. These comments would also be made available to the public but not before the expiration of 30 months from the priority date.

   Within **19 months** from the priority date, but only in respect of some designated Offices, a demand for international preliminary examination must be filed if the applicant wishes to postpone the entry into the national phase **until 30 months** from the priority date (in some Offices even later); otherwise, the applicant must, **within 20 months** from the priority date, perform the prescribed acts for entry into the national phase before those designated Offices.

   In respect of other designated Offices, the time limit of **30 months** (or later) will apply even if no demand is filed within 19 months.

   See the Annex to Form PCT/IB/301 and, for details about the applicable time limits, Office by Office, see the *PCT Applicant's Guide*, National Chapters.

| Name and mailing address of the International Searching Authority | Authorized officer |
|---|---|
| European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL-2280 HV Rijswijk<br>Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040<br>Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | KUES, Saba<br>Tel: +31 (0)70 340-1934 |

DOCKETED
DUE DATE
By: [signature]
Date 10-12-10

Form PCT/ISA/220 (July 2009) *(See notes on accompanying sheet)*

## NOTES TO FORM PCT/ISA/220

These Notes are intended to give the basic instructions concerning the filing of amendments under article 19. The Notes are based on the requirements of the Patent Cooperation Treaty, the Regulations and the Administrative Instructions under that Treaty. In case of discrepancy between these Notes and those requirements, the latter are applicable. For more detailed information, see also the *PCT Applicant's Guide.*

In these Notes, "Article", "Rule", and "Section" refer to the provisions of the PCT, the PCT Regulations and the PCT Administrative Instructions, respectively.

## INSTRUCTIONS CONCERNING AMENDMENTS UNDER ARTICLE 19

The applicant has, after having received the international search report and the written opinion of the International Searching Authority, one opportunity to amend the claims of the international application. It should however be emphasized that, since all parts of the international application (claims,description and drawings) may be amended during the international preliminary examination procedure, there is usually no need to file amendments of the claims under Article 19 except where, e.g. the applicant wants the latter to be published for the purposes of provisional protection or has another reason for amending the claims before international publication. Furthermore, it should be emphasized that provisional protection is available in some States only (see *PCT Applicant's Guide*, Annex B).

The attention of the applicant is drawn to the fact that amendments to the claims under Article 19 are not allowed where the International Searching Authority has declared, under Article 17(2), that no international search report would be established (see *PCT Applicant's Guide*, International Phase, paragraph 296).

**What parts of the international application may be amended?**

Under Article 19, only the claims may be amended.

During the international phase, the claims may also be amended (or further amended) under Article 34 before the International Preliminary Examining Authority. The description and drawings may only be amended under Article 34 before the International Examining Authority.

Upon entry into the national phase, all parts of the international application may be amended under Article 28 or, where applicable, Article 41.

**When?** Within 2 months from the date of transmittal of the international search report or 16 months from the priority date, whichever time limit expires later. It should be noted, however, that the amendments will be considered as having been received on time if they are received by the International Bureau after the expiration of the applicable time limit but before the completion of the technical preparations for international publication (Rule 46.1).

**Where not to file the amendments?**

The amendments may only be filed with the International Bureau and not with the receiving Office or the International Searching Authority (Rule 46.2).

Where a demand for international preliminary examination has been/is filed, see below.

**How?** Either by cancelling one or more entire claims, by adding one or more new claims or by amending the text of one or more of the claims as filed.

A replacement sheet or sheets containing a complete set of claims in replacement of all the claims previously filed must be submitted.

Where a claim is cancelled, no renumbering of the other claims is required. In all cases where claims are renumbered, they must be renumbered consecutively in Arabic numerals (Section 205(a)).

**The amendments must be made in the language in which the international application is to be published.**

**What documents must/may accompany the amendments?**

**Letter (Section 205(b)):**

The amendments must be submitted with a letter.

The letter will not be published with the international application and the amended claims. It should not be confused with the "Statement under Article 19(1)" (see below, under "Statement under Article 19(1)").

**The letter must be in English or French, at the choice of the applicant. However, if the language of the international application is English, the letter must be in English; if the language of the international application is French, the letter must be in French.**

## NOTES TO FORM PCT/ISA/220 (continued)

The letter must indicate the differences between the claims as filed and the claims as amended. It must, in particular, indicate, in connection with each claim appearing in the international application (it being understood that identical indications concerning several claims may be grouped),whether

(i) the claim is unchanged;

(ii) the claim is cancelled;

(iii) the claim is new;

(iv) the claim replaces one or more claims as filed;

(v) the claim is the result of the division of a claim as filed.

**The following examples illustrate the manner in which amendments must be explained in the accompanying letter:**

1. [Where originally there were 48 claims and after amendment of some claims there are 51]: "Claims 1 to 29, 31, 32, 34, 35, 37 to 48 replaced by amended claims bearing the same numbers; claims 30, 33 and 36 unchanged; new claims 49 to 51 added."
2. [Where originally there were 15 claims and after amendment of all claims there are 11]: "Claims 1 to 15 replaced by amended claims 1 to 11."
3. [Where originally there were 14 claims and the amendments consist in cancelling some claims and in adding new claims]: "Claims 1 to 6 and 14 unchanged; claims 7 to 13 cancelled; new claims 15, 16 and 17 added." or "Claims 7 to 13 cancelled; new claims 15, 16 and 17 added; all other claims unchanged."
4. [Where various kinds of amendments are made]: "Claims 1-10 unchanged; claims 11 to 13, 18 and 19 cancelled; claims 14, 15 and 16 replaced by amended claim 14; claim 17 subdivided into amended claims 15, 16 and 17; new claims 20 and 21 added."

**"Statement under article 19(1)" (Rule 46.4)**

The amendments may be accompanied by a statement explaining the amendments and indicating any impact that such amendments might have on the description and the drawings (which cannot be amended under Article 19(1)).

The statement will be published with the international application and the amended claims.

**It must be in the language in which the international application is to be published.**

It must be brief, not exceeding 500 words if in English or if translated into English.

It should not be confused with and does not replace the letter indicating the differences between the claims as filed and as amended. It must be filed on a separate sheet and must be identified as such by a heading, preferably by using the words "Statement under Article 19(1)."

It may not contain any disparaging comments on the international search report or the relevance of citations contained in that report. Reference to citations, relevant to a given claim, contained in the international search report may be made only in connection with an amendment of that claim.

**Consequence if a demand for international preliminary examination has already been filed**

If, at the time of filing any amendments and any accompanying statement, under Article 19, a demand for international preliminary examination has already been submitted, the applicant must preferably, at the time of filing the amendments (and any statement ) with the International Bureau, also file with the International Preliminary Examining Authority a copy of such amendments (and of any statement) and, where required, a translation of such amendments for the procedure before that Authority (see Rules 55.3(a) and 62.2, first sentence). For further information, see the Notes to the demand form (PCT/IPEA/401).

If a demand for international preliminary examination is made, the written opinion of the International Searching Authority will, except in certain cases where the International Preliminary Examining Authority did not act as International Searching Authority and where it has notified the International Bureau under Rule 66.1*bis*(b), be considered to be a written opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority. If a demand is made, the applicant may submit to the International Preliminary Examining Authority a reply to the written opinion together, where appropriate, with amendments before the expiration of 3 months from the date of mailing of Form PCT/ISA/220 or before the expiration of 22 months from the priority date, whichever expires later (Rule 43*bis*.1(c)).

**Consequence with regard to translation of the international application for entry into the national phase**

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that, upon entry into the national phase, a translation of the claims as amended under Article 19 may have to be furnished to the designated/elected Offices, instead of, or in addition to, the translation of the claims as filed.

For further details on the requirements of each designated/elected Office, see the *PCT Applicant's Guide*, National Chapters.

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

# PCT

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

| Applicant's or agent's file reference 38495/388216 | **FOR FURTHER ACTION** see Form PCT/ISA/220 as well as, where applicable, item 5 below. | |
|---|---|---|
| International application No. PCT/US2010/039441 | International filing date *(day/month/year)* 22/06/2010 | (Earliest) Priority Date *(day/month/year)* 14/07/2009 |
| Applicant NAVICO, INC. | | |

This international search report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This international search report consists of a total of 4 sheets.

[X] It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

1. **Basis of the report**
   a. With regard to the **language**, the international search was carried out on the basis of:
      [X] the international application in the language in which it was filed
      [ ] a translation of the international application into ____________, which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b))
   b. [ ] This international search report has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43.6*bis*(a)).
   c. [ ] With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, see Box No. I.
2. [ ] **Certain claims were found unsearchable** (See Box No. II)
3. [ ] **Unity of invention is lacking** (see Box No III)
4. With regard to the **title,**
   [X] the text is approved as submitted by the applicant
   [ ] the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:
5. With regard to the **abstract,**
   [X] the text is approved as submitted by the applicant
   [ ] the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box No. IV. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority
6. With regard to the **drawings,**
   a. the figure of the **drawings** to be published with the abstract is Figure No. 9A
      [ ] as suggested by the applicant
      [ ] as selected by this Authority, because the applicant failed to suggest a figure
      [X] as selected by this Authority, because this figure better characterizes the invention
   b. [ ] none of the figures is to be published with the abstract

Form PCT/ISA/210 (first sheet) (July 2009)

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No
PCT/US2010/039441

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**
INV. G01S15/87 G01S15/89
ADD.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
G01S

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

| Category* | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| Y | US 5 991 239 A (FATEMI-BOOSHEHRI MOSTAFA [US] ET AL) 23 November 1999 (1999-11-23) figures 3,10 * abstract column 4, line 55 - line 58 | 1-73 |
| Y | US 5 805 528 A (HAMADA TOKIHIKO [JP] ET AL) 8 September 1998 (1998-09-08) figures 9,10 * abstract | 1-73 |
| A | US 4 939 700 A (BRETON J RAYMOND [US]) 3 July 1990 (1990-07-03) figure 1 * abstract | 1,39 |

-/--

[X] Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. [X] See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
"&" document member of the same patent family

| Date of the actual completion of the international search | Date of mailing of the international search report |
|---|---|
| 1 October 2010 | 11/10/2010 |

| Name and mailing address of the ISA/ | Authorized officer |
|---|---|
| European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | Alberga, Vito |

2

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (April 2005)

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No
PCT/US2010/039441

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category* | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| A | US 2003/202426 A1 (ISHIHARA SHINJI [JP] ET AL) 30 October 2003 (2003-10-30)<br>figure 5B<br>* abstract<br>----- | 1,39 |

2

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (April 2005)

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No
PCT/US2010/039441

| Patent document cited in search report | | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | | | Publication date |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| US 5991239 | A | 23-11-1999 | US | 5903516 | A | 11-05-1999 |
| US 5805528 | A | 08-09-1998 | NONE | | | |
| US 4939700 | A | 03-07-1990 | NONE | | | |
| US 2003202426 | A1 | 30-10-2003 | GB | 2387907 | A | 29-10-2003 |
| | | | JP | 4033704 | B2 | 16-01-2008 |
| | | | JP | 2003315453 | A | 06-11-2003 |

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

| To: |
|---|
| see form PCT/ISA/220 |

# PCT

## WRITTEN OPINION OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY
(PCT Rule 43*bis*.1)

| Date of mailing |
|---|
| *(day/month/year)* see form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) |

| Applicant's or agent's file reference | FOR FURTHER ACTION |
|---|---|
| see form PCT/ISA/220 | See paragraph 2 below |

| International application No. | International filing date *(day/month/year)* | Priority date *(day/month/year)* |
|---|---|---|
| PCT/US2010/039441 | 22.06.2010 | 14.07.2009 |

International Patent Classification (IPC) or both national classification and IPC
INV. G01S15/87 G01S15/89

Applicant
NAVICO, INC.

1. This opinion contains indications relating to the following items:

☒ Box No. I Basis of the opinion
☐ Box No. II Priority
☐ Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
☐ Box No. IV Lack of unity of invention
☒ Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43*bis*.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
☐ Box No. VI Certain documents cited
☒ Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application
☒ Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application

2. **FURTHER ACTION**

If a demand for international preliminary examination is made, this opinion will usually be considered to be a written opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority ("IPEA") except that this does not apply where the applicant chooses an Authority other than this one to be the IPEA and the chosen IPEA has notifed the International Bureau under Rule 66.1*bis*(b) that written opinions of this International Searching Authority will not be so considered.

If this opinion is, as provided above, considered to be a written opinion of the IPEA, the applicant is invited to submit to the IPEA a written reply together, where appropriate, with amendments, before the expiration of 3 months from the date of mailing of Form PCT/ISA/220 or before the expiration of 22 months from the priority date, whichever expires later.

For further options, see Form PCT/ISA/220.

3. For further details, see notes to Form PCT/ISA/220.

| Name and mailing address of the ISA: | Date of completion of this opinion | Authorized Officer |
|---|---|---|
| European Patent Office<br>P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL-2280 HV Rijswijk - Pays Bas<br>Tel. +31 70 340 - 2040<br>Fax: +31 70 340 - 3016 | see form PCT/ISA/210 | Alberga, Vito<br>Telephone No. +31 70 340-2798 |

**Box No. I Basis of the opinion**

1. With regard to the **language**, this opinion has been established on the basis of:

   ☒ the international application in the language in which it was filed

   ☐ a translation of the international application into , which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1 (b)).

2. ☐ This opinion has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43bis.1(a))

3. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, this opinion has been established on the basis of a sequence listing filed or furnished:

   a. (means)

   ☐ on paper

   ☐ in electronic form

   b. (time)

   ☐ in the international application as filed

   ☐ together with the international application in electronic form

   ☐ subsequently to this Authority for the purposes of search

4. ☐ In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that in the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.

5. Additional comments:

**Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43*bis*.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement**

1. Statement

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Novelty (N) | Yes: | Claims | 1-73 |
| | No: | Claims | |
| Inventive step (IS) | Yes: | Claims | |
| | No: | Claims | 1-73 |
| Industrial applicability (IA) | Yes: | Claims | 1-73 |
| | No: | Claims | |

2. Citations and explanations

**see separate sheet**

**Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application**

The following defects in the form or contents of the international application have been noted:

**see separate sheet**

**Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application**

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:

**see separate sheet**

**Re Item V.**

1 References

Reference is made to the following documents:

D1 US 5 991 239 A (FATEMI-BOOSHEHRI MOSTAFA [US] ET AL) 23 November 1999 (1999-11-23)

D2 US 5 805 528 A (HAMADA TOKIHIKO [JP] ET AL) 8 September 1998 (1998-09-08)

2 Independent claims 1, 20 and 39

The present application does not meet the criteria of Article 33(1) PCT, because the subject-matter of claims 1, 20 and 39 does not involve an inventive step in the sense of Article 33(3) PCT.

2.1 Document D1 is regarded as being the closest prior art to the subject-matter of claim 1, and discloses (the references in parentheses applying to this document):

a method comprising:

a) receiving first conical downscan sonar data from a circular downscan transducer (fig.3 and 10);

b) receiving second downscan sonar data from a second downscan transducer (abs.);

c) combining the conical downscan sonar data and the second downscan sonar data to produce combined downscan sonar data (abs.).

The subject-matter of claim 1 therefore differs from this known method in that the second downscan data are generated by a "*linear*" downscan transducer.

The problem to be solved by the present invention may therefore be regarded as:

how to improve the efficiency of a sonar imaging method.

A *linear*, or fan-shaped, beam is described in document D2 (see, e.g., fig.9 and 10) as providing the same advantages as in the present application. The skilled person would therefore regard it as a normal design option to include this feature in the method described in D1 in order to solve the problem posed.

Therefore, the subject-matter of independent claim 1 is not inventive in the sense of Article 33(3) PCT.

2.2 The subject-matter of claim 20 corresponds in terms of computer program features to that of claim 1. The objections raised in respect of claim 1, therefore, also apply, mutatis mutandis, to claim 20. For this reason, also claim 20 is not inventive within the meaning of Article 33(3) PCT.

2.3 The subject-matter of claim 39 corresponds in terms of apparatus features to that of claim 1. The objections raised in respect of claim 1, therefore, also apply, mutatis mutandis, to claim 39. For this reason, also claim 39 is not inventive within the meaning of Article 33(3) PCT.

3 Dependent claims 2-19, 21-38 and 40-73

Dependent claims 2-19, 21-38 and 40-73 do not appear to contain any additional features which, in combination with the features of any claim to which they refer, meet the requirements of the PCT in respect inventive step (Article 33(3) PCT).

**Re Item VII.**

4

4.1 Contrary to the requirements of Rule 5.1(a)(ii) PCT, the relevant background art disclosed in documents D1 and D2 is not mentioned in the description, nor are these documents identified therein.

4.2 Independent claims 1, 20 and 39 are not in the two-part form in accordance with Rule 6.3(b) PCT, which in the present case would be appropriate, with those features known in combination from the prior art (document D1) being placed in the preamble (Rule 6.3(b)(I) PCT) and with the remaining features being included in the characterising part (Rule 6.3(b)(ii) PCT).

4.3 The features of the claims are not provided with reference signs placed in parentheses (Rule 6.2(b) PCT).

**Re Item VIII.**

5

5.1 Claim 31, disclosing computer program features, is indicated as dependent on method claim 18.

## Possible steps after receipt of the international search report (ISR) and written opinion of the International Searching Authority (WO-ISA)

**General information**

For all international applications filed on or after 01/01/2004 the competent ISA will establish an ISR. It is accompanied by the WO-ISA. Unlike the former written opinion of the IPEA (Rule 66.2 PCT), the WO-ISA is not meant to be responded to, but to be taken into consideration for further procedural steps. This document explains about the possibilities.

**Amending claims under Art. 19 PCT**

Within 2 months after the date of mailing of the ISR and the WO-ISA the applicant may file amended claims under Art. 19 PCT directly with the International Bureau of WIPO. The PCT reform of 2004 did not change this procedure. For further information please see Rule 46 PCT as well as form PCT/ISA/220 and the corresponding Notes to form PCT/ISA/220.

**Filing a demand for international preliminary examination**

In principle, the WO-ISA will be considered as the written opinion of the IPEA. This should, in many cases, make it unnecessary to file a demand for international preliminary examination. If the applicant nevertheless wishes to file a demand this must be done before expiry of 3 months after the date of mailing of the ISR/WO-ISA or 22 months after priority date, whichever expires later (Rule 54bis PCT). Amendments under Art. 34 PCT can be filed with the IPEA as before, normally at the same time as filing the demand (Rule 66.1 (b) PCT).

If a demand for international preliminary examination is filed and no comments/amendments have been received the WO-ISA will be transformed by the IPEA into an IPRP (International Preliminary Report on Patentability) which would merely reflect the content of the WO-ISA. The demand can still be withdrawn (Art. 37 PCT).

**Filing informal comments**

After receipt of the ISR/WO-ISA the applicant may file informal comments on the WO-ISA directly with the International Bureau of WIPO. These will be communicated to the designated Offices together with the IPRP (International Preliminary Report on Patentability) at 30 months from the priority date. Please also refer to the next box.

**End of the international phase**

At the end of the international phase the International Bureau of WIPO will transform the WO-ISA or, if a demand was filed, the written opinion of the IPEA into the IPRP, which will then be transmitted together with possible informal comments to the designated Offices. The IPRP replaces the former IPER (international preliminary examination report).

**Relevant PCT Rules and more information**

Rule 43 PCT, Rule 43bis PCT, Rule 44 PCT, Rule 44bis PCT, PCT Newsletter 12/2003, OJ 11/2003, OJ 12/2003

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY



From the INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

**PCT**

To:
Thorson, Chad L.
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
ETATS-UNIS D'AMERIQUE

**NOTIFICATION OF TRANSMITTAL OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT AND THE WRITTEN OPINION OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY, OR THE DECLARATION**

(PCT Rule 44.1)

| | |
|---|---|
| Date of mailing *(day/month/year)* | 6 October 2010 (06-10-2010) |
| Applicant's or agent's file reference 38495/388217 | **FOR FURTHER ACTION** See paragraphs 1 and 4 below |
| International application No. PCT/US2010/039443 | International filing date *(day/month/year)* 22 June 2010 (22-06-2010) |
| Applicant NAVICO, INC. | |

1. [X] The applicant is hereby notified that the international search report and the written opinion of the International Searching Authority have been established and are transmitted herewith.

   **Filing of amendments and statement under Article 19:**
   The applicant is entitled, if he so wishes, to amend the claims of the International Application (see Rule 46):

   **When?** The time limit for filing such amendments is normally two months from the date of transmittal of the International Search Report.

   **Where?** Directly to the International Bureau of WIPO, 34 chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland, Fascimile No.: (41-22) 338.82.70

   **For more detailed instructions,** see the notes on the accompanying sheet.

2. [ ] The applicant is hereby notified that no international search report will be established and that the declaration under Article 17(2)(a) to that effect and the written opinion of the International Searching Authority are transmitted herewith.

3. [ ] **With regard to any protest** against payment of (an) additional fee(s) under Rule 40.2, the applicant is notified that:

   [ ] the protest together with the decision thereon has been transmitted to the International Bureau together with the applicant's request to forward the texts of both the protest and the decision thereon to the designated Offices.

   [ ] no decision has been made yet on the protest; the applicant will be notified as soon as a decision is made.

4. **Reminders**

   Shortly after the expiration of **18 months** from the priority date, the international application will be published by the International Bureau. If the applicant wishes to avoid or postpone publication, a notice of withdrawal of the international application, or of the priority claim, must reach the International Bureau as provided in Rules 90*bis*.1 and 90*bis*.3, respectively, before the completion of the technical preparations for international publication.

   The applicant may submit comments on an informal basis on the written opinion of the International Searching Authority to the International Bureau. The International Bureau will send a copy of such comments to all designated Offices unless an international preliminary examination report has been or is to be established. These comments would also be made available to the public but not before the expiration of 30 months from the priority date.

   Within **19 months** from the priority date, but only in respect of some designated Offices, a demand for international preliminary examination must be filed if the applicant wishes to postpone the entry into the national phase **until 30 months** from the priority date (in some Offices even later); otherwise, the applicant must, **within 20 months** from the priority date, perform the prescribed acts for entry into the national phase before those designated Offices.

   In respect of other designated Offices, the time limit of **30 months** (or later) will apply even if no demand is filed within 19 months.

   See the Annex to Form PCT/IB/301 and, for details about the applicable time limits, Office by Office, see the *PCT Applicant's Guide*, National Chapters.

| Name and mailing address of the International Searching Authority | Authorized officer |
|---|---|
| European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL-2280 HV Rijswijk<br>Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040<br>Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | WALSH, Eric<br>Tel: +31 (0)70 340-3813 |

**PATENT COOPERATION TREATY**

# PCT

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

| Applicant's or agent's file reference<br>38495/388217 | **FOR FURTHER ACTION** | see Form PCT/ISA/220<br>as well as, where applicable, item 5 below. |
|---|---|---|
| International application No.<br>PCT/US2010/039443 | International filing date *(day/month/year)*<br>22/06/2010 | (Earliest) Priority Date *(day/month/year)*<br>14/07/2009 |
| Applicant<br>NAVICO, INC. | | |

This international search report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This international search report consists of a total of 4 sheets.

[X] It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

1. **Basis of the report**
   a. With regard to the **language**, the international search was carried out on the basis of:
      [X] the international application in the language in which it was filed
      [ ] a translation of the international application into ____________, which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b))
   b. [ ] This international search report has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43.6*bis*(a)).
   c. [ ] With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, see Box No. I.
2. [ ] **Certain claims were found unsearchable** (See Box No. II)
3. [ ] **Unity of invention is lacking** (see Box No III)
4. With regard to the **title,**
   [X] the text is approved as submitted by the applicant
   [ ] the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:
5. With regard to the **abstract,**
   [X] the text is approved as submitted by the applicant
   [ ] the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box No. IV. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority
6. With regard to the **drawings,**
   a. the figure of the **drawings** to be published with the abstract is Figure No. 8a
      [ ] as suggested by the applicant
      [X] as selected by this Authority, because the applicant failed to suggest a figure
      [ ] as selected by this Authority, because this figure better characterizes the invention
   b. [ ] none of the figures is to be published with the abstract

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No
PCT/US2010/039443

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**
INV. G01S15/89 G01S15/96
ADD.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
G01S

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

| Category* | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| Y | WO 98/15846 A1 (ROWE DEINES INSTR INC [US]) 16 April 1998 (1998-04-16) figures 3,4 * abstract page 7, line 32 claim 1 | 1-99 |
| Y | US 3 618 006 A (WRIGHT CHARLES P) 2 November 1971 (1971-11-02) * abstract; figures 1,2 | 1-99 |
| A | US 5 184 330 A (ADAMS JAMES W [US] ET AL) 2 February 1993 (1993-02-02) figures 4,5,6 * abstract | 1 |

-/--

[X] Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.   [X] See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

| Date of the actual completion of the international search | Date of mailing of the international search report |
|---|---|
| 29 September 2010 | 06/10/2010 |

| Name and mailing address of the ISA/ | Authorized officer |
|---|---|
| European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL – 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | Alberga, Vito |

1

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No
PCT/US2010/039443

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category* | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| A | US 4 879 697 A (LOWRANCE DARRELL J [US] ET AL) 7 November 1989 (1989-11-07)<br>figure 4<br>* abstract<br>----- | 1 |
| A | US 5 694 372 A (PERENNES MARC [FR]) 2 December 1997 (1997-12-02)<br>figures 1,2<br>* abstract<br>----- | 1 |

1

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No
PCT/US2010/039443

| Patent document cited in search report | | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | | Publication date |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| WO 9815846 | A1 | 16-04-1998 | AT | 236409 T | 15-04-2003 |
| | | | DE | 69720483 D1 | 08-05-2003 |
| | | | DE | 69720483 T2 | 24-12-2003 |
| | | | EP | 0929825 A1 | 21-07-1999 |
| | | | JP | 3995270 B2 | 24-10-2007 |
| | | | JP | 2001502058 T | 13-02-2001 |
| | | | JP | 4087430 B2 | 21-05-2008 |
| | | | JP | 2007192830 A | 02-08-2007 |
| | | | NO | 991555 A | 04-06-1999 |
| | | | US | 5808967 A | 15-09-1998 |
| US 3618006 | A | 02-11-1971 | NONE | | |
| US 5184330 | A | 02-02-1993 | NONE | | |
| US 4879697 | A | 07-11-1989 | NONE | | |
| US 5694372 | A | 02-12-1997 | DE | 69402084 D1 | 17-04-1997 |
| | | | DE | 69402084 T2 | 19-06-1997 |
| | | | EP | 0716751 A1 | 19-06-1996 |
| | | | FR | 2709559 A1 | 10-03-1995 |
| | | | WO | 9506885 A1 | 09-03-1995 |

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

To:

see form PCT/ISA/220

# PCT

## WRITTEN OPINION OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY
(PCT Rule 43*bis*.1)

Date of mailing
(*day/month/year*) see form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet)

Applicant's or agent's file reference
see form PCT/ISA/220

**FOR FURTHER ACTION**
See paragraph 2 below

| International application No. | International filing date (*day/month/year*) | Priority date (*day/month/year*) |
|---|---|---|
| PCT/US2010/039443 | 22.06.2010 | 14.07.2009 |

International Patent Classification (IPC) or both national classification and IPC
INV. G01S15/89 G01S15/96

Applicant
NAVICO, INC.

1. This opinion contains indications relating to the following items:

- ☒ Box No. I Basis of the opinion
- ☐ Box No. II Priority
- ☐ Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- ☐ Box No. IV Lack of unity of invention
- ☒ Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43*bis*.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- ☐ Box No. VI Certain documents cited
- ☒ Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application
- ☒ Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application

2. **FURTHER ACTION**

If a demand for international preliminary examination is made, this opinion will usually be considered to be a written opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority ("IPEA") except that this does not apply where the applicant chooses an Authority other than this one to be the IPEA and the chosen IPEA has notifed the International Bureau under Rule 66.1*bis*(b) that written opinions of this International Searching Authority will not be so considered.

If this opinion is, as provided above, considered to be a written opinion of the IPEA, the applicant is invited to submit to the IPEA a written reply together, where appropriate, with amendments, before the expiration of 3 months from the date of mailing of Form PCT/ISA/220 or before the expiration of 22 months from the priority date, whichever expires later.

For further options, see Form PCT/ISA/220.

3. For further details, see notes to Form PCT/ISA/220.

| Name and mailing address of the ISA: | Date of completion of this opinion | Authorized Officer |
|---|---|---|
| European Patent Office<br>P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL-2280 HV Rijswijk - Pays Bas<br>Tel. +31 70 340 - 2040<br>Fax: +31 70 340 - 3016 | see form PCT/ISA/210 | Alberga, Vito<br>Telephone No. +31 70 340-2798 |

**Box No. I Basis of the opinion**

1. With regard to the **language**, this opinion has been established on the basis of:

   ☒ the international application in the language in which it was filed

   ☐ a translation of the international application into , which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1 (b)).

2. ☐ This opinion has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43bis.1(a))

3. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, this opinion has been established on the basis of a sequence listing filed or furnished:

   a. (means)

   ☐ on paper

   ☐ in electronic form

   b. (time)

   ☐ in the international application as filed

   ☐ together with the international application in electronic form

   ☐ subsequently to this Authority for the purposes of search

4. ☐ In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that in the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.

5. Additional comments:

**Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43*bis*.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement**

1. Statement

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Novelty (N) | Yes: | Claims | 1-99 |
| | No: | Claims | |
| Inventive step (IS) | Yes: | Claims | |
| | No: | Claims | 1-99 |
| Industrial applicability (IA) | Yes: | Claims | 1-99 |
| | No: | Claims | |

2. Citations and explanations

   **see separate sheet**

**Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application**

The following defects in the form or contents of the international application have been noted:

see separate sheet

**Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application**

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:

see separate sheet

**Re Item V.**

1 References

Reference is made to the following documents:

D1 WO 98/15846 A1 (ROWE DEINES INSTR INC [US]) 16 April 1998 (1998-04-16)

D2 US 3 618 006 A (WRIGHT CHARLES P) 2 November 1971 (1971-11-02)

D3 US 5 184 330 A (ADAMS JAMES W [US] ET AL) 2 February 1993 (1993-02-02)

D4 US 4 879 697 A (LOWRANCE DARRELL J [US] ET AL) 7 November 1989 (1989-11-07)

D5 US 5 694 372 A (PERENNES MARC [FR]) 2 December 1997 (1997-12-02)

2 Independent claims 1, 32, 57 and 76

Further to a lack of clarity discussed below, the present application does not meet the criteria of Article 33(1) PCT, because the subject-matter of claims 1, 32, 57 and 76 does not involve an inventive step in the sense of Article 33(3) PCT.

2.1 The document D1 is regarded as being the closest prior art to the subject-matter of claim 1, and insofar as this claim can be understood, this document shows the following features thereof (the references in parentheses applying to this document):

a transducer array (abs.) comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements (fig.3), each one of the plurality of transducer elements having a substantially rectangular shape (pag. 7, l.32) configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the transducer elements that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements (fig.3 and 4), wherein the plurality of transducer elements are positioned such that longitudinal lengths of at least two of the plurality of transducer elements are substantially parallel to each other (fig.4), and wherein the plurality of transducer elements include at least:

i) a first linear transducer element to project sonar pulses in a first direction (fig.3),

ii) a second linear transducer element positioned to lie substantially in a plane with the first linear transducer element and to project sonar pulses in a second direction that is generally opposite of the first side (fig.3), and

iii) a third linear transducer element positioned to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to the plane (fig.3).

The subject-matter of claim 1 therefore differs from this known system in that the transducer elements are positioned within a housing.

The problem to be solved by the present invention may therefore be regarded as:

how to conveniently arrange the transducer elements of an array.

A housing is described in document D2 (see, e.g., fig.1) as providing the same advantages as in the present application. The skilled person would therefore regard it as a normal design option to include this feature in the system described in D1 in order to solve the problem posed.

Therefore, the subject-matter of independent claim 1 is not inventive in the sense of Article 33(3) PCT.

2.2 Claims 32, 57 and 76 appear to be just reformulations of claim 1. The objections raised in respect of this claim also apply, mutatis mutandis, to claims 32, 57 and 76. The subject-matter of independent claims 32, 57 and 76 is therefore not inventive (Article 33(3) PCT).

3 Dependent claims 2-31, 33-56, 58-75 and 77-99

3.1 Claims 2-31, 33-56, 58-75 and 77-99 are dependent on claims 1, 32, 57 and 76, respectively, and as such also do not meet the requirements of PCT with respect to inventive step (Article 33(3) PCT).

**Re Item VII.**

4

4.1 Contrary to the requirements of Rule 5.1(a)(ii) PCT, the relevant background art disclosed in documents D1, D2, D3, D4 and D5 is not mentioned in the description, nor are these documents identified therein.

4.2 Independent claims 1, 32, 57 and 76 are not in the two-part form in accordance with Rule 6.3(b) PCT, which in the present case would be appropriate, with those features known in combination from the prior art (document D1) being placed in the preamble (Rule 6.3(b)(I) PCT) and with the remaining features being included in the characterising part (Rule 6.3(b)(ii) PCT).

4.3 The features of the claims are not provided with reference signs placed in parentheses (Rule 6.2(b) PCT).

**Re Item VIII.**

5

5.1 Although claims 1, 32, 57 and 76 have been drafted as separate independent claims, they appear to relate effectively to the same subject-matter and to differ from each other only with regard to the definition of the subject-matter for which protection is sought and in respect of the terminology used for the features of that subject-matter. The aforementioned claims therefore lack conciseness and as such do not meet the requirements of Article 6 PCT.

5.2 Terms like "substantially", "significantly", "generally" used, e.g., in claim 1 and in several other claims, are unclear and leave the reader in doubt as to the meaning of the technical features to which they refer, thereby rendering the definition of the subject-matter of said claims unclear (Article 6 PCT).

# Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

| | |
|---|---|
| **EFS ID:** | 11408212 |
| **Application Number:** | 12460139 |
| **International Application Number:** | |
| **Confirmation Number:** | 9769 |
| **Title of Invention:** | Downscan imaging sonar |
| **First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:** | Brian T. Maguire |
| **Customer Number:** | 826 |
| **Filer:** | Michael D. McCoy/Judy Creel |
| **Filer Authorized By:** | Michael D. McCoy |
| **Attorney Docket Number:** | 038495/369324 |
| **Receipt Date:** | 15-NOV-2011 |
| **Filing Date:** | 14-JUL-2009 |
| **Time Stamp:** | 12:19:56 |
| **Application Type:** | Utility under 35 USC 111(a) |

## Payment information:

| | |
|---|---|
| Submitted with Payment | no |

## File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Non Patent Literature | 369324_NPL_CITE_214.PDF | 4845924<br>afdeddcae74578f2c333db6a77a491102eeecba4 | no | 88 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | Non Patent Literature | 369324_NPL_CITE_215.PDF | 4565876<br>019b58ae6e9f5121b389db446c111fc6f2ae56cc | no | 45 |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 3 | Non Patent Literature | 369324_NPL_CITE_216.pdf | 6231817<br>546add633538d85b36a8dc8f049a04879c14b7b2 | no | 24 |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 4 | Non Patent Literature | 369324_NPL_217.PDF | 3036355<br>f8560a38adde4eda37b9ec148768168f53123d5e | no | 69 |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 5 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_218_223.PDF | 5588131<br>f9c5a2b0a9a7d2ab4fffa79057e07c218ab87dd6 | yes | 107 |

**Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description**

| Document Description | Start | End |
|---|---|---|
| Non Patent Literature | 1 | 5 |
| Non Patent Literature | 6 | 41 |
| Non Patent Literature | 42 | 59 |
| Non Patent Literature | 60 | 61 |
| Non Patent Literature | 62 | 63 |
| Non Patent Literature | 64 | 107 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 6 | Non Patent Literature | 369324_NPL_CITE_224.PDF | 1763406<br>5a9eda3b2868901d14caec434429f943decd4d91 | no | 38 |
| **Warnings:** | | | | | |
| **Information:** | | | | | |
| 7 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_225_232.PDF | 10688625<br>3e2dfa15217fd2fb7b052f5d39904272be89d644 | yes | 164 |

| Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| Non Patent Literature | 1 | 38 |
| Non Patent Literature | 39 | 76 |
| Non Patent Literature | 77 | 108 |
| Non Patent Literature | 109 | 141 |
| Non Patent Literature | 142 | 145 |
| Non Patent Literature | 146 | 146 |
| Non Patent Literature | 147 | 153 |
| Non Patent Literature | 154 | 164 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_233_242.PDF | 11916371<br>26e90a91f9519646c8c67cf873f3217cf92fd2cb | yes | 177 |

| Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| Non Patent Literature | 1 | 107 |
| Non Patent Literature | 108 | 115 |
| Non Patent Literature | 116 | 126 |
| Non Patent Literature | 127 | 129 |
| Non Patent Literature | 130 | 131 |
| Non Patent Literature | 132 | 144 |
| Non Patent Literature | 145 | 155 |
| Non Patent Literature | 156 | 158 |
| Non Patent Literature | 159 | 166 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Non Patent Literature | 167 | 177 |
| **Warnings:** | | | |
| **Information:** | | | |
| | **Total Files Size (in bytes):** | 48636505 | |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**
**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**
**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**
**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

# Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

| | |
|---|---|
| EFS ID: | 11408352 |
| Application Number: | 12460139 |
| International Application Number: | |
| Confirmation Number: | 9769 |
| Title of Invention: | Downscan imaging sonar |
| First Named Inventor/Applicant Name: | Brian T. Maguire |
| Customer Number: | 826 |
| Filer: | Michael D. McCoy/Judy Creel |
| Filer Authorized By: | Michael D. McCoy |
| Attorney Docket Number: | 038495/369324 |
| Receipt Date: | 15-NOV-2011 |
| Filing Date: | 14-JUL-2009 |
| Time Stamp: | 12:29:53 |
| Application Type: | Utility under 35 USC 111(a) |

## Payment information:

| | |
|---|---|
| Submitted with Payment | no |

## File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_243_244.PDF | 17394723<br>e2e503eceda8733beca4dbd9f31e356fa3aca3e4 | yes | 206 |

| | Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| | Non Patent Literature | 1 | 6 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 7 | 206 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_245_254.PDF | 12270179<br>b052f1baf6dd36d4f4c4d25e71e6fcb59b417ff | yes | 121 |

| | Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| | Non Patent Literature | 1 | 1 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 2 | 19 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 20 | 38 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 39 | 60 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 61 | 62 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 63 | 106 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 107 | 110 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 111 | 112 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 113 | 115 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 116 | 121 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | | 369324_NPL_CITES_255_266.PDF | 6912952<br>72f710727cc98fc8f2acc23f41ad32ac1836f062 | yes | 91 |

| | Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| | Non Patent Literature | 1 | 6 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Non Patent Literature | 7 | 25 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 26 | 27 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 28 | 28 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 29 | 29 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 30 | 30 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 31 | 31 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 32 | 32 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 33 | 76 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 77 | 79 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 80 | 83 |
| | Non Patent Literature | 84 | 91 |
| **Warnings:** | | | |
| **Information:** | | | |
| | **Total Files Size (in bytes):** | 36577854 | |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**
**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**
**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**
**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NO. | FILING DATE | FIRST NAMED INVENTOR | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. | CONFIRMATION NO. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | Brian T. Maguire | 038495/369324 | 9769 |

826 7590 09/22/2011

ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

| EXAMINER | |
|---|---|
| HULKA, JAMES R | |

| ART UNIT | PAPER NUMBER |
|---|---|
| 3662 | |

| MAIL DATE | DELIVERY MODE |
|---|---|
| 09/22/2011 | PAPER |

**Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.**

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.

| Office Action Summary | Application No. | Applicant(s) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 12/460,139 | MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. | |
| | **Examiner** | **Art Unit** | |
| | JAMES HULKA | 3662 | |

***-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --***

**Period for Reply**

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE *3* MONTH(S) OR THIRTY (30) DAYS, WHICHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

**Status**

1)☒ Responsive to communication(s) filed on *29 August 2011*.

2a)☐ This action is **FINAL**. 2b)☒ This action is non-final.

3)☐ An election was made by the applicant in response to a restriction requirement set forth during the interview on _____; the restriction requirement and election have been incorporated into this action.

4)☐ Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

**Disposition of Claims**

5)☒ Claim(s) *1-99* is/are pending in the application.

5a) Of the above claim(s) *1-56* is/are withdrawn from consideration.

6)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.

7)☒ Claim(s) *57-99* is/are rejected.

8)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.

9)☐ Claim(s) _____ are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

**Application Papers**

10)☐ The specification is objected to by the Examiner.

11)☐ The drawing(s) filed on _____ is/are: a)☐ accepted or b)☐ objected to by the Examiner.

Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).

Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).

12)☐ The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner. Note the attached Office Action or form PTO-152.

**Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119**

13)☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).

a)☐ All b)☐ Some * c)☐ None of:

1.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.

2.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.

3.☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

* See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

**Attachment(s)**

1) ☒ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)

2) ☐ Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)

3) ☒ Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO/SB/08) Paper No(s)/Mail Date *20101028*.

4) ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413) Paper No(s)/Mail Date. _____ .

5) ☐ Notice of Informal Patent Application

6) ☐ Other: _____.

## DETAILED ACTION

### *Election/Restrictions*

1. **Applicant's election *without* traverse of Species II, Claims 57-99**, in the reply filed on 29 August 2011 is acknowledged. **Claims 1-56 have been withdrawn** from further consideration pursuant to 37 CFR 1.142(b) as being drawn to a nonelected Species, there being no allowable generic or linking claim. Election was made **without** traverse in the reply filed on 29 August 2011.

### *Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 112*

2. The following is a quotation of the second paragraph of 35 U.S.C. 112:

> The specification shall conclude with one or more claims particularly pointing out and distinctly claiming the subject matter which the applicant regards as his invention.

3. **Claims 59, 60, 62 and 72 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 112, second paragraph, as being indefinite** for failing to particularly point out and distinctly claim the subject matter which applicant regards as the invention.

4. Regarding Claim 59, the phrase "about 455 kHz and 800 KHz" is indefinite. The examiner interprets frequencies within 50 KHz above or below each value to be about 455 KHz or about 800 KHz.

Regarding Claim 60, the phrases "about 0.8 degrees", "about 32 degrees", "about 1.4 degrees", and "about 56 degrees" are indefinite. The examiner interprets any angle between 0.3 and 1.3 degrees to be about 0.8 degrees. The examiner interprets any angle between 0.9 and 1.9 degrees to be about 1.4 degrees. The examiner interprets any angle between 27 and 37 degrees to be about 32 degrees. The examiner interprets any angle between 51 and 61 degrees to be about 56 degrees.

Regarding Claim 62, the phrases “about 120 mm” and “about 3 mm” are indefinite. The examiner interprets any length between 100 mm and 140 mm to be about 120 mm. The examiner interprets any width between 2 mm and 4 mm to be about 3 mm.

Regarding Claim 72, the phrase “substantially perpendicular" is indefinite. The examiner interprets any angle between the center of the beams that is between 85 degrees and 95 degrees to be substantially perpendicular.

***Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 103***

5. The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

> (a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

**6. Claims 57, 61, 72, 75-76, 78-79, 94 and 97 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Nishimori (5,561,641) in view of Shah (2006/0002232).**

7. Regarding Claim 57, Nishimori teaches a transducer array comprising:, the linear transducer element having a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beam width in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element … wherein the linear transducer element is positioned within

the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface [Col. 18 Lines 1-20]. Nishimori does not explicitly teach a housing mountable to a watercraft … Shah teaches a housing mountable to a watercraft … [0029]. It would have been obvious to modify the array of Nishimori with a housing mountable to a watercraft because it would allow the transducer to be transported without being damaged.

Regarding Claim 61, Nishimori does not teach communicating with a single transceiver. Shah teaches communicating with a single transceiver [0029]. It would have been obvious to modify the array of Nishimori to include communicating with a single transceiver to reduce equipment costs.

Regarding Claim 76, Nishimori teaches a linear transducer element positioned …, the linear transducer element having a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beam width in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element that is significantly less than a beam width of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer element, wherein the linear transducer element is positioned to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface of a body of water; a sonar module configured to enable operable communication with the transducer array, the sonar module including: a sonar signal processor [Col 12, Lines 30-45] to process sonar return signals received via the linear transducer element. Nishimori does not teach a housing … or at least one transceiver configured to provide communication between the linear transducer element and the sonar signal processor. Shah teaches a housing … or at least one transceiver configured to provide communication between the linear transducer element and the sonar signal processor [0029]. It would have been obvious to modify the array of Nishimori with a housing because it would allow the transducer to be transported without being damaged, and the transceiver would allow for more efficient and faster processing of the location data.

Regarding Claims 72 and 94, Nishimori also teaches a circular transducer element … [Col 18, Lines 1-20].

Regarding Claims 75 and 97, Nishimori also teaches sonar signal returns from the circular transducer element and linear transducer element provide generally simultaneous data [Col 22, Lines 5-15].

Regarding Claim 78, Nishimori also teaches a sonar module is provided within a separate housing [Fig. 18].

Regarding Claim 79, Nishimori also teaches at least one display unit … [86 of Fig. 18].

**8. Claims 58, 65-71, 74, 80-81, 83, 88-93, 96, 98 and 99 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Nishimori (5,561,641) in view of Shah (2006/0002232) as applied to claims 57, 72, 76 and 94 above, and further in view of Zimmerman (2007/0025183).**

9. Regarding Claims 58 and 83, Nishimori does not explicitly teach a linear transducer element is configured to operate at a selected one of at least two selectable operating frequencies. Zimmerman teaches a linear transducer element is configured to

operate at a selected one of at least two selectable operating frequencies [0003]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to be able to detect different types of objects effectively.

Regarding Claim 65, Nishimori does not explicitly teach a beam width in the direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element is less than about five percent as large as the beam width of the sonar beam in the direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the linear transducer element. Zimmerman teaches a beam width in the direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element is less than about five percent as large … [Fig. 3]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include a narrow beam in one direction to increase resolution of successive 2-D images.

Regarding Claims 66, 67 and 88, Nishimori does not explicitly teach images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer provide data regarding bottom features over less than fifty (or twenty) percent of a display screen when displayed. Zimmerman teaches images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer provide data regarding bottom features over less than fifty (or twenty) percent of a display screen when displayed [Claim 9]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include display of images on less than fifty or twenty percent of a display screen to be able to see multiple images at one time, or to analyze a time series of data.

Regarding Claims 68-70, 89-91 and 93, Nishimori does not explicitly teach images of sonar data … representing bottom data, depth data, water column data, or data below the linear transducer element. Zimmerman teaches images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing bottom data, depth, data water column data, or data below the linear transducer element [0063-0065]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include providing images with depth data, water bottom data, depth data, or data from vertically below the element in order to notify the operators of any physical obstacles or hazards.

Regarding Claims 71 and 92, Nishimori does not explicitly teach sonar data images of two or more of ... Zimmerman teaches sonar data images of two or more of ... [0063-0065]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include providing images or two or more of depth data, water bottom data, or depth data in order to notify the operators of any physical obstacles or hazards.

Regarding Claims 74 and 96, Nishimori does not teach linear transducer and circular transducer elements are positioned to project fan-shaped and conical sonar beams … to sonify areas of the bottom that at least partially overlap. Zimmerman teaches linear transducer and circular transducer elements are positioned to project fan-shaped and conical sonar beams … to sonify areas of the bottom that at least partially overlap [0027]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include overlapping circular and linear transducer beams to improve sonar image resolution.

Regarding Claim 80, Nishimori does not explicitly teach a display and the sonar module are in the same housing. Zimmerman teaches a display and the sonar module are in the same housing [Fig. 4a]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of

Nishimori to put both items in the same housing to reduce the number of pieces of equipment on board the vessel.

Regarding Claim 81, Nishimori does not explicitly teach at least one display of the plurality of displays is enabled to simultaneously provide different images… Zimmerman teaches at least one display of the plurality of displays is enabled to simultaneously provide different images… [Claim 9]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include display of different images simultaneously to be able to see multiple images at one time, or to analyze a time series of data.

Regarding Claim 98, Nishimori does not explicitly teach data from at least one of the group of radar, GPS, digital mapping, time and temperature. Zimmerman teaches data from at least one of the group of radar, GPS, digital mapping, time and temperature [0023, 0064]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include data from at least one of those resources to improve location tracking of desired underwater targets.

Regarding Claim 99, Nishimori does not explicitly teach display of the data is in a user-selectable format. Zimmerman teaches display of the data is in a user-selectable format [0064-065]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include a user selectable display format screen to be able to see multiple images at one time, or to analyze a time series of data.

**10. Claims 64, 73, 77, 85, 87 and 95 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Nishimori (5,561,641) in view of Shah (2006/0002232) as applied to claims 57, 72 and 76 above, and further in view of Thompson (7,542,376).**

**11.** Regarding Claim 64, Nishimori does not teach a housing has a streamlined shape. Thompson teaches a housing has a streamlined shape [Col. 2, Lines 35-55]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include a streamlined housing in order to protect the contents of the system from being damaged.

Regarding Claims 73 and 95, Nishimori does not explicitly teach linear and circular transducer elements are in the same housing or that the circular transducer element produces a conical downscan beam from within the same housing. Thompson teaches linear and circular transducer elements are in the same housing or that the circular transducer element produces a conical downscan beam from within the same housing [Col. 2, Lines 35-55]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include putting both transducers in the same housing to reduce material cost.

Regarding Claim 77, Nishimori does not explicitly teach an Ethernet hub … Thompson teaches an Ethernet Hub … [Col. 6, Lines 10-15]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include an Ethernet hub to allow multiple users to analyze the sonar data and images, or to increase the speed of data transfer.

Regarding Claims 85 and 87, Nishimori does not explicitly teach a housing being mountable to a watercraft … capable of traversing a surface of a body of water. Thompson teaches a housing being mountable to a watercraft … capable of traversing a surface of a body of water [Col. 2 Lines 30-45]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include mounting a housing to a watercraft in order to examine different areas of a body of water more efficiently.

**12. Claim 60 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Nishimori (5,561,641) in view of Shah (2006/0002232) as applied to claim 57 above, and further in view of Audi (5,438,552).**

**13.** Regarding Claim 60, Nishimori does not teach a beam width of a linear transducer element is about 0.8 degrees by about 32 degrees or about 1.4 degrees by about 56 degrees. Audi teaches a beam width of a linear transducer element is about 0.8 degrees by about 32 degrees or about 1.4 degrees by about 56 degrees [Col. 1, Lines 15-35]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to produce a wide, thin beam to cover a large area while also producing higher resolution sonar images.

**14. Claim 62 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Nishimori (5,561,641) in view of Shah (2006/0002232) as applied to claim 57 above, and further in view of Blue (5,850,372) and Bird (4,774,837).**

**15.** Regarding Claim 62, Nishimori does not teach a length of a rectangular face of the linear transducer element is about 120 mm and a width of the rectangular face of the linear transducer element is about 3 mm. Blue [Col 6, Lines 1-5] and Bird [Col 2. Lines 40-60] teach a length of a rectangular face of the linear transducer element is about 120 mm and a width of the rectangular face of the linear transducer element is about 3 mm. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to make a specific size transducer to produce a beam for desired applications and also to eliminate unnecessary costs.

**16. Claims 59 and 84 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Nishimori (5,561,641) in view of Shah (2006/0002232) as applied to claims 57 and 76 above, and further in view of Zimmerman (2007/0025183), Richard (4,538,249) and Adams (5,184,330).**

17. Regarding Claim 59, Nishimori does not explicitly teach selectable operating frequencies include about 455 kHz and 800 KHz. Zimmerman [0003], Adams [Col. 5, Lines 1-5], and Richard [Col. 8, Lines 45-60]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include specific frequencies depending on the types of objects being tracked by the sonar in the water.

**18. Claim 82 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Nishimori (5,561,641) in view of Shah (2006/0002232) as applied to claim 76 above, and further in view of Wilcox (5,142,502).**

**19.** Regarding Claim 82, Nishimori does not explicitly teach configuration settings defining a predefined set of display images … Wilcox teaches configuration settings defining a predefined set of display images … [Col. 3, Lines 50-70]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include configuration settings to allow the user to compare different sonar images taken during different surveys.

**20. Claims 63 and 86 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Nishimori (5,561,641) in view of Shah (2006/0002232) as applied to claims 57, 76, and 85 above, further in view of Thompson (7,542,376) and Zimmerman (2007/0025183).**

21. Regarding Claims 63 and 86, Nishimori does not teach a housing is mountable to a vessel to generate sonar pulses defining a fan-shaped beam extending from one side of the vessel to an opposite side of the vessel. Nishimori does not explicitly teach a housing mountable to a watercraft … Thompson teaches a housing mountable to a watercraft … [Col. 2 Lines 35-55]. It would have been obvious to modify the array of Nishimori with a housing mountable to a watercraft because it would allow the transducer to be transported without being damaged. Zimmerman teaches a fan-shaped beam ... [Fig 3]. It would have been obvious to modify the system of Nishimori to include a fan-shaped beam to identify objects in a larger area near the vessel.

## *Conclusion*

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to JAMES HULKA whose telephone number is (571)270-7553. The examiner can normally be reached on Monday thru Thursday 7:30am-5pm, Every 2nd Friday, 7:30am - 4pm.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Thomas Tarcza can be reached on 571-272-6979. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pair-direct.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/J. H./
Examiner, Art Unit 3662

/Thomas H. Tarcza/
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3662

| *Notice of References Cited* | Application/Control No. 12/460,139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Examiner JAMES HULKA | Art Unit 3662 | Page 1 of 1 |

**U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| * | | Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code | Date MM-YYYY | Name | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| * | A | US-4,068,209 A | 01-1978 | Lagier, Michel | 367/158 |
| * | B | US-4,538,249 A | 08-1985 | Richard, Joseph D. | 367/94 |
| * | C | US-4,774,837 A | 10-1988 | Bird, Jeremy | 73/181 |
| * | D | US-5,142,502 A | 08-1992 | Wilcox et al. | 367/88 |
| * | E | US-5,438,552 A | 08-1995 | Audi et al. | 367/88 |
| * | F | US-5,561,641 A | 10-1996 | Nishimori et al. | 367/90 |
| * | G | US-5,850,372 A | 12-1998 | Blue, Joseph E. | 367/139 |
| * | H | US-2005/0099887 A1 | 05-2005 | Zimmerman et al. | 367/012 |
| * | I | US-2006/0002232 A1 | 01-2006 | Shah et al. | 367/082 |
| * | J | US-2007/0025183 A1 | 02-2007 | Zimmerman et al. | 367/088 |
| * | K | US-7,542,376 B1 | 06-2009 | Thompson et al. | 367/104 |
| | L | US- | | | |
| | M | US- | | | |

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| * | | Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code | Date MM-YYYY | Country | Name | Classification |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | N | | | | | |
| | O | | | | | |
| | P | | | | | |
| | Q | | | | | |
| | R | | | | | |
| | S | | | | | |
| | T | | | | | |

**NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| * | | Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages) |
|---|---|---|
| | U | Gary Melvin, Yanchao Li, Larry Mayer, and Allan Clay "Commercial fishing vessels, automatic acoustic logging systems and 3D data visualization" ICES J. Mar. Sci. (2002) 59(1 ): 179-189 |
| | V | |
| | W | |
| | X | |

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

| *Search Notes* | Application/Control No. | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination |
|---|---|---|
| | 12460139 | MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
| | **Examiner** | **Art Unit** |
| | JAMES HULKA | 3662 |

## SEARCHED

| Class | Subclass | Date | Examiner |
|---|---|---|---|
| 367 | 88 | 9/13/2011 | JH |

## SEARCH NOTES

| Search Notes | Date | Examiner |
|---|---|---|
| EAST (Keyword and Class Limited) | 9/13/2011 | JH |
| PALM (Inventor Name) | 9/13/2011 | JH |
| Google (Keyword) | 9/13/2011 | JH |

## INTERFERENCE SEARCH

| Class | Subclass | Date | Examiner |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |

| | |
|---|---|
| /J.H./<br>Examiner.Art Unit 3662 | |

Substitute for form 1449/PTO
(Revised 07/2007)

# INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT

*(Use as many sheets as necessary)*

Sheet 1 of 1

| Complete if Known | |
|---|---|
| Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| Art Unit | 3662 |
| Examiner Name | Not Yet Assigned /James Hulka/ |
| Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

## U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Document Number<br>Number - Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages of Relevant Figures Appear |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | US-3,618,006 | 11-02-1971 | The Boeing Company | |
| | 2 | US-4,879,697 | 11-07-1989 | Lowrance, et al. | |
| | 3 | US-5,184,330 | 02-02-1993 | Adams, et al. | |
| | 4 | US-5,694,372 | 12-02-1997 | Perennes | |
| | | US- | | | |
| | | US- | | | |
| | | US- | | | |
| | | US- | | | |

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials | Cite No. | Foreign Patent Document<br>Country Code - Number Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 5 | WO 98/15846 | 04-16-1998 | Rowe-Deines Instruments, Incorporated | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

## OTHER DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 6 | International Search Report and Written Opinion mailed October 6, 2010, for International Application No. PCT/US2010/039443 | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

| Examiner Signature | /James Hulka/ | Date Considered | 07/26/2011 |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**Submitted: October 28, 2010** RAY-1002



ALL REFERENCES CONSIDERED EXCEPT WHERE LINED THROUGH. /J.H./

| ***Index of Claims*** | **Application/Control No.**<br>12460139 | **Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination**<br>MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | **Examiner**<br>JAMES HULKA | **Art Unit**<br>3662 |

| ✓ | **Rejected** | - | **Cancelled** | N | **Non-Elected** | A | **Appeal** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | **Allowed** | ÷ | **Restricted** | I | **Interference** | O | **Objected** |

☐ **Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant** ☐ **CPA** ☐ **T.D.** ☐ **R.1.47**

| **CLAIM** | | **DATE** | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | 09/13/2011 | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 2 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 4 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 6 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 7 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 8 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 9 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 10 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 11 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 12 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 13 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 14 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 15 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 16 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 17 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 18 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 19 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 20 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 21 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 22 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 23 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 24 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 25 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 26 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 27 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 28 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 29 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 30 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 31 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 32 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 33 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 34 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 35 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 36 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |

| Index of Claims | Application/Control No. 12460139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | Examiner JAMES HULKA | Art Unit 3662 |

| ✓ | Rejected | - | Cancelled | N | Non-Elected | A | Appeal |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | Allowed | ÷ | Restricted | I | Interference | O | Objected |

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | 09/13/2011 | | | | | | | |
| | 37 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 38 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 39 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 40 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 41 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 42 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 43 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 44 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 45 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 46 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 47 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 48 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 49 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 50 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 51 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 52 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 53 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 54 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 55 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 56 | ÷ | N | | | | | | | |
| | 57 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 58 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 59 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 60 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 61 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 62 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 63 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 64 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 65 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 66 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 67 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 68 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 69 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 70 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 71 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 72 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |

# Index of Claims

| Application/Control No. | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination |
|---|---|
| 12460139 | MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
| **Examiner** | **Art Unit** |
| JAMES HULKA | 3662 |

| ✓ | Rejected | - | Cancelled | N | Non-Elected | A | Appeal |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | Allowed | ÷ | Restricted | I | Interference | O | Objected |

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | 09/13/2011 | | | | | | | |
| | 73 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 74 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 75 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 76 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 77 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 78 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 79 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 80 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 81 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 82 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 83 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 84 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 85 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 86 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 87 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 88 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 89 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 90 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 91 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 92 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 93 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 94 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 95 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 96 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 97 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 98 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| | 99 | ÷ | ✓ | | | | | | | |

## EAST Search History

## EAST Search History (Prior Art)

| Ref # | Hits | Search Query | DBs | Default Operator | Plurals | Time Stamp |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L1 | 108 | housing same ((linear$2 or rectang$4) near3 transduc$3) same (acoustic$3 or sonar or ultraso$3) and vertical$3 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 14:55 |
| L2 | 11 | housing same ((linear$2 or rectang$4) near3 transduc$3) same (acoustic$3 or sonar or ultraso$3) same vertical$3 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 14:55 |
| L3 | 24 | housing same ((linear$2 or rectang$4) near3 transduc$3) same (acoustic$3 or sonar or ultraso$3) and vertical$3 and ("367" or "181" or "381").clas. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:05 |
| L5 | 261 | hous$3 same ((linear$2 or rectang$4) near3 transduc $3) same (acoustic$3 or sonar or ultraso$3) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:09 |
| L6 | 41 | hous$3 same ((linear$2 or rectang$4) near3 transduc $3) same (acoustic$3 or sonar or ultraso$3) and "367".clas. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:09 |
| L9 | 98 | hous$3 same ((linear$2) same transduc$3) same (acoustic$3 or sonar or ultraso$3) and "367".clas. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:34 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L12 | 10 | (US-20110013485-$ or US-20070025183-$ or US-20050099887-$ or US-20060002232-$).did. or (US-5694372-$ or US-5184330-$ or US-4879697-$ or US-3618006-$ or US-5561641-$ or US-7542376-$).did. | US-PGPUB; USPAT | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:40 |
| L13 | 9 | L12 and frequenc$3 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:40 |
| L14 | 3 | transducer$3 same sonar same beam$3 same ("32" adj degree$2) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:53 |
| L15 | 0 | transducer$3 same sonar same beam$3 same ("30" adj degree$2) and ("1" adj degree) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:55 |
| L16 | 0 | transducer$3 and sonar same beam$3 same ("30" adj degree$2) and ("1" adj degree) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:55 |
| L17 | 6 | transducer$3 and sonar same beam$3 same ("1" adj degree) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 15:56 |
| L18 | 89 | sonar near3 image$2 near3 display$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:14 |
| L19 | 24 | sonar near3 image$2 near3 display$2 same (plural$3 or multiple$2) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:17 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L20 | 6 | L12 and configuration$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:22 |
| L21 | 1 | L12 and configuration$2 near3 display$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:22 |
| L22 | 2 | L12 and setting$2 near3 display$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:23 |
| L23 | 0 | sonar near3 setting$2 near3 display$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:23 |
| L24 | 18 | sonar same setting$2 near3 display$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:23 |
| L25 | 8 | sonar same transducer$2 same ("3" adj mm) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:25 |
| L26 | 104 | sonar same transducer$2 and ("2" adj mm) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:27 |
| L27 | 1607 | sonar same transducer$2 and width | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:29 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L28 | 59 | sonar same transducer$2 near4 width | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:29 |
| L29 | 104 | sonar same transducer$2 near4 length$2 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:35 |
| L30 | 4 | sonar same transducer$2 near4 length$2 same mm | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 16:35 |
| L31 | 2123 | ("800" adj khz) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 18:03 |
| L32 | 48 | ("800" adj khz) near3 (acoustic$2 or sonar or ultraso$3) | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 18:03 |
| L33 | 406 | 367/88.ccls. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 18:08 |
| L34 | 2727 | maguire.in. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 18:08 |
| L35 | 17 | (brian near2 maguire).in. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 18:08 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L36 | 2 | (brian near2 maguire).in. and "367".clas. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/13 18:08 |
| S1 | 2 | "20110013485".pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/07/21 17:36 |
| S2 | 9 | ("3618006" \| "4879697" \| "5184330" \| "5694372"). PN. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/07/21 17:38 |
| S3 | 5283 | @pd="19980416" | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/07/21 17:39 |
| S4 | 108 | ("6118733" "20110013485" "20110013484" "4287578" "6130641" "5412618" "5515337" "4958330" "5537366" "4288764" "5022015" "5237542" "5287330" "5327397" "5703906" "5323362" "4253166" "20080002526" "5504716" "5764595" "4815045" "5182732" "20090031940" "4525816" "5484969" "4287580" "4445186" "4509153" "4596007" "4779239" "4845687" "4958331" "4964106" "4965776" "5033032" "5187690" "5220537" "5223846" "5383457" "5440155" "5512907" "5549111" "5598206" "5673236" "5719823" "5729171" "5865748" "5926439" "5986972" "6111820").pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/12 18:17 |

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| S5 | 134 | ("5173882" "20110013485" "5220537" "7833158" "20060181457" "4845687" "7047132" "4274148" "4305141" "4571711" "4641290" "4833360" "4864179" "4987563" "5530678" "5642329" "6050361" "6097671" "6285628" "6341661" "20030227825" "20080291121" "3800273" "3806862" "4232380" "6052334" "6700834" "6950372" "20020018400" "20040037166" "20110013484" "3582872" "3618006" "3784805" "3859622" "3864666" "4030062" "4119940" "4190818" "4199746" "4244026" "4433396" "4460987" "4463454" "4596007" "4631710" "4638467" "4725988" "4831602" "4878207").pn. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/12 18:18 |
| S6 | 26 | ("20040184351" \| "20050043619" \| "20050099887" \| "20070025183" \| "20070091723" \| "5200931" \| "5245587" \| "5455806" \| "5561641" \| "6084827" \| "6421299" \| "6449215" \| "7542376"). PN. | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/12 18:23 |
| S7 | 0 | (S4 or S5) and S6 | US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR; FPRS; EPO; JPO; DERWENT; IBM_TDB | OR | OFF | 2011/09/12 18:24 |

**9/ 13/ 2011 7:03:56 PM**
**H:\ 12-400\ 12460139a.wsp**

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

# BIB DATA SHEET

**CONFIRMATION NO. 9769**

| SERIAL NUMBER | FILING or 371(c) DATE | CLASS | GROUP ART UNIT | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009<br>**RULE** | 367 | 3662 | 038495/369324 |

**APPLICANTS**
Brian T. Maguire, Broken Arrow, OK;

** **CONTINUING DATA** *************************

** **FOREIGN APPLICATIONS** *************************

** **IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED** **
07/28/2009

| Foreign Priority claimed ❑ Yes ☑ No<br>35 USC 119(a-d) conditions met ❑ Yes ☑ No<br>Verified and Acknowledged /JAMES R HULKA/ Examiner's Signature | ❑ Met after Allowance<br>Initials | STATE OR COUNTRY | SHEETS DRAWINGS | TOTAL CLAIMS | INDEPENDENT CLAIMS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | OK | 23 | 99 | 4 |

**ADDRESS**

ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000
UNITED STATES

**TITLE**

Downscan imaging sonar

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **FILING FEE RECEIVED**<br>5548 | FEES: Authority has been given in Paper No.____________ to charge/credit DEPOSIT ACCOUNT No.____________ for following: | ❑ All Fees<br>❑ 1.16 Fees (Filing)<br>❑ 1.17 Fees (Processing Ext. of time)<br>❑ 1.18 Fees (Issue)<br>❑ Other ________________<br>❑ Credit |

Attorney's Docket No. 038495/369324

PATENT

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| In re: | Maguire | Confirmation No.: | 9769 |
| Appl. No.: | 12/460,139 | Group Art Unit: | 3662 |
| Filed: | 07/14/2009 | Examiner: | James R. Hulka |
| For: | DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR | | |

Mail Stop Amendment
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

## RESPONSE TO RESTRICTION REQUIREMENT

This is in response to the Office Action dated July 28, 2011, in which the Examiner has required restriction between Species I and Species II. Species I is described in Claims 1-56, drawn to a plurality of rectangular transducers, and a sonar system including the plurality of rectangular transducers. Species II is described in Claims 57-99, drawn to a linear transducer array, and a sonar system including the linear transducer array. Applicant hereby elects to prosecute the claims of **Species II** (**Claims 57-99**) and expressly reserves the right to file divisional applications or take such other appropriate measures deemed necessary to protect the inventions in the remaining claims.

It is not believed that extensions of time or fees for net addition of claims are required, beyond those, which may otherwise be provided for in documents accompanying this paper. However, in the event that additional extensions of time are necessary to allow consideration of this paper, such extensions are hereby petitioned under 37 CFR § 1.136(a), and any fee required therefor (including fees for net addition of claims) is hereby authorized to be charged to Deposit Account No. 16-0605.

Respectfully submitted,

Donald M. Hill, Jr.
Registration No. 40,646

**Customer No. 00826**
**ALSTON & BIRD LLP**
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000

ELECTRONICALLY FILED USING THE EFS-WEB ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE ON AUGUST 29, 2011.

# Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

| | |
|---|---|
| **EFS ID:** | 10835514 |
| **Application Number:** | 12460139 |
| **International Application Number:** | |
| **Confirmation Number:** | 9769 |
| **Title of Invention:** | Downscan imaging sonar |
| **First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:** | Brian T. Maguire |
| **Customer Number:** | 00826 |
| **Filer:** | John Elmus Johnson/Jan Moore |
| **Filer Authorized By:** | John Elmus Johnson |
| **Attorney Docket Number:** | 038495/369324 |
| **Receipt Date:** | 29-AUG-2011 |
| **Filing Date:** | 14-JUL-2009 |
| **Time Stamp:** | 16:20:43 |
| **Application Type:** | Utility under 35 USC 111(a) |

## Payment information:

| | |
|---|---|
| Submitted with Payment | no |

## File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Response to Election / Restriction Filed | 369324_Election.pdf | 58004<br>d354f804b49ffe11b03b06bb78b9c0dbd3b0c760 | no | 1 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Total Files Size (in bytes):** | 58004 |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**
**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**
**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**
**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NO. | FILING DATE | FIRST NAMED INVENTOR | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. | CONFIRMATION NO. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | Brian T. Maguire | 038495/369324 | 9769 |

826 7590 07/28/2011

ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

| EXAMINER | |
|---|---|
| HULKA, JAMES R | |

| ART UNIT | PAPER NUMBER |
|---|---|
| 3662 | |

| MAIL DATE | DELIVERY MODE |
|---|---|
| 07/28/2011 | PAPER |

**Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.**

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.



PTOL-90A (Rev. 04/07)

| Office Action Summary | Application No. | Applicant(s) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 12/460,139 | MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. | |
| | **Examiner** | **Art Unit** | |
| | JAMES HULKA | 3662 | |

***-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --***

**Period for Reply**

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE *1* MONTH(S) OR THIRTY (30) DAYS, WHICHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.

- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

**Status**

1)☒ Responsive to communication(s) filed on *14 July 2009*.

2a)☐ This action is **FINAL**. 2b)☒ This action is non-final.

3)☐ Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

**Disposition of Claims**

4)☒ Claim(s) *1-99* is/are pending in the application.

4a) Of the above claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.

5)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.

6)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are rejected.

7)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.

8)☒ Claim(s) *1-99* are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

**Application Papers**

9)☐ The specification is objected to by the Examiner.

10)☐ The drawing(s) filed on _____ is/are: a)☐ accepted or b)☐ objected to by the Examiner.

Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).

Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).

11)☐ The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner. Note the attached Office Action or form PTO-152.

**Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119**

12)☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).

a)☐ All b)☐ Some * c)☐ None of:

1.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.

2.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.

3.☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

* See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

**Attachment(s)**

1) ☐ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
2) ☐ Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)
3) ☐ Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO/SB/08) Paper No(s)/Mail Date _____.
4) ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413) Paper No(s)/Mail Date. _____ .
5) ☐ Notice of Informal Patent Application
6) ☐ Other: _____.

## DETAILED ACTION

### ***Election/Restrictions***

1. **This application contains claims directed to the following patentably distinct Species I and II.** *The species are independent or distinct because Species II includes a linear transducer array (Fig. 14) and has a different functionality than Species I which uses a plurality of planar arrays.* Linear and planar arrays use different mathematical equations in determining directivity of objects detected, require different costs, and potentially different levels of accuracy or efficiency. In addition, these species are not obvious variants of each other based on the current record. **Species I is described in Claims 1-56**, drawn to a plurality of rectangular transducers, and a sonar system including and using the plurality of rectangular transducers, classified in class 367, subclasses 153 and 88.**. Species II is described in Claims 57-99**, drawn to a linear transducer array, and a sonar system using and including the linear transducer array, classified in class 367, subclasses 154 and 87.

Applicant is required under 35 U.S.C. 121 to ***elect a single disclosed species***, ***or a single grouping of patentably indistinct species***, for prosecution on the merits to which the claims shall be restricted if no generic claim is finally held to be allowable. Currently, a sonar system comprising one or more transducer arrays are generic.

There is a search and/or examination burden for the patentably distinct species as set forth above because at least the following reason(s) apply:

**The application as written describes inventions that require searches in 4 different subclasses.**

**Applicant is advised that the reply to this requirement to be complete must include (i) an election of a species or a grouping of patentably indistinct species to be examined** even though the requirement may be traversed (37 CFR 1.143) **and (ii) identification of the claims encompassing the elected species or grouping of patentably indistinct species**, including any claims subsequently added. An argument that a claim is allowable or that all claims are generic is considered nonresponsive unless accompanied by an election.

The election may be made with or without traverse. To preserve a right to petition, the election must be made with traverse. If the reply does not distinctly and specifically point out supposed errors in the election of species requirement, the election shall be treated as an election without traverse. Traversal must be presented at the time of election in order to be considered timely. Failure to timely traverse the requirement will result in the loss of right to petition under 37 CFR 1.144. If claims are added after the election, applicant must indicate which of these claims are readable on the elected species or grouping of patentably indistinct species.

Should applicant traverse on the ground that the species, or groupings of patentably indistinct species from which election is required, are not patentably distinct, applicant should submit evidence or identify such evidence now of record showing them to be obvious variants or clearly admit on the record that this is the case. In either instance, if the examiner finds one of the species unpatentable over the prior art, the evidence or admission may be used in a rejection under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) of the other species.

Upon the allowance of a generic claim, applicant will be entitled to consideration of claims to additional species which depend from or otherwise require all the limitations of an allowable generic claim as provided by 37 CFR 1.141.

### *Conclusion*

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to JAMES HULKA whose telephone number is (571)270-7553. The examiner can normally be reached on Monday thru Thursday 7:30am-5pm, Every 2nd Friday, 7:30am - 4pm.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Thomas Tarcza can be reached on 571-272-6979. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pair-direct.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

/J. H./
Examiner, Art Unit 3662

/Thomas H. Tarcza/

Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3662

| *Index of Claims* | Application/Control No.<br>12460139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination<br>MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | Examiner<br>JAMES HULKA | Art Unit<br>3662 |

| ✓ | Rejected | - | Cancelled | N | Non-Elected | A | Appeal |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | Allowed | ÷ | Restricted | I | Interference | O | Objected |

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 2 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 4 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 6 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 7 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 8 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 9 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 10 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 11 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 12 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 13 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 14 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 15 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 16 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 17 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 18 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 19 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 20 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 21 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 22 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 23 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 24 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 25 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 26 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 27 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 28 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 29 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 30 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 31 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 32 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 33 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 34 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 35 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 36 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |

| *Index of Claims* | Application/Control No.<br>12460139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination<br>MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | Examiner<br>JAMES HULKA | Art Unit<br>3662 |

| ✓ | Rejected | - | Cancelled | N | Non-Elected | A | Appeal |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | Allowed | ÷ | Restricted | I | Interference | O | Objected |

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | | | | | | | | |
| | 37 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 38 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 39 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 40 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 41 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 42 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 43 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 44 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 45 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 46 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 47 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 48 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 49 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 50 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 51 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 52 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 53 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 54 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 55 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 56 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 57 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 58 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 59 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 60 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 61 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 62 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 63 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 64 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 65 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 66 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 67 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 68 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 69 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 70 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 71 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 72 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |

| *Index of Claims* | Application/Control No.<br>12460139 | Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination<br>MAGUIRE, BRIAN T. |
|---|---|---|
| | Examiner<br>JAMES HULKA | Art Unit<br>3662 |

| ✓ | Rejected | - | Cancelled | N | Non-Elected | A | Appeal |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| = | Allowed | ÷ | Restricted | I | Interference | O | Objected |

☐ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☐ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

| CLAIM | | DATE | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Final | Original | 07/26/2011 | | | | | | | | |
| | 73 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 74 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 75 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 76 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 77 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 78 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 79 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 80 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 81 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 82 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 83 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 84 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 85 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 86 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 87 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 88 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 89 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 90 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 91 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 92 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 93 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 94 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 95 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 96 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 97 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 98 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |
| | 99 | ÷ | | | | | | | | |

PLUS Search Results for S/N 12460139, Searched Fri Jul 22 08:50:33 EDT 2011
The Patent Linguistics Utility System (PLUS) is a USPTO automated search system for U.S. Patents from 1971 to the present PLUS is a query-by-example search system which produces a list of patents that are most closely related linguistically to the application searched. This search was prepared by the staff of the Scientific and Technical Information Center, SIRA.

20110013485 92
20110013484 86
4287578 68
6130641 64
5412618 64
5515337 64
4958330 62
5537366 62
4288764 62
5022015 62
5237542 62
5287330 62
5327397 62
5703906 62
5323362 61
4253166 60
20080002526 60
5504716 59
5764595 59
4815045 58
5182732 58
20090031940 58
4525816 56
5484969 56
4287580 56
4445186 56
4509153 56
4596007 56
4779239 56
4845687 56
4958331 56
4964106 56
4965776 56
5033032 56
5187690 56
5220537 56
5223846 56
5383457 56
5440155 56
5512907 56
5549111 56
5598206 56
5673236 56
5719823 56
5729171 56
5865748 56
5926439 56
5986972 56
6111820 56
6118733 56

PLUS Search Results for S/N 12460139, Searched Fri Jul 22 08:50:31 EDT 2011
The Patent Linguistics Utility System (PLUS) is a USPTO automated search system for U.S. Patents from 1971 to the present PLUS is a query-by-example search system which produces a list of patents that are most closely related linguistically to the application searched. This search was prepared by the staff of the Scientific and Technical Information Center, SIRA.

20110013485 99
5220537 86
7833158 86
20060181457 86
4845687 85
7047132 82
4274148 82
4305141 82
4571711 82
4641290 82
4833360 82
4864179 82
4987563 82
5530678 82
5642329 82
6050361 82
6097671 82
6285628 82
6341661 82
20030227825 82
20080291121 82
3800273 78
3806862 78
4232380 78
6052334 78
6700834 78
6950372 78
20020018400 78
20040037166 78
20110013484 78
3582872 76
3618006 76
3784805 76
3859622 76
3864666 76
4030062 76
4119940 76
4190818 76
4199746 76
4244026 76
4433396 76
4460987 76
4463454 76
4596007 76
4631710 76
4638467 76
4725988 76
4831602 76
4878207 76
5173882 76

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NO. | FILING DATE | FIRST NAMED INVENTOR | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. | CONFIRMATION NO. |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | Brian T. Maguire | 038495/369324 | 9769 |

826 7590 05/10/2011
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

| EXAMINER | |
|---|---|
| LOBO, IAN J | |

| ART UNIT | PAPER NUMBER |
|---|---|
| 3662 | |

| MAIL DATE | DELIVERY MODE |
|---|---|
| 05/10/2011 | PAPER |

**Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.**

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.



PTOL-90A (Rev. 04/07)

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Commissioner for Patents
United States Patent and Trademark Office
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

MAY 10 2011

In re Application of :
Brian T. Maguire :
SERIAL NO.: 12/460,139 :
FILED: July 14, 2009 :
FOR: DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR

DECISION ON PETITION

This is a decision on the request filed July 14, 2009 to waive the requirements of 37 CFR 1.84(a) so as to permit the application to include a color drawing. Applicant has shown that the use of color is an essential element in the representation of the drawing.

Petition Granted.

Thomas H. Tarcza
SPE, Art Unit 3662
571-272-6979

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NUMBER | FILING OR 371(C) DATE | FIRST NAMED APPLICANT | ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | Brian T. Maguire | 038495/369324 |

**CONFIRMATION NO. 9769**

**PUBLICATION NOTICE**

*OC000000045563363*

826
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

**Title:**Downscan imaging sonar

**Publication No.**US-2011-0013485-A1
**Publication Date:**01/20/2011

## NOTICE OF PUBLICATION OF APPLICATION

The above-identified application will be electronically published as a patent application publication pursuant to 37 CFR 1.211, et seq. The patent application publication number and publication date are set forth above.

The publication may be accessed through the USPTO's publically available Searchable Databases via the Internet at www.uspto.gov. The direct link to access the publication is currently http://www.uspto.gov/patft/.

The publication process established by the Office does not provide for mailing a copy of the publication to applicant. A copy of the publication may be obtained from the Office upon payment of the appropriate fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.19(a)(1). Orders for copies of patent application publications are handled by the USPTO's Office of Public Records. The Office of Public Records can be reached by telephone at (703) 308-9726 or (800) 972-6382, by facsimile at (703) 305-8759, by mail addressed to the United States Patent and Trademark Office, Office of Public Records, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450 or via the Internet.

In addition, information on the status of the application, including the mailing date of Office actions and the dates of receipt of correspondence filed in the Office, may also be accessed via the Internet through the Patent Electronic Business Center at www.uspto.gov using the public side of the Patent Application Information and Retrieval (PAIR) system. The direct link to access this status information is currently http://pair.uspto.gov/. Prior to publication, such status information is confidential and may only be obtained by applicant using the private side of PAIR.

Further assistance in electronically accessing the publication, or about PAIR, is available by calling the Patent Electronic Business Center at 1-866-217-9197.

---

Office of Data Managment, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

| Substitute for form 1449/PTO (Revised 07/2007) | | | | Complete if Known | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Application Number | 12/460,139 |
| | | | | Filing Date | July 14, 2009 |
| **INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT** | | | | First Named Inventor | Brian T. Maguire |
| *(Use as many sheets as necessary)* | | | | Art Unit | 3662 |
| | | | | Examiner Name | Not Yet Assigned |
| Sheet | 1 | of | 1 | Attorney Docket Number | 038495/369324 |

## U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Document Number<br>Number - Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages of Relevant Figures Appear |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | US-3,618,006 | 11-02-1971 | The Boeing Company | |
| | 2 | US-4,879,697 | 11-07-1989 | Lowrance, et al. | |
| | 3 | US-5,184,330 | 02-02-1993 | Adams, et al. | |
| | 4 | US-5,694,372 | 12-02-1997 | Perennes | |
| | | US- | | | |
| | | US- | | | |
| | | US- | | | |
| | | US- | | | |

## FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials | Cite No. | Foreign Patent Document<br>Country Code - Number Kind Code (if known) | Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY | Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 5 | WO 98/15846 | 04-16-1998 | Rowe-Deines Instruments, Incorporated | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

## OTHER DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No. | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc.), date, page(s) , volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | English Language Translation Attached |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 6 | International Search Report and Written Opinion mailed October 6, 2010, for International Application No. PCT/US2010/039443 | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

| Examiner Signature | | Date Considered | |
|---|---|---|---|

*Examiner: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

**Submitted: October 28, 2010**

**PCT** WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

| (51) International Patent Classification 6 : G01S 15/60, 15/89 | A1 | (11) International Publication Number: WO 98/15846<br>(43) International Publication Date: 16 April 1998 (16.04.98) |
|---|---|---|

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/18061

(22) International Filing Date: 7 October 1997 (07.10.97)

(30) Priority Data:
08/726,644 7 October 1996 (07.10.96) US

(71) Applicant: ROWE-DEINES INSTRUMENTS, INCORPORATED [US/US]; 9855 Businesspark Avenue, San Diego, CA 92131 (US).

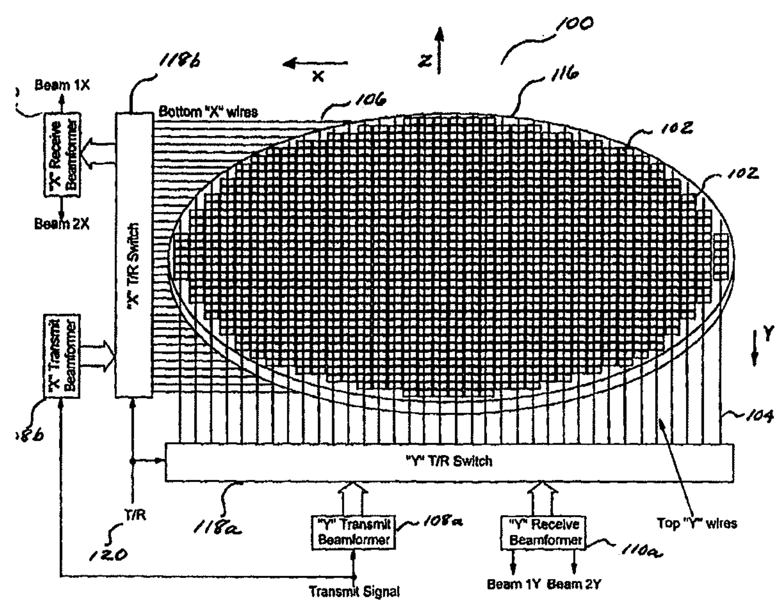
(72) Inventors: YU, Xiaolong; 10631 Calston Way, San Diego, CA 92126 (US). BRADLEY, Steven, E.; 5096 Corte Playa Catalina, San Diego, CA 92124 (US). ROWE, Francis, D.; 5723 Lodi Street, San Diego, CA 92117 (US).

(74) Agent: SIMPSON, Andrew, H.; Knobbe, Martens, Olson and Bear, 16th floor, 620 Newport Center Drive, Newport Beach, CA 92660 (US).

(81) Designated States: JP, NO, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).

**Published**
*With international search report.*

(54) Title: TWO-DIMENSIONAL ARRAY TRANSDUCER AND BEAMFORMER




(57) Abstract

An acoustic array transducer capable of forming narrow dispersion, broadband or narrowband acoustic beam sets in two dimensions with a minimum aperture size. Concurrent yet independent electrical interfacing with array transducer elements allows simultaneous formation of multiple transmit and receive beams inclined within two planar orientations normal to the array face, while requiring a minimum amount of supporting circuitry. A method of economically and accurately fabricating the aforementioned transducer array by incrementally dicing bonded layers of solid discs of transducer materials being rigidly held together is also disclosed.

*FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY*

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **AL** | Albania | **ES** | Spain | **LS** | Lesotho | **SI** | Slovenia |
| **AM** | Armenia | **FI** | Finland | **LT** | Lithuania | **SK** | Slovakia |
| **AT** | Austria | **FR** | France | **LU** | Luxembourg | **SN** | Senegal |
| **AU** | Australia | **GA** | Gabon | **LV** | Latvia | **SZ** | Swaziland |
| **AZ** | Azerbaijan | **GB** | United Kingdom | **MC** | Monaco | **TD** | Chad |
| **BA** | Bosnia and Herzegovina | **GE** | Georgia | **MD** | Republic of Moldova | **TG** | Togo |
| **BB** | Barbados | **GH** | Ghana | **MG** | Madagascar | **TJ** | Tajikistan |
| **BE** | Belgium | **GN** | Guinea | **MK** | The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia | **TM** | Turkmenistan |
| **BF** | Burkina Faso | **GR** | Greece | | | **TR** | Turkey |
| **BG** | Bulgaria | **HU** | Hungary | **ML** | Mali | **TT** | Trinidad and Tobago |
| **BJ** | Benin | **IE** | Ireland | **MN** | Mongolia | **UA** | Ukraine |
| **BR** | Brazil | **IL** | Israel | **MR** | Mauritania | **UG** | Uganda |
| **BY** | Belarus | **IS** | Iceland | **MW** | Malawi | **US** | United States of America |
| **CA** | Canada | **IT** | Italy | **MX** | Mexico | **UZ** | Uzbekistan |
| **CF** | Central African Republic | **JP** | Japan | **NE** | Niger | **VN** | Viet Nam |
| **CG** | Congo | **KE** | Kenya | **NL** | Netherlands | **YU** | Yugoslavia |
| **CH** | Switzerland | **KG** | Kyrgyzstan | **NO** | Norway | **ZW** | Zimbabwe |
| **CI** | Côte d'Ivoire | **KP** | Democratic People's Republic of Korea | **NZ** | New Zealand | | |
| **CM** | Cameroon | | | **PL** | Poland | | |
| **CN** | China | **KR** | Republic of Korea | **PT** | Portugal | | |
| **CU** | Cuba | **KZ** | Kazakstan | **RO** | Romania | | |
| **CZ** | Czech Republic | **LC** | Saint Lucia | **RU** | Russian Federation | | |
| **DE** | Germany | **LI** | Liechtenstein | **SD** | Sudan | | |
| **DK** | Denmark | **LK** | Sri Lanka | **SE** | Sweden | | |
| **EE** | Estonia | **LR** | Liberia | **SG** | Singapore | | |

# TWO-DIMENSIONAL ARRAY TRANSDUCER AND BEAMFORMER

## Background of the Invention

### 1. Field of the Invention

The present invention relates to a planar array sonar transducer which simultaneously forms multiple, narrow dispersion acoustic beam sets in two planar dimensions normal to the array face.

### 2. Description of Related Technology

Transducers which simultaneously generate multiple narrow acoustic beams inclined outward in two axes from a plane are currently used in different types of acoustic backscatter systems that measure velocity and/or distance in two or three dimensions. Examples include Acoustic Doppler Velocity Sensors (ADVS) which employ a simple set of four beams in a "Janus" configuration for two or three axis velocity measurement, sonars which measure distance to target in the water (such as forward scanning sonars), and bottom mapping sonars.

ADVS's are widely used for measurement of vertical profiles of water current measurements and for earth and/or water referenced velocity measurement for vessel navigation. They measure 3-axis velocities by measuring velocity along lines of position defined by narrow acoustic beams. A minimum of three beams oriented at different directions are required to measure the three orthogonal velocity components. Typically four narrow (1-4°) conical transmit/receive beams are employed positioned in two axes of a plane surface and inclined relative to the normal to that plane. This configuration, well known in the acoustic arts, is referred to as a Janus configuration; the two sets of narrow conical beams are symmetrically inclined outward and positioned at four 90° circumferential increments on the surface of a larger (typically 60°) outward opening cone. Currently available transducer technology used to produce this four beam configuration include assemblies of 4-piston transducers or a pair of one-dimensional phased array transducers (i.e., arrays in which acoustic beams are formed in one plane only).

Conventional 4-piston transducer assemblies consist of four independent circular piston-type transducers, each producing a single narrowly dispersed conical transmit/receive beam directed normal to the piston face. As shown in Fig. 1, the four transducers are physically positioned in a rigid assembly to achieve the required Janus beam configuration. For conventional narrowband ADVS applications, each of these transducers requires an effective transmit and receive bandwidth of approximately 2% of the nominal acoustic carrier frequency. Typical carrier frequencies range from 100 kHz to 5 MHz. Each piston transducer is typically fabricated from either a single solid disc of ceramic material or from a flat array of small ceramic elements. Modern broadband ADVS's operate with fractional bandwidths on the order of 50%. They are also fabricated from solid ceramic discs or flat arrays, but have one or more additional impedance matching layers bonded to the face to achieve the required bandwidth. U.S. Patent No. 5,343,443, "Broadband Acoustic Transducer", discloses such a system. The primary advantage of this 4-piston method is simplicity of the transducer construction and operation. Each piston transducer is driven by a separate signal, and no beamformer circuitry is required.

Single beam transducers such as those previously described may also be beamforming arrays. These arrays generally have all of the transducer elements electrically connected in parallel. Beam angle alignment is achieved primarily by virtue of proper positioning of the piston. Disadvantages associated with such arrays include 1) the requirement for a large, heavy mechanical structure to support the transducers; 2) the shape of its face, whether concave or convex, does not lend itself to a smooth hydrodynamic form unless a thick, acoustically transparent material with a flat face is attached to the front portion of the assembly; 3) a large aperture is required to form the beams; and 4) accurate measurement of velocity requires that the speed of sound at the transducer face be known.

An improved transducer physical configuration for producing the four Janus configuration beams in 2 axes for ADVS applications is to use a pair of one-dimensional phased array transducers. As shown in Fig. 2, a single one-dimensional planar array produces two conical beams inclined relative to the direction perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the array (see U.S. Patent No. 4,641,291, "Phased Array Doppler Sonar Transducer"). To produce the four ADVS beams, two adjacently positioned arrays are used, with one rotated 90° relative to the other about the aforementioned perpendicular direction. Since each one-dimensional array utilizes a single aperture, which is only slightly larger than a single beam piston, to produce two beams, a factor of approximately two improvement in aperture spatial efficiency is realized relative to the multiple piston approach.

One-dimensional phased arrays are typically constructed with parallel line arrays separated by a half wavelength of the carrier frequency. Each line array may be constructed using a number of small square or circular ceramic elements wired in parallel on both faces, or from a singular, elongated rectangular element. Alternate line arrays are wired together electrically in parallel to provide the necessary beamforming functions. One such wiring arrangement involves electrically connecting each fourth line array in parallel. Both circular and rectangular array geometries are used. To produce a beam dispersion of 4° required for a typical ADVS, an aperture of about 16 wavelengths (32 elements spaced at 1/2 wavelengths) in diameter is required. For typical ADVS operating frequencies in the range of 100 kHz to 5 MHz (single piece commercially available line elements normally operate in this region), an array of 32 parallel long elements is preferred over a 32 X 32 diced array (i.e., one which is cut or diced from a single solid element) due to production assembly cost advantages.

When the array is operating in the "receive" mode (i.e., receiving incoming signals), a simple phase shift beamformer is used to phase shift the signals received by the two arrays (assuming the configuration previously described) by $\pm 90°$ to compensate for the time delay produced by acoustic propagation over the half wavelength path length in the medium between alternate line arrays. A phase shift is an approximation to time delay which is valid only for narrow fractional bandwidth signals. For narrowband signals, the summation process forms two receive beams inclined to the flat array plane surface. When operating in the "transmit" mode, the two arrays are driven by narrowband signals with appropriate relative phase shifts to form the four (two per array) simultaneously transmitted beams.

When these phased arrays are driven by wideband signals, the different frequencies contained in the signals are dispersed from the transducers in different angular directions, effectively broadening the beams. The phased array technique forms narrow beams only when signal bandwidths are less than about 3%. This is adequate for narrowband ADVS applications, but falls short of the bandwidth associated with modern broadband ADVS systems by a factor of roughly between 8 and 16 (see, for example, U.S. Patent No. 5,483,499, "Broadband Acoustic Doppler Current Profiler").

An improvement in bandwidth/dispersion performance can be obtained for the pair of one-dimensional phased array transducers previously described by replacing the simple 90° phase shifting beamformer network (in both transmit and receive modes) with a more complex time-delay network. Use of the time delay decouples frequency from the relative angle of incidence of the received/transmitted wave, thereby reducing angular beam spreading in large bandwidth applications. With this time-delay array method, each of the individual line array signals are time delayed and summed together to form a composite signal which is independent of the angle of incidence. The primary drawback associated with this technique is the more complex transmit and receive beamformer.

An added performance benefit of the phased and time-delay array approach is that, for the ADVS application, the velocity components parallel to the array face are inherently self-correcting for changes in the speed of sound through the medium. As the speed of sound varies, differential path lengths and the corresponding time delays associated with various array transducers will vary accordingly. Self-correction results from the fact that the beam angle varies with the speed of sound in such a way as to directly compensate for errors in computing the velocity component parallel to the transducer face (usually horizontal). This minimizes, but does not completely eliminate, the need to measure sound velocity at the transducer face for high accuracy navigation.

Thus, relative to 4-piston assemblies, one-dimensional phased arrays provide improved spatial efficiency for fixed beam characteristics, have a flat face for better hydrodynamic performance, and have improved velocity resolution in media with varying sound propagation velocities, yet do not adequately support broadband ADVS operation. One-dimensional time-delay arrays have the added benefit of supporting broadband ADVS operation as well.

One-dimensional phased and time-delay array techniques are also commonly used for bottom mapping and forward scanning applications to form more than two beams within a single plane of the array face. For these applications, multiple phase and/or time-delay beamformers are coupled to a single one-dimensional array, each beamformer having different phase/time-delays to simultaneously form multiple beams at different angles of inclination relative to the array face, but all within a single planar orientation perpendicular to the array face. If measurement in a second planar orientation is required, two adjacent one-dimensional phase or time-delay arrays are used, with one physically rotated 90° from the other as previously described.

For each of the above mentioned techniques of forming multiple acoustic beams inclined within two planes perpendicular to the array face plane, an aperture of at least twice the size of that required to form any single narrow beam is necessary. It is possible to form two or more conical beams within two planes perpendicular to the array face if the proper signal can be provided to each element of the array. The formation of four beams in two perpendicular planes from a single planar array is depicted in Fig. 3. It is well understood in the art that such planar arrays can form beams centered around arbitrary angles relative to the array face if appropriate phase shifts are introduced between individual transducer elements; this concept has been in use for many years in radar antenna arrays and to a lesser extent in sonar transducer arrays. It is also well understood that beam forming for wide bandwidth applications requires true time delays between elements to compensate for the time delays produced by propagation over different path lengths in the medium associated with different elements.

A substantial reduction in the size, weight, and cost of the ADVS transducer assembly could be achieved if four inclined beams oriented in two planes perpendicular to the array face could be formed from a single planar array of transducer elements, using the full available aperture to form all beams, as shown in Fig. 3. To accomplish this, a 32 x 32 array of about 800 elements is required, with the array elements precisely aligned at 1/2 wavelength increments in both plane face dimensions, i.e., with respect to the X-Y coordinate system of Fig. 2. Assembly of this precision array from 800 individual elements is relatively complex. Complex phase and/or time-delay circuitry is also required to support beamforming in two dimensions for this large number of elements. Using existing array technology, a separate power amplifier and phase and/or time-delay circuit would generally be required for each individual element of the array. These array fabrication and beamformer complexity factors make the use of a two dimensional planar array an economically impractical solution for nearly all applications.

Hence, it would be highly desirable to provide an improved planar array which could produce narrow dispersion beam sets in two dimensions relative to the array face within a substantially reduced aperture, and which would utilize simplified phase and/or time-delay beamforming circuitry to support the large number of individual transducer elements inherent in such arrays. Furthermore, it would be highly desirable to provide an efficient and cost-effective method of fabricating the aforementioned array to make its manufacture and use economically practical.

## Summary of the Invention

The present invention satisfies the aforementioned needs by providing an improved system and method of forming a multi-planar narrowband or broadband beam set inclined relative to a transducer array face, with reduced aperture area. A cost effective and simplified method for manufacturing the transducer array is also disclosed.

In a first aspect of the invention, each 2-axis beam set formed from the single 2-axis planar array of transducer elements uses all of the elements in the array and the full available aperture to form each of the beams. From an aperture spatial efficiency viewpoint, this is an optimal approach to forming multiple narrow 2-axis beams, because each beam can be made as narrow as allowed by the available aperture area. The overall aperture area will be minimized for a given beamwidth of each of the multiple 2-axis beams. Relative to the previously described 4-piston approach, the aperture diameter is reduced by a factor of 2.5, (a factor of 6 for the area), the transducer face is substantially more hydrodynamic (thereby reducing flow resistance, noise, and potential inaccuracies resulting from air coalescing near the aperture), and the transducer assembly volume is reduced by a factor of roughly 10. Relative to the previously described dual 1-dimensional array approach, the aperture area is reduced by a factor of two.

In a second aspect of the invention, the multi-planar (2 axis) array disclosed herein utilizes a greatly reduced number of phase or time-delay beamforming circuits relative to the number of elements in the array. The capability to produce multiple narrow beams in two axes from a single planar array is achieved by a method of electrically interfacing independently with the two sides of the array permitting independent and simultaneous formation of multiple inclined transmit and receive beams in two dimensions of the array plane. This is accomplished by electrically connecting together the backside rows and frontside columns of the array, connecting the backside and frontside parallel sets to beamformer networks which have a low electrical impedance (relative to the impedance of the rows and columns) in both the transmit and receive mode of operation, and processing the transmit/receive signals to/from the two array sides to simultaneously and independently form multiple inclined transmit/receive beams in two dimensions of the array plane. The two directions are normally but not necessarily orthogonal to each other.

In another aspect of the invention, a cost effective method of fabricating the planar array of approximately 800 precisely aligned elements is disclosed. While, as previously described, prior art one-dimensional multibeam arrays may be fabricated from an array of on the order of 32 long rectangular transducer elements of about 1/2 wavelength in width, the preferred embodiment of the present invention requires the use of array elements which have dimensions of approximately 1/2 wavelength of carrier frequency in both face dimensions. Furthermore to achieve the necessary bandwidth for broadband applications, each element must be constructed of several layers of different materials which must be bonded together. Hence, an array of roughly 800 multi-layered elements (32 x 32) is required to be precisely assembled in a cost effective manner to make the aforementioned design economically feasible. To accomplish this, an improved method of fabricating this complex array is disclosed in which several cylindrical discs (each having a diameter equal to that of the final array) are sequentially bonded together and partially sliced with a parallel diamond blade saw at various stages of the process such that at all stages of fabrication, the sliced elements are rigidly held together by a solid layer. When completed, the array is internally diced into the desired form with the required precision, and held in shape by the combination of a mechanically rigid and acoustically transparent front facing and a solid backing disc.

The aforementioned simplified design and fabrication techniques make it economically practical to produce cost effective commercial products with the form and performance advantages of the 2-dimensional flat array. The present invention provides significantly improved performance for typical ADVS (i.e. a four beam 150 kHz transducer with 4° one-way beamwidths) applications. These and other objects and features of the present invention will become more fully apparent from the following description and appended claims taken in conjunction with the following drawings.

## Brief Description of the Drawings

Fig. 1 is a top view of a prior art 4-piston transducer array in Janus configuration.

Fig. 2 is a perspective view of a prior art one-dimensional phased acoustic array, illustrating the formation of two narrow acoustic beams.

Fig. 3 is a perspective view illustrating a typical configuration of four acoustic beams inclined relative to the array normal (i.e., Z-axis) and positioned within two planes perpendicular to the array face plane (i.e., X-Y plane).

Fig. 4 a functional block diagram of the preferred embodiment of the two-dimensional transducer array, including the method of electrical array element interconnection, and the method of array-to-beamformer interconnection to the transmit and receive beamformers.

Fig. 5 is a functional block diagram illustrating the operation of a simplified sixteen element 2-dimensional phased array transducer operating in the receive mode.

Fig. 6 is a functional block diagram illustrating the operation of a simplified sixteen element 2-dimensional phased array transducer operating in the transmit mode.

Fig. 7 is a functional block diagram illustrating the operation of a simplified sixteen element 2-dimensional time-delay transducer operating in the receive mode.

Fig. 8 is a functional block diagram illustrating the operation of a simplified sixteen element 2-dimensional time-delay transducer operating in the transmit mode.

Fig. 9 is a perspective view illustrating the formation of multiple beams in two planes perpendicular to the face of an array using the time-delay technique.

Fig. 10 is a top view of one preferred circular 150 kHz transducer array with 800 individual square faced piezo-electrical ceramic elements closely spaced at a center-to-center distance of 5mm.

Fig. 11 is a perspective view of one preferred embodiment of the transducer assembly with the thickness dimension expanded to illustrate the layered construction thereof.

Fig. 12 is a schematic block diagram of one preferred embodiment of the time-delay receive beamformer used in conjunction with the present invention.

Fig. 13 is a schematic block diagram of one preferred embodiment of the time-delay transmit beamformer used in conjunction with the present invention.

Fig. 14 is a graph of signal amplitude versus beam angle (measured from the Z-axis, normal to the array face) for a 150 kHz nominal 32 x 32 phased array transducer, as viewed in the X-Z or Y-Z planes, illustrating the formation of acoustic one beam.

Fig. 15 is a process diagram illustrating the preferred manufacturing process for fabricating the preferred array transducer of the present invention.

## Detailed Description of the Preferred Embodiment

Reference is now made to the drawings wherein like numerals refer to like parts throughout. The discussion in this section is organized with headings as follows: Functional Description, Hardware Description and Fabrication Description.

### 1. Functional Description:

A block diagram of the preferred embodiment of the two-dimensional transducer array is shown in Fig. 4. A typical planar acoustic transducer array configuration 100 is depicted. Individual Array elements 102 are electrically interconnected along front-side columns 104 and back-side rows 106. Array elements 102 are interconnected to the associated beamformer 108, 110 through 2-axis transmit/receive (T/R) switches 118. The transmit 108 and receive 110 beamformers may be either phase or time-delay beamforming networks. The coordinate system used for the purposes of this description is as shown with the rows 106 oriented in the X axis, columns 104 in the Y axis, and the Z axis normal to the plane face 116.

The array face 116 is circular, but other form factors such as ellipses or polygons which are generally symmetrical in the two face dimensions are also suitable for forming narrow inclined beams of general conical form. The array is composed of a large number of small elements 102 which have symmetrical faces, typically square, circular, or rectangular in form (i.e., their facial crossection). The face width of each element is approximately $0.5\lambda$, where $\lambda$ is the acoustic wavelength in water of the desired center frequency. To form beams with 4° beam width, an array diameter of approximately $16\lambda$ is required, consisting of a 32 X 32 element array of approximately 800 elements. The back side rows 106 (X direction) and front side columns 104 (Y direction) of the array elements are electrically connected together along parallel lines of elements with thin acoustically transparent material, as shown in Fig. 4. The rows and columns are normally but not necessarily orthogonal to each other.

Each of the array X axis rows 106 and Y axis columns 104 are connected to a T/R switch 118 which, as controlled by a T/R logic signal 120, electrically connects the sets of X and Y lines to respective X and Y receive beamformers 110 in the receive mode, and to X and Y transmit beamformers 108 in the transmit mode. When in the transmit mode, the array lines are connected through the T/R switch 118 to the transmit beamformers 108 which provide the electrical transmit drive signals from a low impedance electrical source (relative to the electrical impedance of the line of transducer elements). When in the receive mode, the array lines are connected through the T/R switch to receive beamformers 110 which receive the electrical signals from the transducer lines while providing a low electrical impedance path (relative to the electrical impedance of the line of transducer elements) to signal ground on each X and Y line.

This low electrical source/load impedance on each Y and Y line (low source impedance during transmit and low load impedance during receive) allows simultaneous and independent access to each X row 106 and Y column 104 for application of transmit electrical drive signals and receipt of signals from each X row and Y column. Furthermore, parallel sets of X and Y axis line arrays can be simultaneously and independently formed. X-axis transmit and receive line arrays are formed by the parallel electrical connection along the back side rows 106 and the presence of the low impedance signal ground on all of the front side Y-axis columns 104.

During transmit mode, transmit drive signals are applied through the T/R switch to the parallel X-axis back side electrical interconnection lines from a transmit amplifier which has a low output impedance relative to signal ground. While the X-axis drive signals are being applied to individual X-axis line arrays, the entire Y-axis 32 parallel line array face is maintained as a low impedance path to signal ground (via the signal path through the Y-axis T/R switch 118a to the low impedance Y-axis drivers of the Y beamformer 108a) to ensure that the X-axis drive signal is imposed solely across the X-axis rows, and does not couple to the Y-axis side of the array. Similarly, while the Y-axis drive signals are being applied to Y-axis line arrays, the entire X-axis array face is maintained as a low impedance path to signal ground to allow signals to be independently applied the Y-axis without coupling to the X-axis. Thus, by superposition of both X and Y axis transmit drive signals, the low impedance associated with the transmit beamformer sources permits X- and Y-axis line transmit arrays to be formed simultaneously and independently.

During receive mode, the electrical signal present on each X-axis row 106 (with the front side low impedance path to signal ground) represents the sum of the received electrical signals of all elements in each row. Most conventional sonar receiver amplifiers provide a high impedance load to the receiving transducer. However, for the 2-dimensional array application of the present invention, an amplifier has been developed for use in the receiving beamformer which provides a low impedance load while receiving. This is accomplished by connecting each of the X and Y-axis lines to a virtual ground node (a point having the same potential level as ground but not directly connected to ground) on the receiving preamplifier within the receive beamformers. The signal current flowing into each virtual ground node is the sum of the signal currents from all the ceramic elements in the column or row. When receiving signals from a column, the column signal is independent of the row signals being simultaneously received due to the low impedance load presented by the virtual ground on all rows. Similarly, when receiving signals from row, because of the low impedance load presented by the virtual ground on all columns, this row signal is independent of the column signals being simultaneously received.

This independent and simultaneous X row and Y column electrical access during both transmit and receive modes via the X and Y signal lines allows the array to be used as a 2-dimensional array to simultaneously and independently form multiple inclined acoustic beam set in both the X-Z and Y-Z planes. The beamforming operation in each plane is the same as conventional 1-dimensional phased and/or time-delay arrays. Thus, the 2-dimensional beamforming operation is in general the equivalent of two overlaid 1-dimensional arrays, with one array rotated 90°.

During transmit mode operation, phase or time-delayed signals applied to the X rows form inclined acoustic transmit beams in the Y direction (YZ plane). Simultaneously and independently, phase or time-delayed signals applied to the Y columns to produce inclined acoustic transmit beams in the X direction (XZ plane). During receive mode operation electrical signals received on the X rows are phase or time delayed and combined in the X row receiver beamformer to produce inclined receive acoustic beams in the Y direction. Simultaneously and independently, signals received on the Y columns and combined in the Y side beamformer produce inclined receive acoustic beams in the X direction. Thus, through superposition of the X and Y axis electrical and acoustic signals, 2-dimensional acoustic beam formation from a single planar array in both transmit and receive modes is achieved.

To understand the fundamental principles of operation how these two-dimensional transmit and receive acoustic beams are formed, the operation of sixteen element array subset of the 32 X 32 element two-dimensional array transducer is considered. Operation with both phase (narrowband) and time-delay (narrowband or broadband) beamformers is described herein.

*Phased Array Operation*

Operation of a sixteen-element (4 X 4) subset of the previously described two-dimensional array with a phase-shift beamformer is illustrated in Figs. 5 and 6. During receipt of a long tone burst acoustic signal at a single frequency (narrowband), f, with wavelength, $\lambda$ = c/f, where c is the sound propagation velocity in the fluid media, incoming sound ray wavefronts 200 traveling in the -X direction and at an angle $\theta$ 202 with the Z axis (Z being normal to the array plane, or normal to the plane of the Figure) travel different distances to each of the Y-axis (frontside) column line-arrays 204, and thus strike each of the line arrays at different times, and in general, with different phases. As illustrated in Fig. 5, the path length differences between adjacent line-arrays ($\alpha$) 206 is related to the element center-to-center separation distance (d) by

$$\alpha = d \sin\theta.$$

The wavefront arrival time differences ($\tau$) between adjacent line-arrays is

$$\tau = \alpha/c = (d/c)\sin\theta$$

If the elements are spaced at distances corresponding to a half-wavelength of the arriving narrowband signal ($d = \lambda/2$), the path length difference expressed in terms of arriving signal wavelengths is given by

$$\alpha = (\lambda/2)\sin\theta.$$

For an arrival angle of 30°,

$$\alpha = (\lambda/2)\sin 30 = \lambda/4.$$

This corresponds to an inter-element angular phase shift of 90° for arriving narrowband signals. Thus, when the narrowband pulse is being received by all Y-axis line-arrays with the backside coupled to the low impedance virtual grounds 208 as described above, the received electrical signal phases along the set of four Y-axis line-arrays will be 0, 90, 180, and 270 degrees, respectively.

Receive operation of the frontside (Y) columns with the backside rows 106 all coupled to signal ground in the X-axis receive beamformer 110b will first be considered. Each set of four X-axis electrical signals (in the 4x4 array used for illustration) are connected to virtual ground nodes 208 in the receiver preamplifier of the receive beamformer 110a to form a signal reference for the backside rows, and phase shifted -90° between adjacent line-arrays (0, -90, -180, and -270 degrees), as shown. The imposed phase shifts compensate for those arising from the different inter-element path lengths of the narrowband acoustic pulse incident on the line arrays, as illustrated in Fig. 5. The resulting four signals 210 will be in phase and, when summed, will form a maximum acoustic interference pattern when receiving a wavefront arriving at a 30° incidence angle. This maximum corresponds to the central axis of one of the main lobes of the formed beams.

A second receive beam can be formed for incoming sound ray wavefronts traveling in the -X direction and at an angle $\theta$ with the Z direction (at a -30° incidence angle) by reversing the sign of the 90° imposed phase shift on the four signals and summing the signals. Since the set of four signal phases repeats for additional sets of four line-arrays, larger arrays can be implemented by summing the signals from all sets of four line-arrays to further enhance the interference patterns at ± 30°. When additional sets of four line-array segments are utilized as described, the acoustic signal gain along the ± 30° directions is increased, or correspondingly, the beamwidth in that direction is reduced, as additional sets of arrays are added.

An equivalent beamforming method is to first sum all of the equal phase signals from different array sets, then apply the imposed 90° phase shifts between the summed set of four signals. This can be accomplished by simply electrically connecting each fourth line-array in parallel, as is commonly done in practice for one-dimensional phased arrays as previously described (see Fig. 2). The effective beamwidth in the X direction is determined by the number of line-array sets in the array. In the Y direction, the beamwidth is determined by the beam patterns of the line-arrays, which is inversely proportional to the length (in acoustic wavelengths) of the array lines. For the ADVS application, narrow inclined acoustic beams with similar widths in both planes are desired and the X and Y plane dimensions are maintained about the same.

During the transmit mode, operation of the 2-axis array is similar to the above described receive mode except the flow of signals is reversed, as illustrated in Fig. 6. Transmit operation of the frontside columns with the backside rows all coupled to signal ground will first be considered. A long tone burst carrier frequency 300 is applied to a phase shift transmit beamformer 108a, generating four drive signals with relative phases of 0, 90, 180 and 270 degrees. These are applied to the four parallel wired sets 302 of Y columns from low impedance drivers. The imposed phase shifts will compensate for those arising from the different path lengths between line arrays, and a transmitted acoustic signal interference pattern at a 30° incidence angle will be formed, corresponding to the center of one of the main beam lobes. Another transmitted beam can be formed at a -30° incidence angle by reversing the sign of the 90° imposed phase shift as previously described.

Receive and transmit operation in the Y-axis is the same. When considering signals applied and received from the backside rows, the frontside columns are coupled through a low impedance to signal ground. The presence of the low transmit drive and receiver load impedance to ground on each side results in fully independent X and Y axis operation. From superposition of the X and Y axis signals, it can also be seen that both axes (i.e., rows and columns) can be in operation simultaneously.

The above described 2-axis beamforming technique using fixed phase delays in forming narrow transmit and receive beams and is referred to as a "two-dimensional phased array" transducer. It is suitable for use in narrowband applications which transmit a single frequency (narrowband) long tone burst. Four inclined narrow beams positioned in the X-Z and Y-Z planes and all inclined at an angle relative to the Z direction are formed from a single flat array aperture, as shown in Fig. 3.

From the sound ray diagram in Fig. 5, it is seen that for a fixed element spacing of d, the angle of each beam is related to the acoustic frequency by

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}(\lambda/4d) = \sin^{-1}(c/4fd).$$

Thus, the beam angle will be frequency dependent and, if the incoming or outgoing wave has a broad spectrum, the mainlobe beam pattern will be correspondingly broadened in angular space. Because of this bandwidth induced beam spreading, the phased array technique described above does not work with broadband ADVS's which transmit signals with a broad spectrum (typically 20-50% of the carrier frequency). To use this 2-dimensional array method with broadband signals requires an alternate time-delay beamforming method, as described in the following paragraphs.

*Time delay Array operation:*

As previously shown, incoming sound ray wavefronts traveling in the -X direction at a velocity c and at an angle $\theta$ with the Z direction, strike the various Y-axis front side column line-array locations at different times due to the path length differences between adjacent line-arrays. The path length distance difference, $\alpha$, was shown to be equal to d $\sin\theta$. The corresponding path length time delay difference ($\tau$) is (d $\sin\theta$)/c. While the phased array employs a beamformer which compensates for the inter-element phase delays which apply only for narrowband signals, the time delay array employs a beamformer which compensates for the inter-element time delays which apply for signals of broader frequency band.

Considering now the receive mode of operation of a 4 X 4 array subset as illustrated in Fig. 7, with the backside rows connected to virtual ground in the X-axis receive beamformer 110b, each set of four Y-axis electrical received signals are connected to virtual ground nodes in the receiver beamformer amplifiers 402 to form a signal reference for the backside rows. The amplifier outputs are applied to a tapped bidirectional time-delay summing network 404 as shown in Fig. 7. The imposed inter-element electrical time delay 406, $\tau$, compensates for the time delay arising from the different inter-element path lengths of the arriving acoustic signals, resulting in formation of two beams in the ± X-axis (X-Z plane) at incidence angles of

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}(c\tau/d).$$

By inspection of this equation, it can be appreciated that the beam angles are now independent of the acoustic frequency, and thus not spatially broadened in space by a broad frequency spectrum. This broadband capability is the primary benefit of the time-delay technique over the previously described phase shift technique.

During the transmit mode, operation of the 4 X 4 array is similar to the above described receive mode except the flow of signals is reversed as illustrated in Fig. 8. Considering first the operation of the frontside columns with the backside rows all coupled to signal ground in the X-axis beamformer 500, the transmit signal 502 is applied to a time delay transmit beamformer 504, generating four drive signals with relative time delays 508 of 0, $\tau$, $2\tau$, and $3\tau$. These are applied to the four parallel wired sets 506 of Y columns from low output impedance drivers.

The imposed time delays compensate for the time delays arising from the different path lengths between line arrays, and a transmitted acoustic signal interference pattern at an incidence angle $\theta$ will be formed, corresponding to the center of one of the main beam lobes. Another transmitted beam can be formed at a $-\theta$ incidence angle by reversing the direction of the signal flow through the time delay network.

Time-delay array receive and transmit operation in the other dimension (Y-axis) is completely analogous to that previously described. In Y-axis operation, signals are applied to and received from the backside rows while the frontside columns are coupled through a low impedance to signal ground. The presence of the low transmit drive and receiver load impedance to signal ground on each side results in complete independence of X and Y axis operation; accordingly, both X and Y axes can be in operation simultaneously.

For large arrays, the aforementioned time-delay method is more complex to implement than the phase shift method because a separate time delay element is required between each individual line-array, whereas only four discrete phase shifts are required when utilizing the phase shift method. A 32 element time delay network is required for a 32 element array, thereby substantially increasing the complexity of a time delay array over a corresponding phased array of similar size. A further advantage of the time delay approach (in addition to the ability to form narrow beams in broadband operating environments) is that because the beam angle $\theta$ is determined by $\sin^{-1}(c\tau/d)$ for a single fixed array physical configuration (element spacing d being fixed), multiple inclined beams in each axis can easily be formed by using a different set of time delays for each beam set. This concept is illustrated in Fig. 9. In this example, four sets of 4-beam combinations 550 oriented symmetrically about the Z axis 552 at four inclination angles $\theta$ are achieved by utilizing four sets of X and Y beamformers (BF1X - BF4X 554 and BF1Y - BF4Y 556), each set operating as described above for the basic time-delay array.

**2. Hardware Description**

As can be appreciated from the previous description, the present invention may be embodied to produce many combinations of 2-axis inclined beams with different carrier frequency, beam characteristics and signal bandwidth capabilities. The specific preferred hardware embodiment described in this section employs the time-delay beamformer which was functionally described in the previous section, and produces two narrow beamwidth broadband beams at a 150 kHz carrier frequency in each of two axes for use in ADVS applications.

The hardware associated with the preferred embodiment disclosed herein is comprised of a circular transducer array and two substantially identical beamforming networks, each of which provide the electrical signal transfer to form two inclined transmit/receive beams. A top view of the transducer array is provided in Fig. 10. The diameter D 600 of the array is approximately 160 mm. There are 800 individual square faced 150 kHz piezo-electrical ceramic elements 102 closely spaced at a center to center distance of 5 mm 604 (about 1/2 wavelength at 150 kHz, based on a propagation velocity of roughly 1500 m/s).

The multilayer construction of the transducer array is illustrated in the three dimensional view shown in Fig. 11. This thickness dimension in this view is expanded to show the layered structure. The ceramic array elements 700, e.g., the 800 elements 102 shown in Figure 10 are electrically and mechanically connected by two pieces of thin, acoustically transparent flexible printed circuits (FPC) 702, 704 on the top and bottom surfaces of the ceramics. Such circuits may be fabricated from Kapton™ (polyimide) or other suitable material. Electrical connection to each ceramic element 700 is achieved by press fitting and bonding (or alternatively, low temperature soldering) the printed electrical conductor lines to the conductive face of the array elements. Bonding may be accomplished by use of a suitable adhesive or glue, although it can be appreciated that other forms of bonding may also be suitable. The connection pattern is along element columns on the front side and along rows on the back side, with access to columns on one side (Y wires 705) and rows on another side (X wires 707). A piece of 1/8 inch (3.18 mm) thick fiberglass material 706 (such as that bearing the tradename "G-10" or other similar material) with face dimensions matching the ceramic is bonded to the front of the top flexible circuit on each 150 kHz transducer array. This fiberglass (G-10 or equivalent) piece is an acoustic quarter wave transformer used to improve the impedance coupling between the array and water, and to significantly increase the transducer element bandwidth. The significant increase in the transducer bandwidth is required by the broadband ADVS technology. A layer of urethane 708 bonded to the front of the fiberglass piece seals the face to the water in front. A layer of air filled cardboard 710 is placed between the back plane of the housing 712 and the back of the bottom flexible circuit to reflect the acoustic energy transmitted backward and to provide the necessary mechanical support against the water pressure incident on the front of the transducer array surface 714.

The preferred time-delay receive mode beamformer circuitry (one axis only) is illustrated in Fig. 12. In the receive mode of operation, the received signals from all frontside columns and backside rows 104, 106 are coupled to the X and Y axis beamformers 110a, 110b, respectively, through T/R switches 118. Each T/R switch is implemented with a Field Effect Transistor (FET) 806 in series with the receiver amplifier input terminals 808. A virtual ground low impedance load on all X and Y lines during receive mode operation is implemented with a high gain differential preamplifier 810 which has a low noise figure when coupled to the relatively low impedance transducer line arrays. Each X and Y transducer line array is connected to the negative terminal of the high input impedance differential amplifier, the positive terminal is connected to signal ground 812, and a feedback impedance 814 is connected between the low impedance preamplifier output and the negative input terminal. This forms a well known inverting operational amplifier configuration (the resulting gain of the amplifier is proportional to the negative of the ratio of the feedback impedance to source impedance 816) with the transducer line array providing the input signal with a source impedance 816 equal to the electrical impedance of the line array. If the amplifier open loop gain is much higher than the closed loop gain determined by the ratio of the feedback resistor to the source impedance of each 150 kHz line array ($\approx$ 200 ohms), the voltage across the input terminals will be small with respect to the received signal. Since the positive amplifier terminal is grounded, the negative terminal is maintained by the amplifier loop action at essentially ground potential also. Thus, the negative terminal input 808 is considered a "virtual" ground.

The output of the preamplifier is converted to a high output impedance current source via a transistor 818 which injects the signal current derived from the line array into a tapped analog time-delay summing network 404. This network has 32 taps (corresponding to each of the 32 rows or columns used in each dimension); each segment between the taps has a time delay of t microseconds, corresponding to the delay required to compensate for the t microsecond acoustic time delay occurring for arriving and departing signals at the line arrays at the chosen angle of incidence. Each time-delay segment is implemented with a four-component inductor/capacitor network 822 which approximates a second order all-pass filter. This inductor/capacitor network provides an approximation of a wide bandwidth time delay which is accurate to 0.1% over a 25% bandwidth.

The above description applies to the receive beamformer associated with one of the two axes of a 2-axis array. It can be appreciated that a corresponding set of receive beamformer electrical hardware is utilized for processing the receive signals for the other axis.

Fig. 13 shows the preferred time-delay transmit beamformer (one axis only) associated with the present invention. The transmit beamformer time delays are achieved with digital circuits and square waveforms to simplify the circuits and achieve precise time delays determined by an accurate clock signal. TB1 and TB2 850 are square waveforms at the frequency to be transmitted by the four acoustic beams. For each of the 32 rows, TB1 and TB2 are summed together by summing circuits 851 after an appropriate time delay (achieved through use of 32 bit shift registers 852) and applied to the 32 array rows through the transmit amplifiers 854. Harmonics associated with the square wave output signals of the transmit amplifiers are attenuated by the bandpass characteristics of the transducer array row or column 856; the transmitted signal is therefore dominated by the fundamental transmit frequency. The transmit amplifiers are implemented with low impedance FET push/pull output stages 858 which have a low output impedance when driving the transducers. During receive mode operation, a high output impedance load is supplied by turning both push/pull stages off.

During the transmit mode, the electrical potential between the two faces of each ceramic element is determined by the summation of four appropriately delayed waveforms: the two row drive signals (TB1 and TB2) described above, and a corresponding set of time-delayed column drive signals (TB3 and TB4). Four inclined acoustic beams in 2 axes (X-Z and Y-Z planes) will be generated with these time delayed drive waveforms.

The time delay array forms four transmit and receive beams each with a 4° beam width (based on two side, 3 dB downpoints). Fig. 14 is a graph of signal amplitude versus beam angle (measured from the Z-axis, normal to the array face) for a 150 kHz nominal 32 x 32 phased array transducer, as viewed in the X-Z or Y-Z planes, illustrating the formation of one acoustic beam 900. As shown, the sidelobe attenuation at the neighbor and opposite beam position (-+30 degree beam angle, 904) is about -40 dB.

**3. Fabrication Description:**

Another aspect of the present invention relates to a unique method of manufacturing a transducer array suitable for use in such a multiple beam sonar in an economical manner, and which preserves the precise geometrical relationships among the elements. This method is described in detail in the following paragraphs.

For high frequency arrays as previously described, the diameter of the individual transducer elements and the distance between the individual transducer elements is small, e.g., < 5 mm, and a large number of precisely placed elements are required. Since it is not practical to assemble this many small individual elements into the array, the elements must remain in their original position during and after dicing, and must be electrically connected as previously described. Therefore, one cannot simply glue the ceramic element, fiberglass, acoustically transparent Flexible Printed Circuit (FPC), and backing material together and then cut it into the desired number of pieces. A reliable and economical method of manufacturing the 2-axis transducer array which preserves precise geometrical relationships among the elements is required.

The preferred process used to manufacture the preferred embodiment of the present invention is illustrated in Fig. 15. The necessary components for assembly of the preferred transducer array include a cylindrical solid fiberglass element 706 (G-10 or equivalent), front side (Y-axis) Y FPC sheets 702, a cylindrical ceramic element 700, back side (X-axis) X FPC sheets 704, a cardboard backing layer 710, and a urethane layer 708. A cup housing may also be utilized to house the transducer array assembly when the fabrication process is completed. Note that other forms such as ellipses or polygons which are generally symmetrical in the two face dimensions are also suitable for use in lieu of the aforementioned cylindrical shapes.

The fabrication process generally involves use of a parallel blade diamond saw to slice through the front and back sides of a solid piece of ceramic and an attached impedance layer to create electrically and mechanically independent elements. This is done in such a way that all array elements are held in place during and after slicing to preserve precise geometrical relationships among the elements. Specifically, the disclosed process for manufacturing the preferred embodiment of the present invention is as follows, with reference being made to Fig. 15:

1. First, a parallel blade diamond saw (not shown) is used to slice the front face of the fiberglass matching layer 706 halfway through its thickness, defined by the Z-axis, in the X and Y directions.
2. Second, a layer of acoustically transparent urethane 708 is bonded to the front face of the fiberglass matching layer 706.

3. The diamond saw is then used to slice the back side of the fiberglass matching layer 706 through its remaining thickness in both the X and Y directions.

4. Next, the diamond saw is used to slice the back face of the transducer array blank 700 halfway through its thickness, defined by the Z axis, in the X and Y directions.

5. A thin layer of X-axis conducting foil (X FPC) 704 is then bonded on the back face of the blank 700.

6. A layer of backing material 710 is next bonded to the back face of the X-FPC 704.

7. The front face of the blank 700 is next sliced through its remaining thickness (Z direction) in the X and Y directions.

8. A thin layer of Y-axis conducting foil (Y FPC) 702 is then bonded on the front face of the ceramic/X FPC transducer assembly.

9. Finally, the sliced fiberglass matching layer/urethane assembly 706, 708 and ceramic/FPC/backing assembly 700, 702, 704, 710 are bonded together as shown.

A cup housing or other support element may subsequently be fitted as required to provide for mounting the transducer array to the desired platform (such as a ship hull or current profiler) and sealing against water intrusion. It can be appreciated that a large number of different housing designs and sealing mechanisms may be utilized in conjunction with the present invention to fulfill these needs.

While the above detailed description has shown, described, and pointed out the fundamental novel features of the invention as applied to various embodiments, it will be understood that various omissions, substitutions, and changes in the form and details of the device or process illustrated may be made by those skilled in the art without departing from the intent of the invention.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. An acoustic system, comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements arranged to form a single two-dimensional array, wherein the elements are electrically connected into rows in a first dimension and columns in a second dimension and the rows are electrically independent of the columns;

a first beamforming circuit forming a first plane of acoustic beams projected outside of the array plane and substantially normal to the first transducer array dimension, the first beamforming circuit electrically connected to the transducer elements in the second transducer array dimension, wherein the first beamforming circuit delays signals associated, respectively, with each column; and

a second beamforming circuit forming a first plane of acoustic beams projected outside of the array plane and substantially normal to the second transducer array dimension, the second beamforming circuit electrically connected to the transducer elements in the first array dimension, wherein the second beamforming circuit delays signals associated, respectively, with each row, the system thereby capable of forming at least two planes of acoustic beams.

2. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the acoustic beams formed by the system are in the Janus configuration.

3. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the transducer elements are arranged to substantially form a pattern selected from the group consisting of circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

4. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the rows and columns are orthogonal to one another.

5. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein each transducer element has a facial crossection selected from the group consisting of a circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

6. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the transducer elements are arranged within the array such that the centerline-to-centerline distance between individual elements is one-half of the wavelength of the system acoustic carrier frequency as measured in water and at the front face of the array.

7. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the first and second beamforming circuits include multiple bit shift registers.

8. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein each transducer element is symmetric in the facial plane.

9. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the first and second beamforming circuits provide a virtual ground load impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the system is receiving signals.

10. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the first and second beamforming circuits provide a low source impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the system is transmitting signals.

11. The acoustic system of Claim 1, wherein the rows and columns of transducer elements are electrically connected into P sets of elements by interconnecting each Pth row and column, the first and second beamforming circuits being electrically connected to these P sets of rows and columns, respectively.

12. An electro-acoustic transducer capable of forming multiple transmit or receive acoustic beams from a single planar aperture, comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements arranged in a planar array of N substantially parallel rows and M substantially parallel columns, each row of transducer elements being electrically connected along a first face of the array, and each column of transducer elements being electrically connected along a second face;

a first transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the rows;

a second transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the columns and operating in electrical independence of the first beamformer,

a transmit/receive switch electrically connected, respectively, between the first and second beamformers and the rows and columns,

wherein a transmit setting of the switch allows the first and second beamformers to apply signals to the rows and columns of transducer elements, respectively, to form the transmit beams, the signals being time- or phase-delayed, and,

wherein a receive setting of the switch allows the first and second beamformers to receive signals from the row and column transducer elements, respectively, the signals from the rows and columns being, respectively, time- or phase-delayed and combined to form the receive beams.

13. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the acoustic beams formed by the system are in the Janus configuration.

14. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the transducer elements are arranged to substantially form a pattern selected from the group consisting of circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

15. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the rows and columns are orthogonal to one another.

16. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein each transducer element has a facial crossection selected from the group consisting of a circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

17. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the transducer elements are arranged within the array such that the centerline-to-centerline distance between individual elements is one-half of the wavelength of the system acoustic carrier frequency as measured in water and at the front face of the array.

18. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the transmit/receive beamformer includes multiple bit shift registers.

19. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein each transducer element is symmetric in the facial plane.

20. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the first and second transmit/receive beamformers provide a virtual ground load impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the transmit/receive switch is positioned to receive signals.

21. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the first and second transmit/receive beamformers provide a low source impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the transmit/receive switch is positioned to transmit signals.

22. The transducer of Claim 12, wherein the rows and columns of transducer elements are electrically connected into P sets of elements by interconnecting each Pth row and column, the first and second transmit/receive beamformers being electrically connected to these P sets of rows and columns, respectively.

23. A method of forming multiple transmit or receive beams from a single planar array having a plurality of transducer elements arranged in N substantially parallel rows and M substantially parallel columns,

wherein the planar array has a first transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the rows, a second transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the columns, and a transmit/receive switch electrically connected, respectively, between the first and second beamformers and the rows and columns, the method comprising the steps of:

setting the transmit/receive switch to a transmit setting; and

applying signals from the first and second beamformers to the rows and columns of transducer elements, respectively, to form transmit beams, the signals being time- or phase-delayed, or, alternatively,

setting the transmit/receive switch to a receive setting; and

allowing signals from the rows and columns of transducer elements to be applied to the first and second beamformers, respectively, with a time- or phase-delay, to form receive beams.

24. The method of Claim 23, wherein the acoustic beams formed by the system are in the Janus configuration.

25. The method of Claim 23, wherein the transducer elements are arranged to substantially form a pattern selected from the group consisting of circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

26. The method of Claim 23, wherein the rows and columns are orthogonal to one another.

27. The method of Claim 23, wherein each transducer element has a facial crossection selected from the group consisting of a circular, elliptical or polygonal shapes.

28. The method of Claim 23, wherein the transducer elements are arranged within the array such that the centerline-to-centerline distance between individual elements is one-half of the wavelength of the system acoustic carrier frequency as measured in water and at the front face of the array.

29. The method of Claim 23, wherein the transmit/receive beamformer includes multiple bit shift registers.

30. The method of Claim 23, wherein each transducer element is symmetric in the facial plane.

31. The method of Claim 23, wherein the first and second transmit/receive beamformers provide a virtual ground load impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the transmit/receive switch is positioned to receive signals.

32. The method of Claim 23, wherein the first and second transmit/receive beamformers provide a low source impedance to all rows and columns, respectively when the transmit/receive switch is positioned to transmit signals.

33. The method of Claim 23, wherein the rows and columns of transducer elements are electrically connected into P sets of elements by interconnecting each Pth row and column, the first and second transmit/receive beamformers being electrically connected to these P sets of rows and columns, respectively.

34. The method of Claim 23, wherein the rows and columns of the planar array simultaneously form either transmit or receive beams in two planes.

35. A method of fabricating an acoustic transducer having a plurality of elements comprising the steps of:

providing a transducer blank having first and second substantially parallel faces;

slicing said transducer blank partway through its thickness in one or more dimensions of said first face;

bonding said first face of said transducer blank to a substantially rigid member, said member providing for the electrical connection of one or more of said elements; and

slicing said transducer blank in one or more dimensions of said second face, said slicing of said second face spatially coinciding with the slicing of said first face such that said blank is sliced completely through its thickness, thereby forming individual transducer elements from said blank, each of said elements being bonded to said substantially rigid member.

36. The method of Claim 35, wherein the transducer blank consists of lead-zircon-titanate.

37. The method of Claim 35, wherein the faces of the transducer blank have a crossection selected from the group consisting of circular, elliptical, square, polygonal, or rectangular shapes.

38. An electro-acoustic transducer capable of simultaneously forming multiple transmit or receive acoustic beams in first and second orthogonal planes and from a single planar aperture, comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements arranged in a planar array of N substantially parallel rows and M substantially parallel columns, each row of transducer elements being electrically connected along a first face of the array, and each column of transducer elements being electrically connected along a second face;

a first transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the rows;

a second transmit/receive beamformer electrically connected to the columns and operating in electrical independence of the first beamformer,

a transmit/receive switch electrically connected, respectively, between the first and second beamformers and the rows and columns,

wherein a transmit setting of the switch allows the first and second beamformers to apply signals to the rows and columns of transducer elements, respectively, to form multiple transmit beams within the first and second orthogonal planes, respectively, the beams being at the same angle of inclination relative to a direction normal to the to first and second faces of the planar array, the signals being time- or phase-delayed, and,

wherein a receive setting of the switch allows the first and second beamformers to receive signals from the row and column transducer elements, respectively, the signals from the rows and columns being, respectively, time- or phase-delayed and combined to form receive beams oriented within the first and second orthogonal planes, the beams being at the same angle of inclination relative to a direction normal to the first and second faces of the planar array.

39. An electro-acoustic system capable of simultaneously transmitting or receiving multiple acoustic beams in a fluid media, comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements arranged to form a single two-dimensional array wherein the elements are electrically connected on a first array face in N rows in a first direction, and on a second array face in M columns in a second direction, the connection on the first and second faces being electrically independent;

a first transmit/receive beamformer electrically interfaced to the N rows, wherein signals applied to or received from the rows are electrically independent of signals simultaneously applied to or received from the columns;

a means for operating the first transmit/receive beamformer in a transmit mode, wherein the first beamformer generates a set of N electrical signals, each signal being time- or phase-delayed, and applies each electrical signal to its respective transducer row element, thereby forming a set of multiple transmit acoustic beams inclined outward from a direction normal to the first and second faces, and positioned within a plane oriented normal to the first direction;

a means for operating the first transmit/receive beamformer in a receive mode wherein the first beamformer receives a set of electrical signals corresponding to each of the N rows and applies a time or phase delay to each signal, the resulting time-or phase-delayed signals from each row being combined together to form a set of multiple receive acoustic beams inclined outward from a direction normal to the first and second faces, and positioned within a plane oriented normal to the first direction;

a means for operating the second transmit/receive beamformer in a transmit mode, wherein the second beamformer generates a set of M electrical signals, each signal being time- or phase-delayed, and applies each electrical signal to its respective transducer column element, thereby forming a set of multiple transmit acoustic beams inclined outward from a direction normal to the first and second faces, and positioned within a plane oriented normal to the second direction; and

a means for operating the second transmit/receive beamformer in a receive mode wherein the second beamformer receives a set of electrical signals corresponding to each of the M columns and applies a time or phase delay to each signal, the resulting time-or phase-delayed signals being combined together to form a set of multiple receive acoustic beams inclined outward from a direction normal to the first and second faces, and positioned within a plane oriented normal to the second direction.

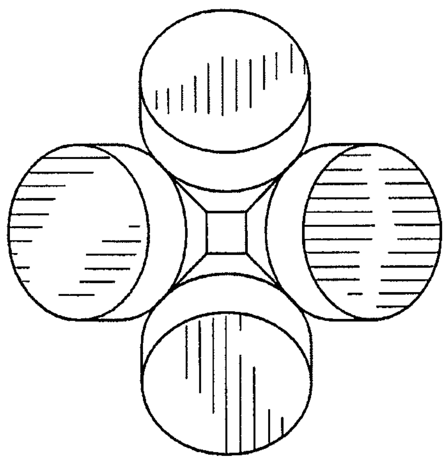


FIG. 1
(PRIOR ART)

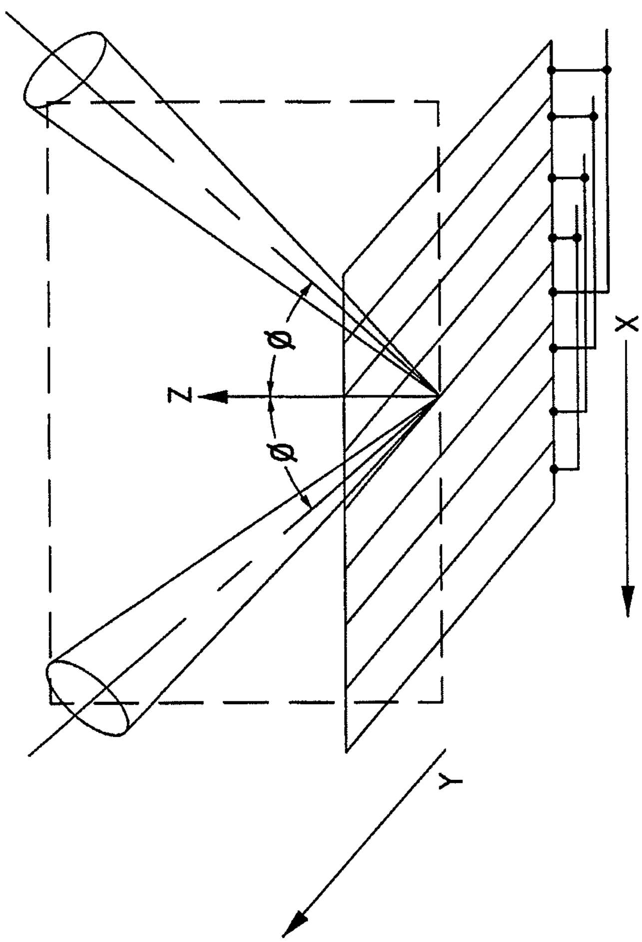



FIG.2
(PRIOR ART)

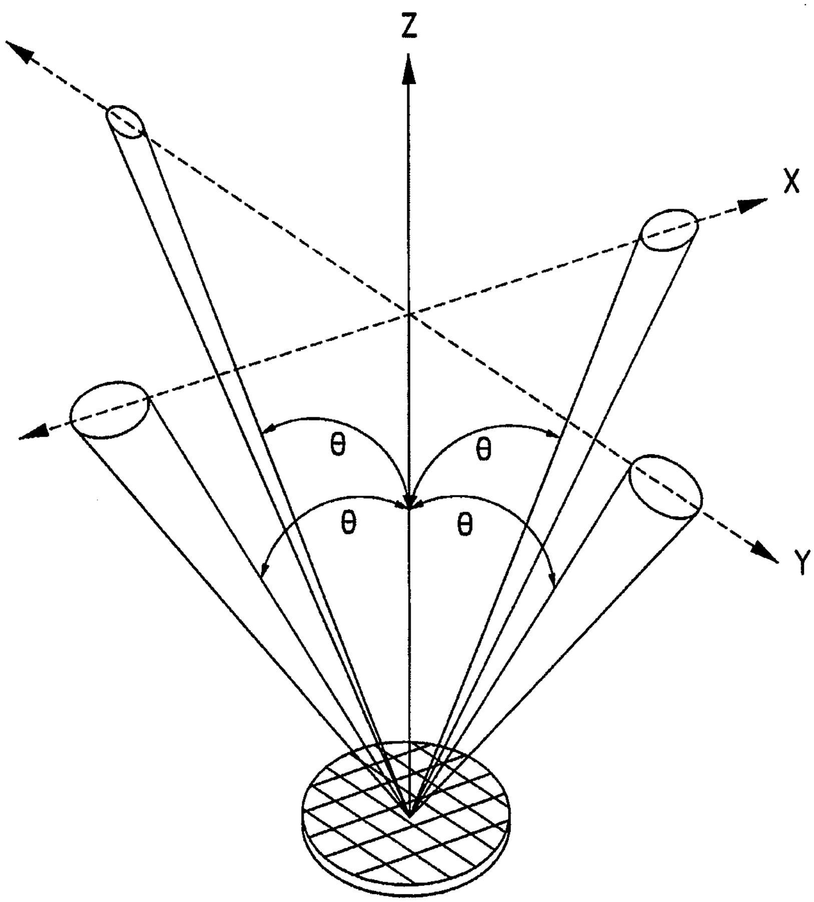



FIG. 3

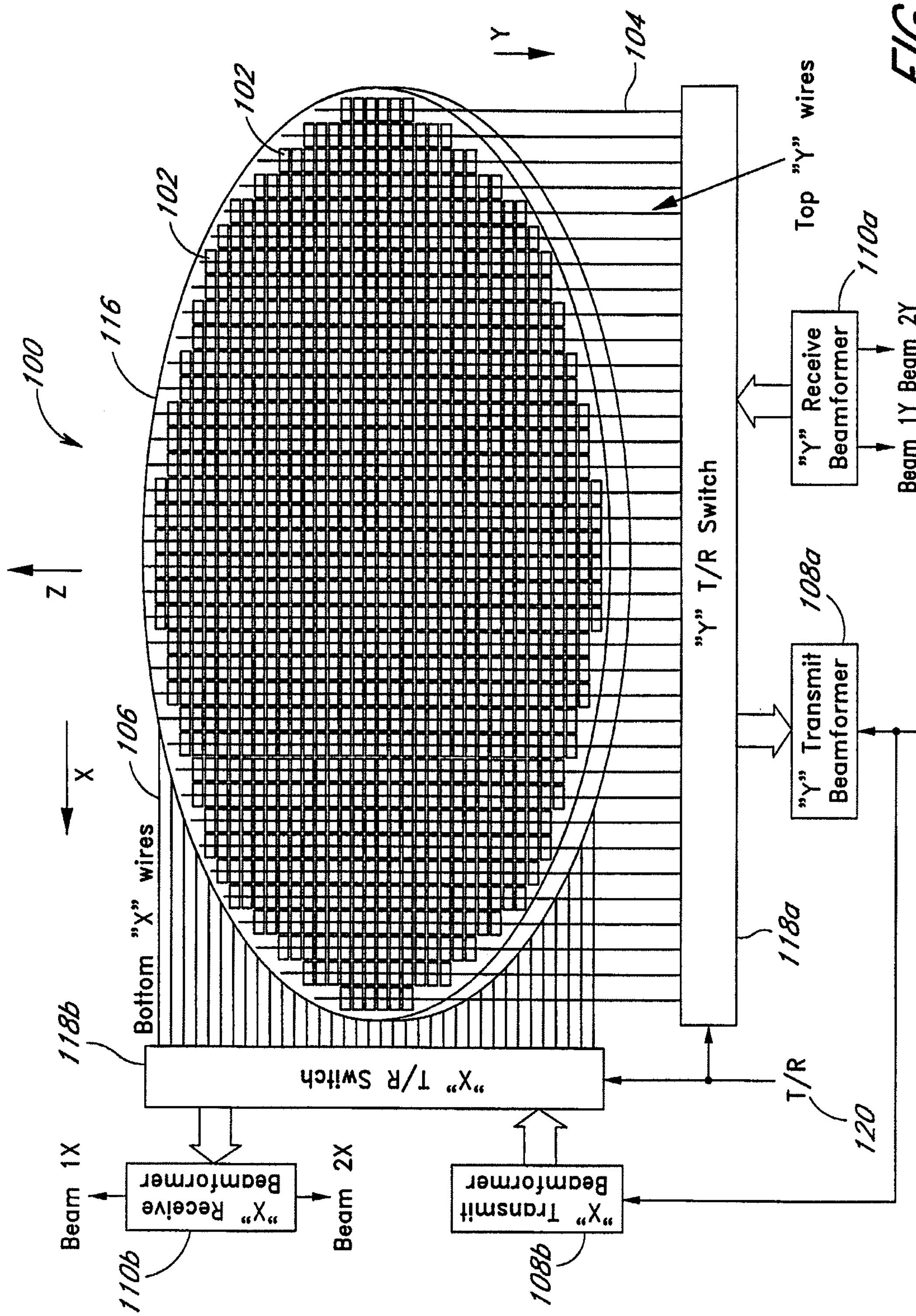

100
116
102
102
104
Y
Z
X
106
Top "Y" wires
Bottom "X" wires
"Y" T/R Switch
"X" T/R Switch
"Y" Receive Beamformer
110a
Beam 1Y Beam 2Y
"Y" Transmit Beamformer
108a
Transmit Signal
118a
118b
T/R
120
"X" Receive Beamformer
110b
Beam 1X
Beam 2X
"X" Transmit Beamformer
108b

FIG. 4

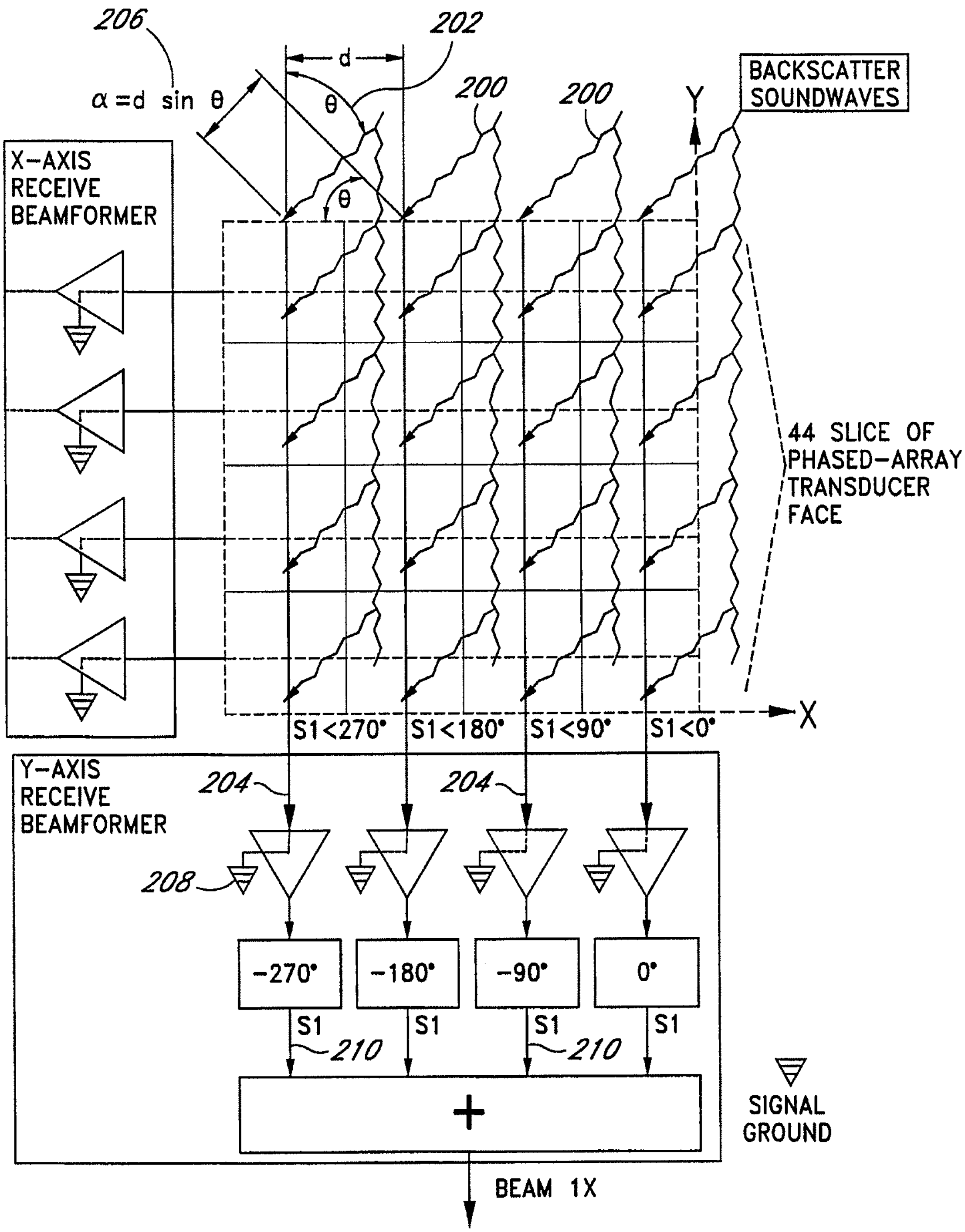

206
202
d
α =d sin θ
θ
200
200
Y
BACKSCATTER SOUNDWAVES
X-AXIS RECEIVE BEAMFORMER
θ
44 SLICE OF PHASED-ARRAY TRANSDUCER FACE
S1<270° S1<180° S1<90° S1<0°
X
Y-AXIS RECEIVE BEAMFORMER
204
204
208
-270°
-180°
-90°
0°
S1
S1
S1
S1
210
210
+
SIGNAL GROUND
BEAM 1X

FIG.5

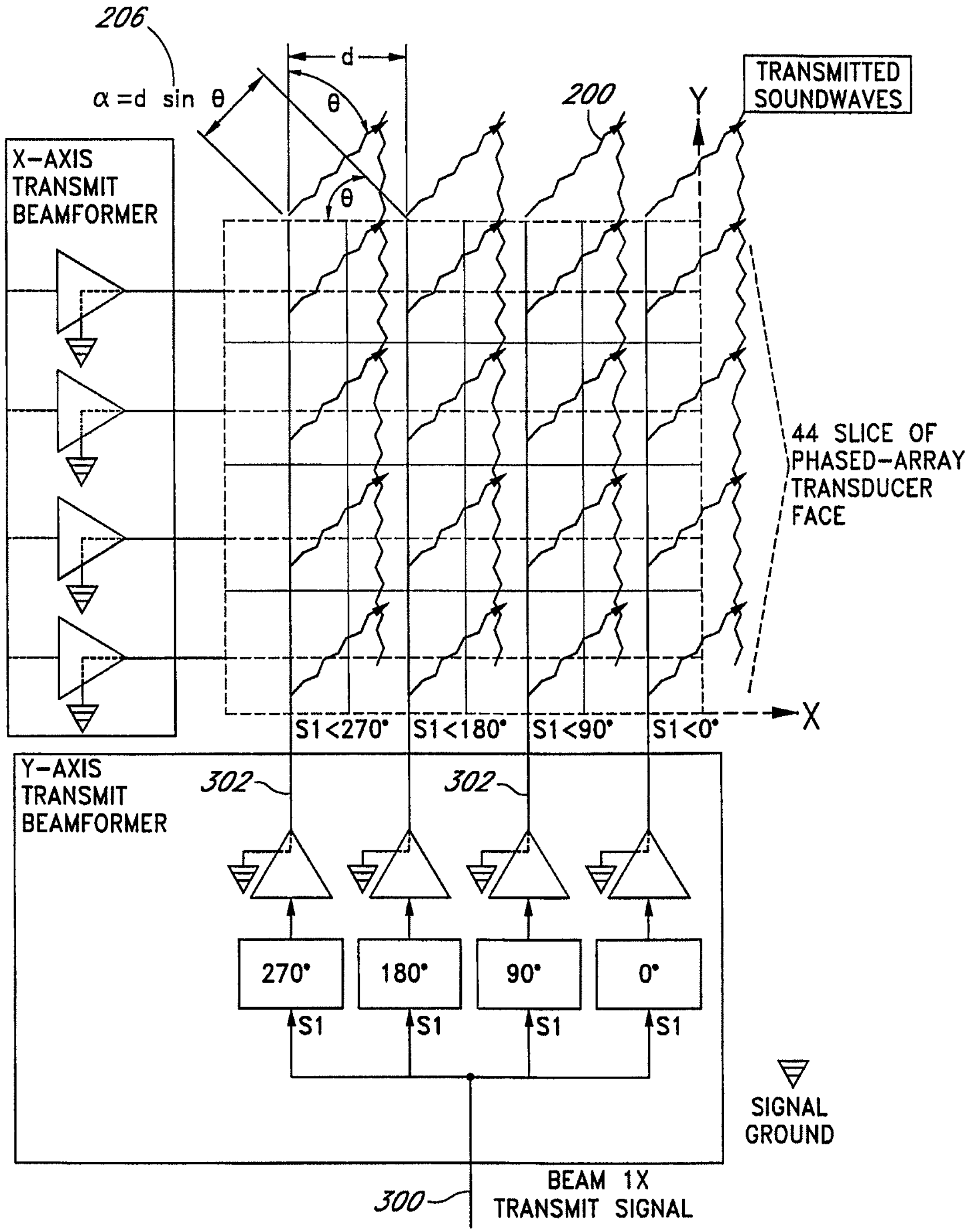

206
α =d sin θ
d
θ
θ
200
Y
TRANSMITTED SOUNDWAVES
X-AXIS TRANSMIT BEAMFORMER
44 SLICE OF PHASED-ARRAY TRANSDUCER FACE
X
S1<270°
S1<180°
S1<90°
S1<0°
Y-AXIS TRANSMIT BEAMFORMER
302
302
270°
180°
90°
0°
S1
S1
S1
S1
SIGNAL GROUND
300
BEAM 1X TRANSMIT SIGNAL

FIG. 6

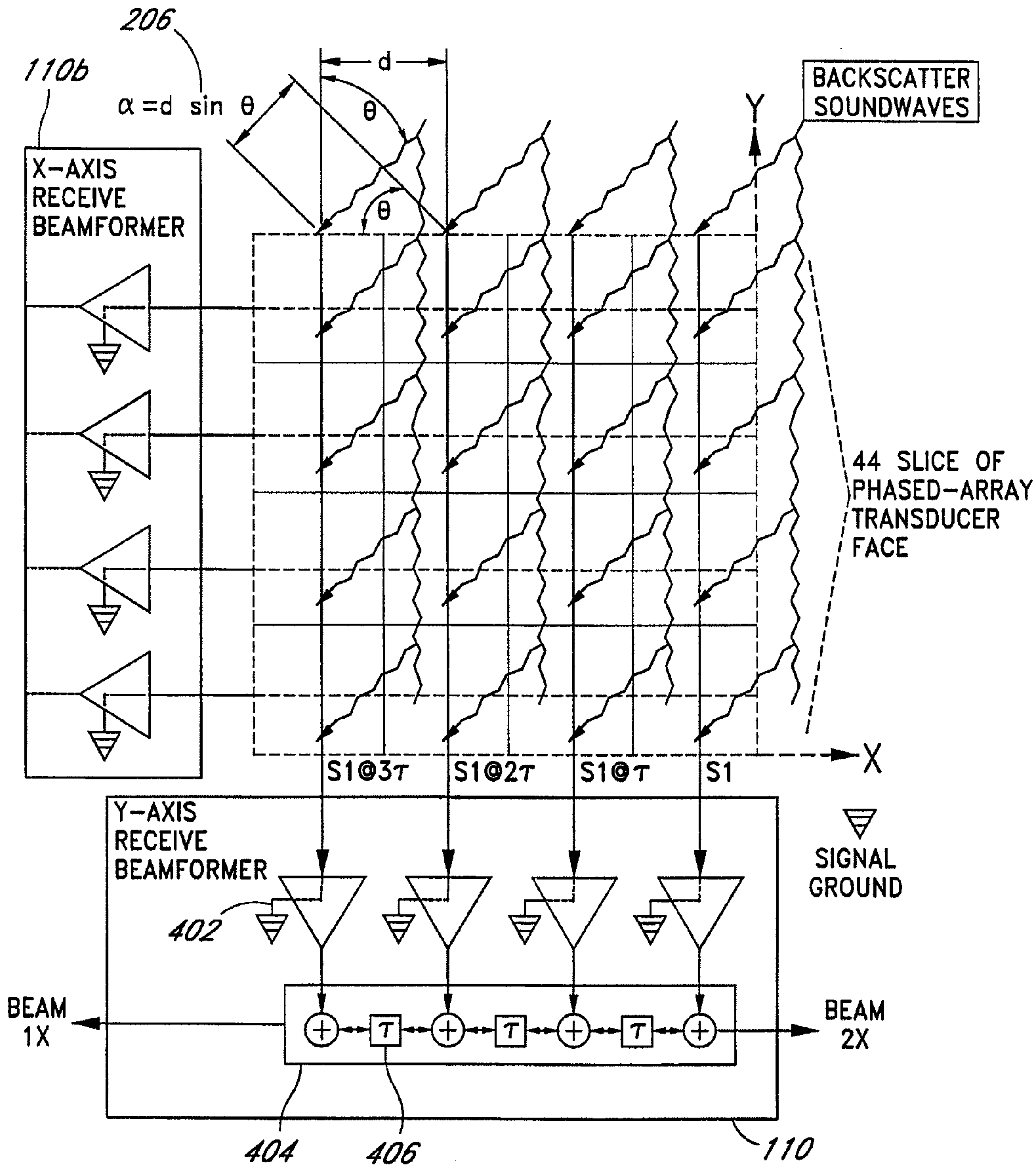

206
110b
α =d sin θ
d
θ
θ
BACKSCATTER SOUNDWAVES
Y
X-AXIS RECEIVE BEAMFORMER
44 SLICE OF PHASED-ARRAY TRANSDUCER FACE
S1@3τ
S1@2τ
S1@τ
S1
X
Y-AXIS RECEIVE BEAMFORMER
SIGNAL GROUND
402
BEAM 1X
τ
τ
τ
BEAM 2X
404
406
110

FIG. 7

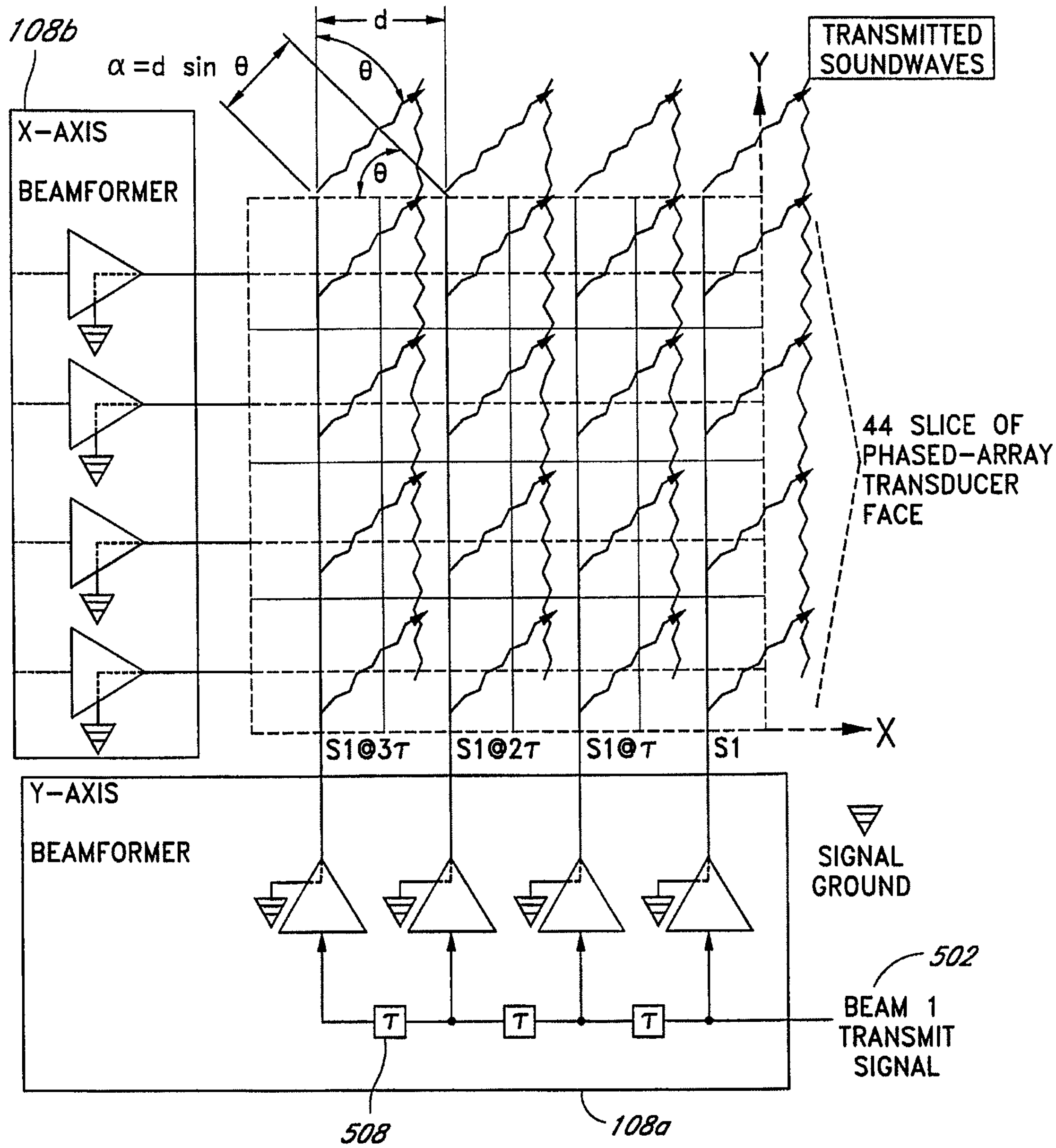

108b
α =d sin θ
d
θ
θ
TRANSMITTED SOUNDWAVES
Y
X–AXIS
BEAMFORMER
44 SLICE OF PHASED–ARRAY TRANSDUCER FACE
X
S1@3τ
S1@2τ
S1@τ
S1
Y–AXIS
BEAMFORMER
SIGNAL GROUND
502
BEAM 1 TRANSMIT SIGNAL
τ
τ
τ
508
108a

FIG. 8

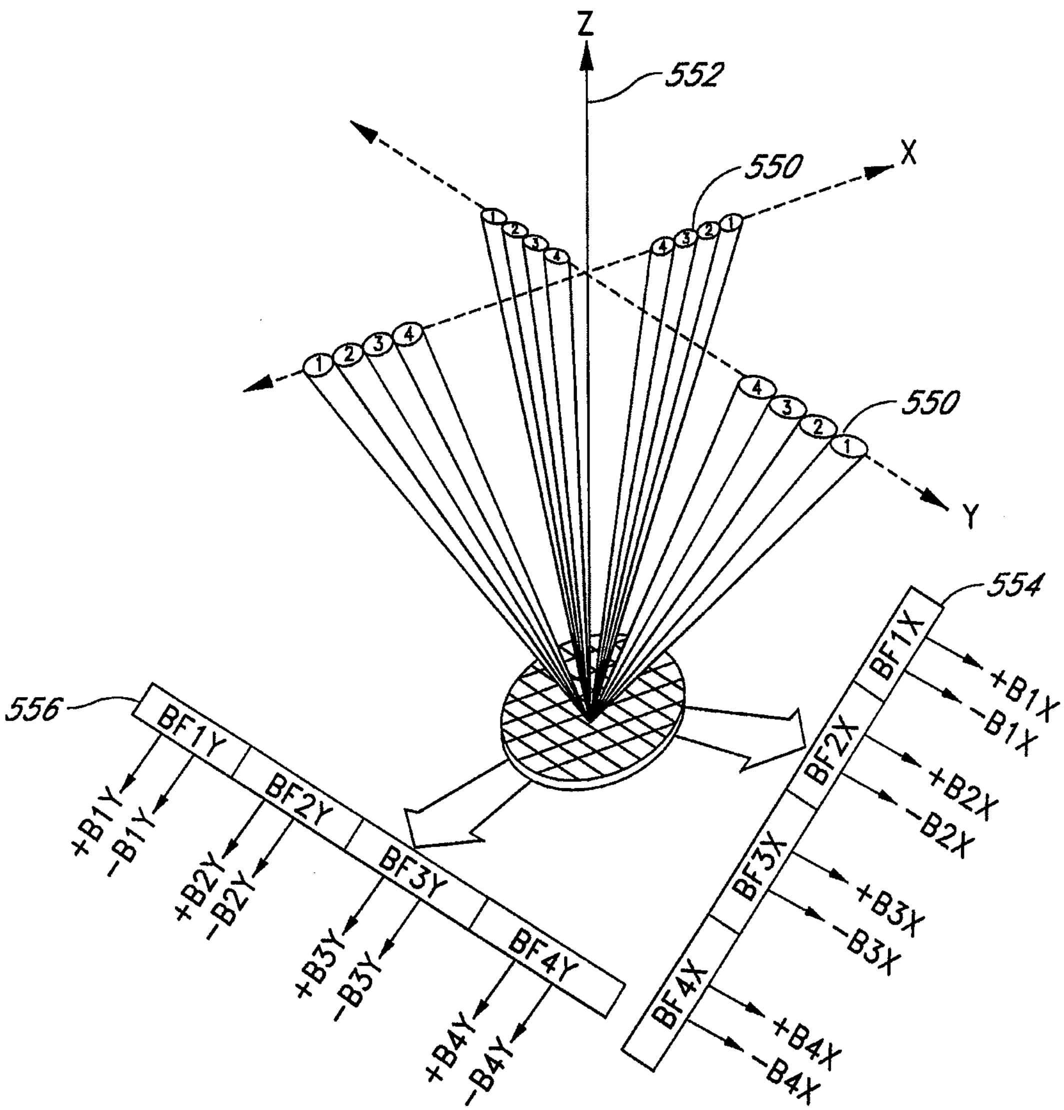

Z
552
X
550
550
Y
554
556
BF1Y
BF2Y
BF3Y
BF4Y
+B1Y
-B1Y
+B2Y
-B2Y
+B3Y
-B3Y
+B4Y
-B4Y
BF1X
BF2X
BF3X
BF4X
+B1X
-B1X
+B2X
-B2X
+B3X
-B3X
+B4X
-B4X

FIG. 9

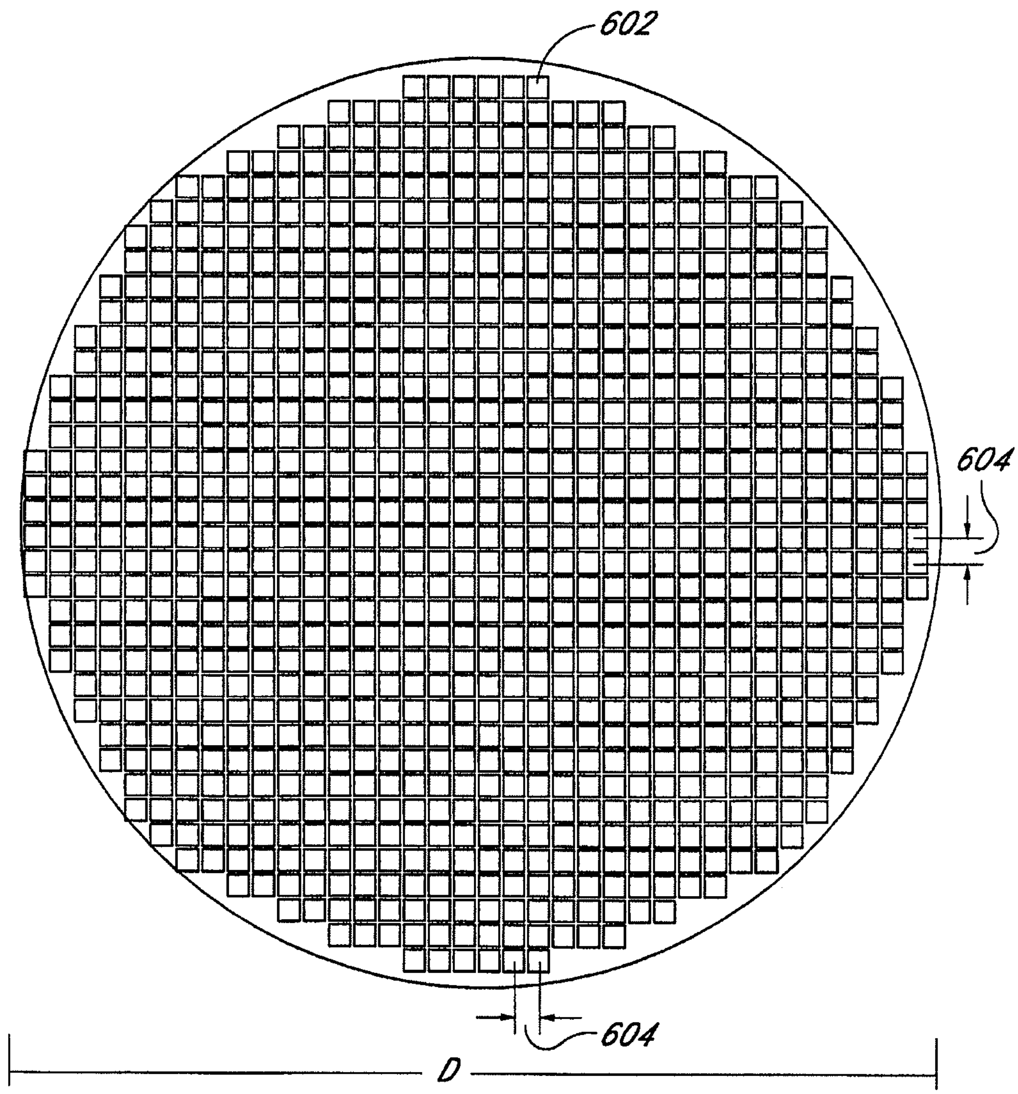



FIG. 10

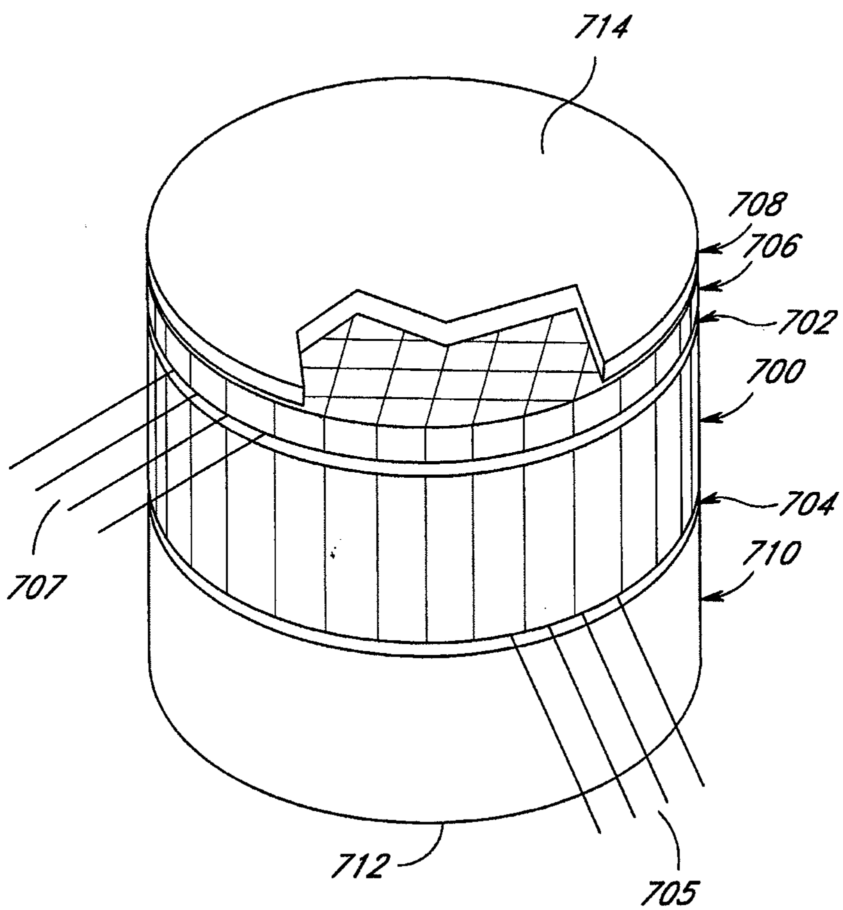



FIG. 11

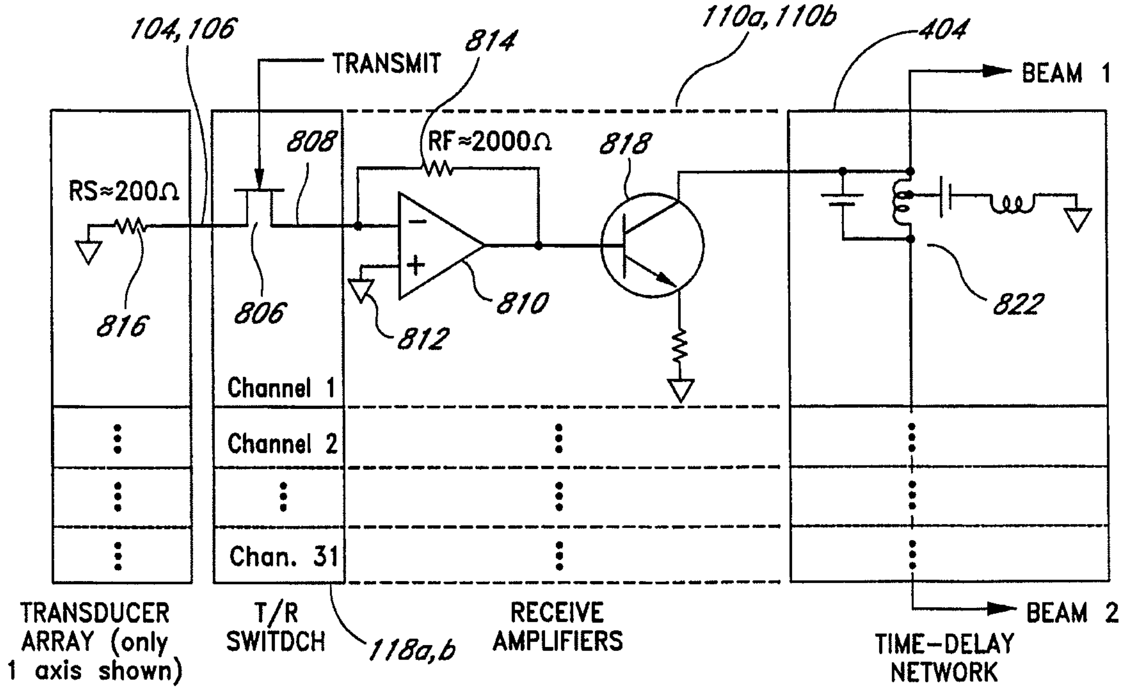

104,106
TRANSMIT
814
110a,110b
404
BEAM 1
808
RF≈2000Ω
818
RS≈200Ω
816
806
810
812
822
Channel 1
Channel 2
Chan. 31
TRANSDUCER ARRAY (only 1 axis shown)
T/R SWITDCH
118a,b
RECEIVE AMPLIFIERS
BEAM 2
TIME-DELAY NETWORK

FIG. 12

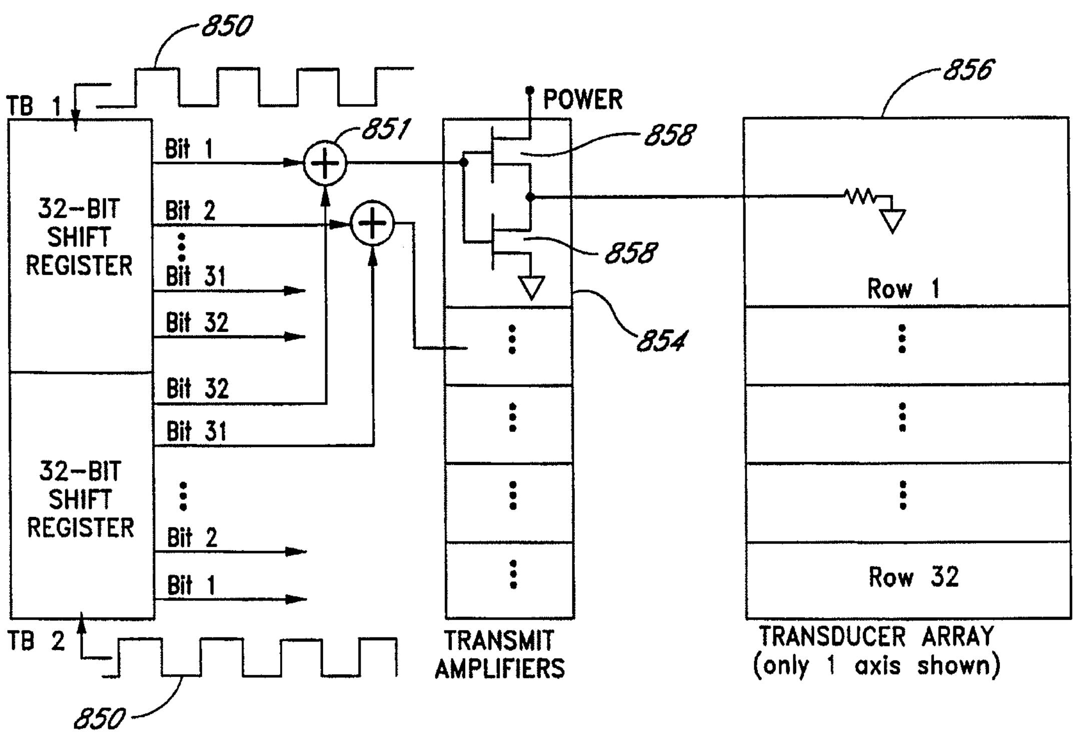

850
856
TB 1
POWER
851
858
Bit 1
Bit 2
Bit 31
Bit 32
32-BIT SHIFT REGISTER
858
Row 1
854
Bit 32
Bit 31
32-BIT SHIFT REGISTER
Bit 2
Bit 1
Row 32
TB 2
TRANSMIT AMPLIFIERS
TRANSDUCER ARRAY (only 1 axis shown)
850

FIG. 13

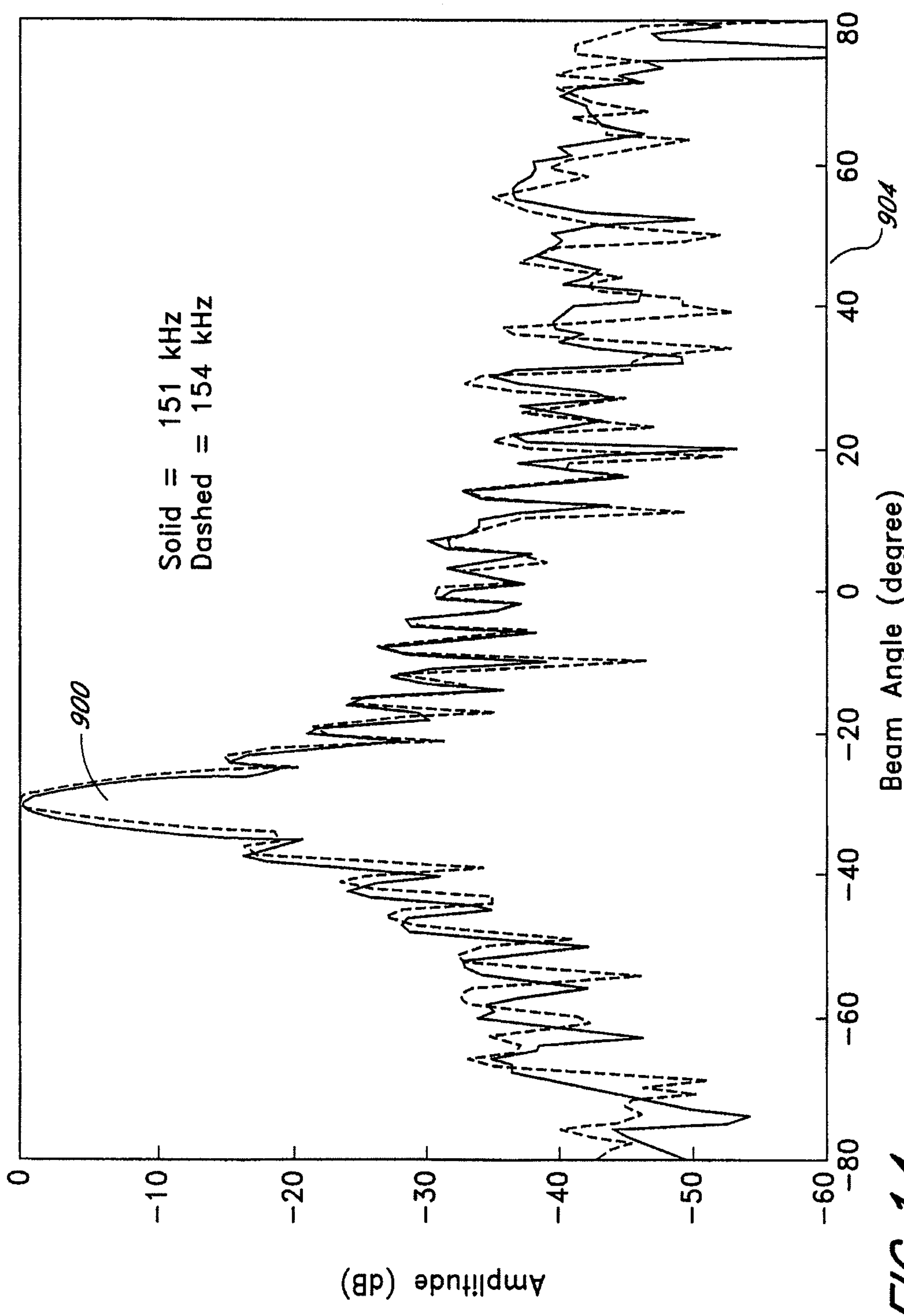

Solid = 151 kHz
Dashed = 154 kHz
900
904
Amplitude (dB)
0
−10
−20
−30
−40
−50
−60
Beam Angle (degree)
−80
−60
−40
−20
0
20
40
60
80

FIG. 14

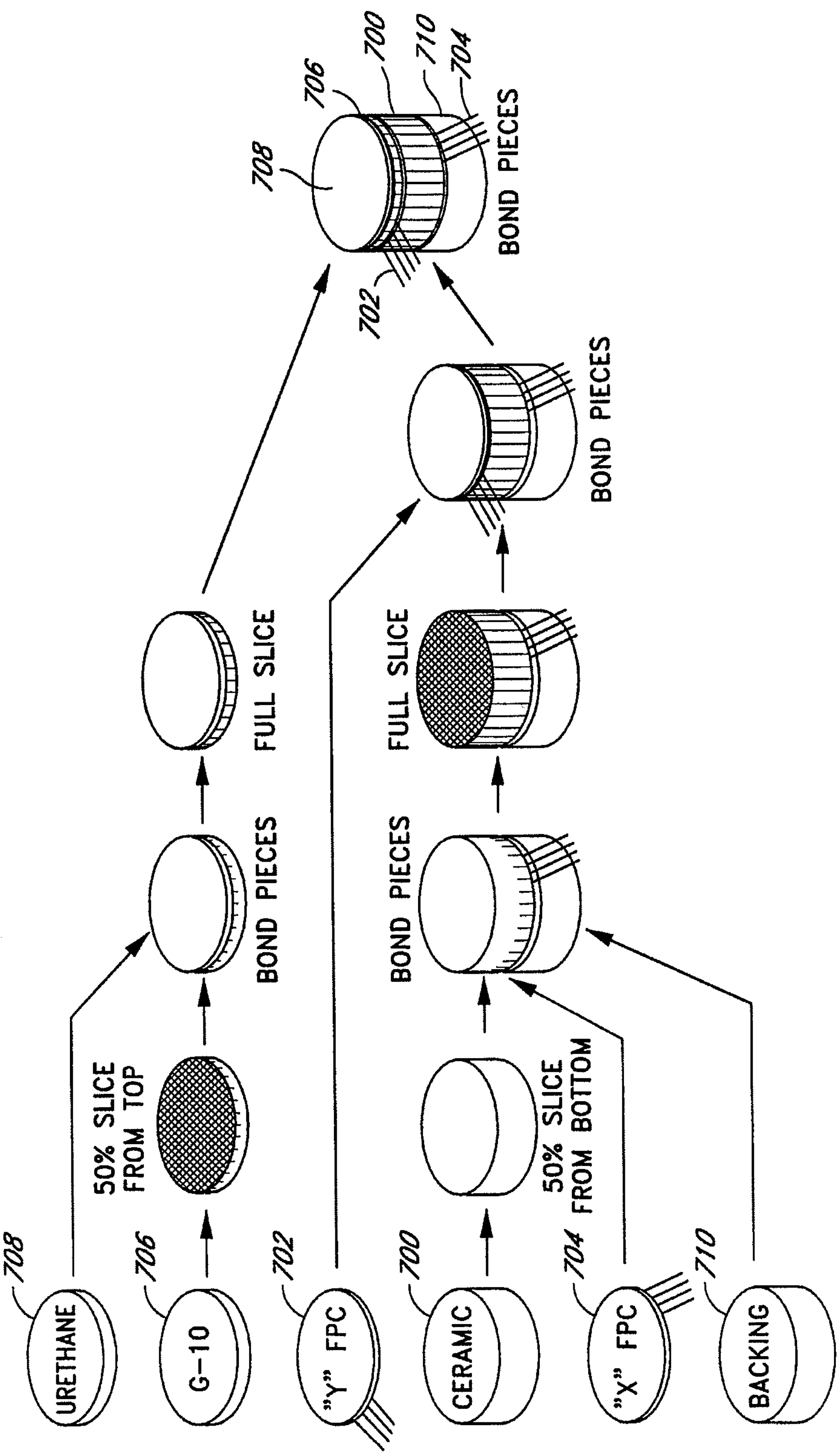

URETHANE
708
G-10
706
"Y" FPC
702
CERAMIC
700
"X" FPC
704
BACKING
710
50% SLICE FROM TOP
50% SLICE FROM BOTTOM
BOND PIECES
BOND PIECES
FULL SLICE
FULL SLICE
BOND PIECES
BOND PIECES
708
706
700
710
704
702

FIG. 15

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inten. ,nal Application No
PCT/US 97/18061

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 6 G01S15/60 G01S15/89

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 6 G01S G10K H04R B06B

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category ° | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| Y | US 5 550 792 A (CRANDALL F ANTHONY ET AL) 27 August 1996<br>see column 2, line 58 - column 3, line 24; figures 4,5,9<br>--- | 1-4,12, 23,35, 38,39 |
| Y | SHAULOV A ET AL: "BIPLANE PHASED ARRAY FOR ULTRASONIC MEDICAL IMAGING" PROCEEDINGS OF THE ULTRASONICS SYMPOSIUM, CHICAGO, OCT. 2 - 5, 1988, vol. 1, 2 October 1988, MCAVOY B R, pages 635-638, XP000077019<br>see page 635, right-hand column; figure 1<br>--- | 1-4 |
| Y | US 4 641 291 A (SIMMONS SR ROBERT L ET AL) 3 February 1987<br>cited in the application<br>see column 3 - column 4; figure 10<br>--- | 1-4,12, 23,35, 38,39 |
| | -/-- | |

[X] Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

[X] Patent family members are listed in annex.

° Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

2

| Date of the actual completion of the international search | Date of mailing of the international search report |
|---|---|
| 19 January 1998 | 28.01.98 |
| Name and mailing address of the ISA<br>European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk<br>Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,<br>Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | Authorized officer<br>Breusing, J |

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Inte, ..onal Application No
PCT/US 97/18061

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category ° | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| A | WO 92 05456 A (ROWE DEINES INSTR INC) 2 April 1992<br>see page 2, line 14 - page 11, line 1<br>& US 5 483 499 A<br>cited in the application<br>--- | 2,13,24, 39 |
| A | US 5 530 683 A (LINDBERG JAN F) 25 June 1996<br>see abstract; figures 3,4<br>--- | 1 |
| A | EP 0 524 749 A (TOKYO SHIBAURA ELECTRIC CO) 27 January 1993<br>see column 4, line 54 - column 5, line 10; figures 1,4<br>see column 7, line 20 - column 8, line 15<br>--- | 1,12,23, 35 |
| A | WO 95 06885 A (THOMSON CSF ;PERENNES MARC (FR)) 9 March 1995<br>see page 1, line 19 - page 2, line 15; figures 1-6<br>--- | 1 |
| A | GB 2 053 475 A (PHILIPS NV) 4 February 1981<br>see abstract; figure 1<br>--- | 4,15,26 |
| A | EP 0 383 270 A (HITACHI LTD) 22 August 1990<br>see column 2, line 28 - column 3, line 9; figure 1<br>--- | 1 |
| A | EP 0 616 231 A (INST BIOMEDIZINISCHE TECHNIK) 21 September 1994<br>see abstract; figure 2<br>----- | |

2

Form PCT/ISA/210 (continuation of second sheet) (July 1992)

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Inter. .onal Application No
PCT/US 97/18061

| Patent document cited in search report | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | Publication date |
|---|---|---|---|
| US 5550792 A | 27-08-96 | NONE | |
| US 4641291 A | 03-02-87 | NONE | |
| WO 9205456 A | 02-04-92 | AU 652699 B | 01-09-94 |
| | | AU 8758191 A | 15-04-92 |
| | | CA 2092564 A | 27-03-92 |
| | | DE 69126040 D | 12-06-97 |
| | | DE 69126040 T | 02-01-98 |
| | | EP 0573431 A | 15-12-93 |
| | | JP 6503163 T | 07-04-94 |
| | | US 5483499 A | 09-01-96 |
| | | US RE35535 E | 17-06-97 |
| | | US 5615173 A | 25-03-97 |
| | | US 5208785 A | 04-05-93 |
| US 5530683 A | 25-06-96 | NONE | |
| EP 0524749 A | 27-01-93 | DE 69213600 D | 17-10-96 |
| | | DE 69213600 T | 27-02-97 |
| | | JP 5228142 A | 07-09-93 |
| | | US 5327895 A | 12-07-94 |
| WO 9506885 A | 09-03-95 | FR 2709559 A | 10-03-95 |
| | | CA 2169935 A | 09-03-95 |
| | | DE 69402084 D | 17-04-97 |
| | | DE 69402084 T | 19-06-97 |
| | | EP 0716751 A | 19-06-96 |
| | | US 5694372 A | 02-12-97 |
| GB 2053475 A | 04-02-81 | FR 2460489 A | 23-01-81 |
| | | AU 537043 B | 31-05-84 |
| | | AU 5976580 A | 15-01-81 |
| | | BE 884155 A | 05-01-81 |
| | | CA 1146662 A | 17-05-83 |
| | | DE 3025168 A | 08-01-81 |
| | | JP 1342741 C | 14-10-86 |
| | | JP 56011374 A | 04-02-81 |
| | | JP 61006348 B | 25-02-86 |
| | | NL 8003770 A | 06-01-81 |

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

Alston & Bird

OCT 12 2010

Received By

From the INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

To:
Thorson, Chad L.
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
ETATS-UNIS D'AMERIQUE

**PCT**

**NOTIFICATION OF TRANSMITTAL OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT AND THE WRITTEN OPINION OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY, OR THE DECLARATION**

**(PCT Rule 44.1)**

| | |
|---|---|
| | Date of mailing *(day/month/year)* 6 October 2010 (06-10-2010) |
| Applicant's or agent's file reference 38495/388217 | **FOR FURTHER ACTION** See paragraphs 1 and 4 below |
| International application No. PCT/US2010/039443 | International filing date *(day/month/year)* 22 June 2010 (22-06-2010) |
| Applicant NAVICO, INC. | |

1. [X] The applicant is hereby notified that the international search report and the written opinion of the International Searching Authority have been established and are transmitted herewith.

   **Filing of amendments and statement under Article 19:**
   The applicant is entitled, if he so wishes, to amend the claims of the International Application (see Rule 46):

   **When?** The time limit for filing such amendments is normally two months from the date of transmittal of the International Search Report.

   **Where?** Directly to the International Bureau of WIPO, 34 chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland, Fascimile No.: (41-22) 338.82.70

   **For more detailed instructions,** see the notes on the accompanying sheet.

2. [ ] The applicant is hereby notified that no international search report will be established and that the declaration under Article 17(2)(a) to that effect and the written opinion of the International Searching Authority are transmitted herewith.

3. [ ] **With regard to any protest** against payment of (an) additional fee(s) under Rule 40.2, the applicant is notified that:

   [ ] the protest together with the decision thereon has been transmitted to the International Bureau together with the applicant's request to forward the texts of both the protest and the decision thereon to the designated Offices.

   [ ] no decision has been made yet on the protest; the applicant will be notified as soon as a decision is made.

4. **Reminders**

   Shortly after the expiration of **18 months** from the priority date, the international application will be published by the International Bureau. If the applicant wishes to avoid or postpone publication, a notice of withdrawal of the international application, or of the priority claim, must reach the International Bureau as provided in Rules 90*bis*.1 and 90*bis*.3, respectively, before the completion of the technical preparations for international publication.

   The applicant may submit comments on an informal basis on the written opinion of the International Searching Authority to the International Bureau. The International Bureau will send a copy of such comments to all designated Offices unless an international preliminary examination report has been or is to be established. These comments would also be made available to the public but not before the expiration of 30 months from the priority date.

   Within **19 months** from the priority date, but only in respect of some designated Offices, a demand for international preliminary examination must be filed if the applicant wishes to postpone the entry into the national phase **until 30 months** from the priority date (in some Offices even later); otherwise, the applicant must, **within 20 months** from the priority date, perform the prescribed acts for entry into the national phase before those designated Offices.

   In respect of other designated Offices, the time limit of **30 months** (or later) will apply even if no demand is filed within 19 months.

   See the Annex to Form PCT/IB/301 and, for details about the applicable time limits, Office by Office, see the *PCT Applicant's Guide*, National Chapters.

| Name and mailing address of the International Searching Authority | Authorized officer |
|---|---|
| European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL-2280 HV Rijswijk<br>Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040<br>Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | WALSH, Eric<br>Tel: +31 (0)70 340-3813 |

DOCKETED DUE DATE By Date 10-12-10

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

# PCT

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

| Applicant's or agent's file reference<br>38495/388217 | **FOR FURTHER ACTION** see Form PCT/ISA/220 as well as, where applicable, item 5 below. | |
|---|---|---|
| International application No.<br>PCT/US2010/039443 | International filing date *(day/month/year)*<br>22/06/2010 | (Earliest) Priority Date *(day/month/year)*<br>14/07/2009 |
| Applicant<br>NAVICO, INC. | | |

This international search report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This international search report consists of a total of 4 sheets.

[X] It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

1. **Basis of the report**
   a. With regard to the **language**, the international search was carried out on the basis of:
      [X] the international application in the language in which it was filed
      [ ] a translation of the international application into ____________, which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1(b))
   b. [ ] This international search report has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43.6*bis*(a)).
   c. [ ] With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, see Box No. I.
2. [ ] **Certain claims were found unsearchable** (See Box No. II)
3. [ ] **Unity of invention is lacking** (see Box No III)
4. With regard to the **title,**
   [X] the text is approved as submitted by the applicant
   [ ] the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:
5. With regard to the **abstract,**
   [X] the text is approved as submitted by the applicant
   [ ] the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box No. IV. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority
6. With regard to the **drawings,**
   a. the figure of the **drawings** to be published with the abstract is Figure No. 8a
      [ ] as suggested by the applicant
      [X] as selected by this Authority, because the applicant failed to suggest a figure
      [ ] as selected by this Authority, because this figure better characterizes the invention
   b. [ ] none of the figures is to be published with the abstract

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No
PCT/US2010/039443

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**
INV. G01S15/89 G01S15/96
ADD.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
G01S

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

| Category* | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| Y | WO 98/15846 A1 (ROWE DEINES INSTR INC [US]) 16 April 1998 (1998-04-16) figures 3,4 * abstract page 7, line 32 claim 1 | 1-99 |
| Y | US 3 618 006 A (WRIGHT CHARLES P) 2 November 1971 (1971-11-02) * abstract; figures 1,2 | 1-99 |
| A | US 5 184 330 A (ADAMS JAMES W [US] ET AL) 2 February 1993 (1993-02-02) figures 4,5,6 * abstract | 1 |

-/--

[X] Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.

[X] See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

| Date of the actual completion of the international search | Date of mailing of the international search report |
|---|---|
| 29 September 2010 | 06/10/2010 |

| Name and mailing address of the ISA/ | Authorized officer |
|---|---|
| European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL – 2280 HV Rijswijk<br>Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040,<br>Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016 | Alberga, Vito |

1

**C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

| Category* | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No. |
|---|---|---|
| A | US 4 879 697 A (LOWRANCE DARRELL J [US] ET AL) 7 November 1989 (1989-11-07)<br>figure 4<br>* abstract<br>----- | 1 |
| A | US 5 694 372 A (PERENNES MARC [FR]) 2 December 1997 (1997-12-02)<br>figures 1,2<br>* abstract<br>----- | 1 |

1

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

**Information on patent family members**

International application No
PCT/US2010/039443

| Patent document cited in search report | | Publication date | Patent family member(s) | | | Publication date |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| WO 9815846 | A1 | 16-04-1998 | AT | 236409 | T | 15-04-2003 |
| | | | DE | 69720483 | D1 | 08-05-2003 |
| | | | DE | 69720483 | T2 | 24-12-2003 |
| | | | EP | 0929825 | A1 | 21-07-1999 |
| | | | JP | 3995270 | B2 | 24-10-2007 |
| | | | JP | 2001502058 | T | 13-02-2001 |
| | | | JP | 4087430 | B2 | 21-05-2008 |
| | | | JP | 2007192830 | A | 02-08-2007 |
| | | | NO | 991555 | A | 04-06-1999 |
| | | | US | 5808967 | A | 15-09-1998 |
| US 3618006 | A | 02-11-1971 | NONE | | | |
| US 5184330 | A | 02-02-1993 | NONE | | | |
| US 4879697 | A | 07-11-1989 | NONE | | | |
| US 5694372 | A | 02-12-1997 | DE | 69402084 | D1 | 17-04-1997 |
| | | | DE | 69402084 | T2 | 19-06-1997 |
| | | | EP | 0716751 | A1 | 19-06-1996 |
| | | | FR | 2709559 | A1 | 10-03-1995 |
| | | | WO | 9506885 | A1 | 09-03-1995 |

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the
INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY

| To: | PCT |
|---|---|
| see form PCT/ISA/220 | WRITTEN OPINION OF THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY (PCT Rule 43*bis*.1) |
| | Date of mailing (*day/month/year*) see form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) |
| Applicant's or agent's file reference see form PCT/ISA/220 | **FOR FURTHER ACTION** See paragraph 2 below |

| International application No. | International filing date (*day/month/year*) | Priority date (*day/month/year*) |
|---|---|---|
| PCT/US2010/039443 | 22.06.2010 | 14.07.2009 |

International Patent Classification (IPC) or both national classification and IPC
INV. G01S15/89 G01S15/96

Applicant
NAVICO, INC.

1. This opinion contains indications relating to the following items:

- ☒ Box No. I Basis of the opinion
- ☐ Box No. II Priority
- ☐ Box No. III Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- ☐ Box No. IV Lack of unity of invention
- ☒ Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43*bis*.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- ☐ Box No. VI Certain documents cited
- ☒ Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application
- ☒ Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application

2. **FURTHER ACTION**

If a demand for international preliminary examination is made, this opinion will usually be considered to be a written opinion of the International Preliminary Examining Authority ("IPEA") except that this does not apply where the applicant chooses an Authority other than this one to be the IPEA and the chosen IPEA has notifed the International Bureau under Rule 66.1*bis*(b) that written opinions of this International Searching Authority will not be so considered.

If this opinion is, as provided above, considered to be a written opinion of the IPEA, the applicant is invited to submit to the IPEA a written reply together, where appropriate, with amendments, before the expiration of 3 months from the date of mailing of Form PCT/ISA/220 or before the expiration of 22 months from the priority date, whichever expires later.

For further options, see Form PCT/ISA/220.

3. For further details, see notes to Form PCT/ISA/220.

| Name and mailing address of the ISA: | Date of completion of this opinion | Authorized Officer |
|---|---|---|
| European Patent Office<br>P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2<br>NL-2280 HV Rijswijk - Pays Bas<br>Tel. +31 70 340 - 2040<br>Fax: +31 70 340 - 3016 | see form PCT/ISA/210 | Alberga, Vito<br>Telephone No. +31 70 340-2798 |

**Box No. I Basis of the opinion**

1. With regard to the **language**, this opinion has been established on the basis of:

   ☒ the international application in the language in which it was filed

   ☐ a translation of the international application into , which is the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international search (Rules 12.3(a) and 23.1 (b)).

2. ☐ This opinion has been established taking into account the **rectification of an obvious mistake** authorized by or notified to this Authority under Rule 91 (Rule 43bis.1(a))

3. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, this opinion has been established on the basis of a sequence listing filed or furnished:

   a. (means)

      ☐ on paper

      ☐ in electronic form

   b. (time)

      ☐ in the international application as filed

      ☐ together with the international application in electronic form

      ☐ subsequently to this Authority for the purposes of search

4. ☐ In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that in the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.

5. Additional comments:

**Box No. V Reasoned statement under Rule 43*bis*.1(a)(i) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement**

1. Statement

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Novelty (N) | Yes: | Claims | 1-99 |
| | No: | Claims | |
| Inventive step (IS) | Yes: | Claims | |
| | No: | Claims | 1-99 |
| Industrial applicability (IA) | Yes: | Claims | 1-99 |
| | No: | Claims | |

2. Citations and explanations

   **see separate sheet**

**Box No. VII Certain defects in the international application**

The following defects in the form or contents of the international application have been noted:

**see separate sheet**

**Box No. VIII Certain observations on the international application**

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:

**see separate sheet**

**Re Item V.**

1 References

Reference is made to the following documents:

D1 WO 98/15846 A1 (ROWE DEINES INSTR INC [US]) 16 April 1998 (1998-04-16)

D2 US 3 618 006 A (WRIGHT CHARLES P) 2 November 1971 (1971-11-02)

D3 US 5 184 330 A (ADAMS JAMES W [US] ET AL) 2 February 1993 (1993-02-02)

D4 US 4 879 697 A (LOWRANCE DARRELL J [US] ET AL) 7 November 1989 (1989-11-07)

D5 US 5 694 372 A (PERENNES MARC [FR]) 2 December 1997 (1997-12-02)

2 Independent claims 1, 32, 57 and 76

Further to a lack of clarity discussed below, the present application does not meet the criteria of Article 33(1) PCT, because the subject-matter of claims 1, 32, 57 and 76 does not involve an inventive step in the sense of Article 33(3) PCT.

2.1 The document D1 is regarded as being the closest prior art to the subject-matter of claim 1, and insofar as this claim can be understood, this document shows the following features thereof (the references in parentheses applying to this document):

a transducer array (abs.) comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements (fig.3), each one of the plurality of transducer elements having a substantially rectangular shape (pag. 7, l.32) configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the transducer elements that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements (fig.3 and 4), wherein the plurality of transducer elements are positioned such that longitudinal lengths of at least two of the plurality of transducer elements are substantially parallel to each other (fig.4), and wherein the plurality of transducer elements include at least:

i) a first linear transducer element to project sonar pulses in a first direction (fig.3),

ii) a second linear transducer element positioned to lie substantially in a plane with the first linear transducer element and to project sonar pulses in a second direction that is generally opposite of the first side (fig.3), and

iii) a third linear transducer element positioned to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to the plane (fig.3).

The subject-matter of claim 1 therefore differs from this known system in that the transducer elements are positioned within a housing.

The problem to be solved by the present invention may therefore be regarded as:

how to conveniently arrange the transducer elements of an array.

A housing is described in document D2 (see, e.g., fig.1) as providing the same advantages as in the present application. The skilled person would therefore regard it as a normal design option to include this feature in the system described in D1 in order to solve the problem posed.

Therefore, the subject-matter of independent claim 1 is not inventive in the sense of Article 33(3) PCT.

2.2 Claims 32, 57 and 76 appear to be just reformulations of claim 1. The objections raised in respect of this claim also apply, mutatis mutandis, to claims 32, 57 and 76. The subject-matter of independent claims 32, 57 and 76 is therefore not inventive (Article 33(3) PCT).

3 Dependent claims 2-31, 33-56, 58-75 and 77-99

3.1 Claims 2-31, 33-56, 58-75 and 77-99 are dependent on claims 1, 32, 57 and 76, respectively, and as such also do not meet the requirements of PCT with respect to inventive step (Article 33(3) PCT).

**Re Item VII.**

4

4.1 Contrary to the requirements of Rule 5.1(a)(ii) PCT, the relevant background art disclosed in documents D1, D2, D3, D4 and D5 is not mentioned in the description, nor are these documents identified therein.

4.2 Independent claims 1, 32, 57 and 76 are not in the two-part form in accordance with Rule 6.3(b) PCT, which in the present case would be appropriate, with those features known in combination from the prior art (document D1) being placed in the preamble (Rule 6.3(b)(I) PCT) and with the remaining features being included in the characterising part (Rule 6.3(b)(ii) PCT).

4.3 The features of the claims are not provided with reference signs placed in parentheses (Rule 6.2(b) PCT).

**Re Item VIII.**

5

5.1 Although claims 1, 32, 57 and 76 have been drafted as separate independent claims, they appear to relate effectively to the same subject-matter and to differ from each other only with regard to the definition of the subject-matter for which protection is sought and in respect of the terminology used for the features of that subject-matter. The aforementioned claims therefore lack conciseness and as such do not meet the requirements of Article 6 PCT.

5.2 Terms like "substantially", "significantly", "generally" used, e.g., in claim 1 and in several other claims, are unclear and leave the reader in doubt as to the meaning of the technical features to which they refer, thereby rendering the definition of the subject-matter of said claims unclear (Article 6 PCT).

# Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

| | |
|---|---|
| EFS ID: | 8723494 |
| Application Number: | 12460139 |
| International Application Number: | |
| Confirmation Number: | 9769 |
| Title of Invention: | Downscan imaging sonar |
| First Named Inventor/Applicant Name: | Brian T. Maguire |
| Customer Number: | 00826 |
| Filer: | Chad L. Thorson/Judy Creel |
| Filer Authorized By: | Chad L. Thorson |
| Attorney Docket Number: | 038495/369324 |
| Receipt Date: | 28-OCT-2010 |
| Filing Date: | 14-JUL-2009 |
| Time Stamp: | 15:25:51 |
| Application Type: | Utility under 35 USC 111(a) |

## Payment information:

| | |
|---|---|
| Submitted with Payment | no |

## File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | 369324IDS.PDF | 2493694<br>c8baf7194bfabf222808c93bcc1ace1026284b3e | yes | 54 |

| | Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **Document Description** | **Start** | **End** |
| | Transmittal Letter | 1 | 1 |
| | Information Disclosure Statement (IDS) Filed (SB/08) | 2 | 2 |
| | Foreign Reference | 3 | 43 |
| | NPL Documents | 44 | 54 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Total Files Size (in bytes):** | 2493694 |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**
**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**
**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**
**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

Attorney's Docket No. 038495/369324 PATENT

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| In re: | Brian T. Maguire | Confirmation No.: | 9769 |
| Appl No.: | 12/460,139 | Group Art Unit: | 3662 |
| Filed: | July 14, 2009 | | |
| For: | DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR | | |

Mail Stop Amendment
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

## INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT
## CITATION UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.97

Attached is a list of documents on form PTO-1449 along with a copy of any cited foreign patent documents and non-patent literature documents in accordance with 37 CFR 1.98(a)(2).

It is requested that the Examiner consider these documents and officially make them of record in accordance with the provisions of 37 C.F.R. § 1.97 and Section 609 of the MPEP. By identifying the listed documents, Applicant in no way makes any admission as to the prior art status of the listed documents, but is instead identifying the listed documents for the sake of full disclosure.

Respectfully submitted,

Chad L. Thorson
Registration No. 55,675

**Customer No. 00826**
**ALSTON & BIRD LLP**
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000
Fax Charlotte Office (704) 444-1111

**ELECTRONICALLY FILED USING THE EFS-WEB ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE ON OCTOBER 28, 2010.**

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NUMBER | FILING or 371(c) DATE | GRP ART UNIT | FIL FEE REC'D | ATTY.DOCKET.NO | TOT CLAIMS | IND CLAIMS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | 3662 | 5548 | 038495/369324 | 99 | 4 |

**CONFIRMATION NO. 9769**

**UPDATED FILING RECEIPT**

*OC000000037729243*

826
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

Date Mailed: 09/14/2009

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. **If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a Filing Receipt Correction. Please provide a copy of this Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" for this application, please submit any corrections to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections**

**Applicant(s)**

Brian T. Maguire, Broken Arrow, OK;

**Assignment For Published Patent Application**

Navico, Inc.

**Power of Attorney:** The patent practitioners associated with Customer Number 00826

**Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant**

**Foreign Applications**

Permission to Access - A proper **Authorization to Permit Access to Application by Participating Offices** (PTO/SB/39 or its equivalent) has been received by the USPTO.

**If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted:** 07/28/2009

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 12/460,139**

**Projected Publication Date:** 01/20/2011

**Non-Publication Request:** No

**Early Publication Request:** No

**Title**

Downscan imaging sonar

**Preliminary Class**

367

## PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, http://www.stopfakes.gov. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4158).

## LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

## Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

## Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

**GRANTED**

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign AssetsControl, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

**NOT GRANTED**

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

Attorney's Docket No. 038495/369324 PATENT

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| In re: | Maguire | | |
| Appl No.: | 12/460,139 | Confirmation No.: | 9769 |
| Filed: | July 14, 2009 | Group Art Unit: | 3662 |
| For: | DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR | | |

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

## RESPONSE TO NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF APPLICATION

In response to the Notice to File Missing Parts of Application dated July 30, 2009, enclosed are the following:

- ☒ Part 2 of Formalities Letter (not necessary when e-filing)
- ☒ Declaration and Power of Attorney for the above-identified application, which has been executed by the named inventor(s)
- ☐ Declaration of Inventors which has been executed by the named inventor(s) and an Assignee Power of Attorney
- ☐ Applicant claims small entity status
- ☐ Check in the amount of to cover the filing fee of and the surcharge under 37 C.F.R.§ 1.16(f)
- ☒ All fees are being authorized to be charged to Deposit Account No. 16-0605 when electronically filing
- ☐ English Translation and $130.00 (37 CFR 1.17(i)) fee for filing late.
- ☒ Other: Submittal of Corrected Drawings; 2 sheets of Drawings
- ☒ Any deficiency, additional fee, or credit may be charged to our Deposit Account No. 16-0605.

Respectfully submitted,

Chad L. Thorson
Registration No. 55,675

**Customer No. 00826**
**ALSTON & BIRD LLP**
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000
Fax Charlotte Office (704) 444-1111

**ELECTRONICALLY FILED USING THE EFS-WEB ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE ON September 1, 2009.**

LEGAL02/31481244v1

CT

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NUMBER | FILING OR 371(C) DATE | FIRST NAMED APPLICANT | ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | Brian T. Maguire | 038495/369324 |

**CONFIRMATION NO. 9769**

**FORMALITIES LETTER**

*OC000000037109973*

826
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

Alston & Bird
AUG 0 3 2009
Received by________

Date Mailed: 07/30/2009

## NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF NONPROVISIONAL APPLICATION

**FILED UNDER 37 CFR 1.53(b)**

***Filing Date Granted***

**Items Required To Avoid Abandonment:**

An application number and filing date have been accorded to this application. The item(s) indicated below, however, are missing. Applicant is given **TWO MONTHS** from the date of this Notice within which to file all required items and pay any fees required below to avoid abandonment. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

- The oath or declaration is missing.
  *A properly signed oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required.*
  *Note: If a petition under 37 CFR 1.47 is being filed, an oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63 signed by all available joint inventors, or if no inventor is available by a party with sufficient proprietary interest, is required.*

The application is informal since it does not comply with the regulations for the reason(s) indicated below.

The required item(s) identified below must be timely submitted to avoid abandonment:

- Replacement drawings in compliance with 37 CFR 1.84 and 37 CFR 1.121(d) are required. The drawings submitted are not acceptable because:
  - Numbers, letters, and reference characters on the drawings must measure at least 0.32 cm (1/8 inch) in height. See Figure(s) 15B.
  - The drawings submitted to the Office are not electronically reproducible because portions of figures 15A are missing and/or blurry.

Applicant is cautioned that correction of the above items may cause the specification and drawings page count to exceed 100 pages. If the specification and drawings exceed 100 pages, applicant will need to submit the required application size f

The applicant ne

The required iten

DOCKETED
DUE DATE
By [signature]
Date 8.3.09

• To avoid abandonment, a surcharge (for late submission of filing fee, search fee, examination fee or oath or declaration) as set forth in 37 CFR 1.16(f) of **$130** for a non-small entity, must be submitted with the missing items identified in this notice.

**SUMMARY OF FEES DUE:**

Total additional fee(s) required for this application is **$130** for a non-small entity

- **$130** Surcharge.

Replies should be mailed to:

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Registered users of EFS-Web may alternatively submit their reply to this notice via EFS-Web.
https://sportal.uspto.gov/authenticate/AuthenticateUserLocalEPF.html

For more information about EFS-Web please call the USPTO Electronic Business Center at **1-866-217-9197** or visit our website at http://www.uspto.gov/ebc.

If you are not using EFS-Web to submit your reply, you must include a copy of this notice.

/tnguyen/

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

## DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY FOR UTILITY OR DESIGN PATENT APPLICATION (37 CFR 1.63)

**I hereby declare that:** (1) Each inventor's residence, mailing address, and citizenship are as stated below next to their name; and (2) I believe the inventor(s) named below to be the original and first inventor(s) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

**DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR,**

the specification of which

☐ is attached hereto

OR

☒ was filed on July 14, 2009 as United States Application No. 12/460,139.

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above-identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in 37 CFR 1.56, including for continuation-in-part applications, material information which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of the continuation-in-part application.

**Authorization to Permit Access To Application by Participating Offices**

☒ If checked, the undersigned hereby grants the USPTO authority to provide the European Patent Office (EPO), the Japan Patent Office (JPO), the Korean Intellectual Property Office (KIPO), the World Intellectual Property Office (WIPO), and any other intellectual property offices in which a foreign application claiming priority to the above-identified application is filed access to the above-identified patent application. See 37 CFR 1.14(c) and (h). This box should not be checked if the applicant does not wish the EPO, JPO, or other intellectual property office in which a foreign application claiming priority to the above-identified application is filed to have access to the application.

In accordance with 37 CFR 1.14(h)(3), access will be provided to a copy of the application-as-filed with respect to: 1) the above-identified application, 2) any foreign application to which the above-identified application claims priority under 35 USC 119(a)-(d) if a copy of the foreign application that satisfies the certified copy requirement of 37 CFR 1.55 has been filed in the above-identified US application, and 3) any U.S. application from which benefit is sought in the above-identified application.

In accordance with 37 CFR 1.14(c), access may be provided to information concerning the date of filing the Authorization to Permit Access to Application by Participating Offices.

**Claim of Foreign Priority Benefits**

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under 35 U.S.C. 119(a)-(d) or (f), or 365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent, inventor's or plant breeder's rights certificate(s), or 365(a) of any PCT international application which designated at least one country other than the United States of America, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent, inventor's or plant breeder's rights certificate(s), or any PCT International application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

| Prior Foreign Application Number(s) | Country | Foreign Filing Date (MM/DD/YYYY) | Priority Not Claimed | Certified Copy Attached? | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Yes | No |
| None | | | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |
| | | | ☐ | ☐ | ☐ |

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under 18 U.S.C. 1001 and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the practitioners associated with the Customer Number provided below to prosecute this application and to transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith, and direct that all correspondence be addressed to that Customer Number:

**Customer Number 00826**

Direct telephone calls to:

Chad L. Thorson
Registration No. 55,675
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000
Fax Charlotte Office (704) 444-1111

Full name of sole inventor: **Brian T. Maguire**
Inventor's Signature: [signature] Date: 8/20/2009
Residence: Broken Arrow, Oklahoma
Citizenship: United States of America
Mailing Address: 4502 West Madison Pl.
Broken Arrow, Oklahoma 74012

LEGAL02/31399882v1



Atty Dkt: 038495/369324

Attorney's Docket No. 038495/369324 PATENT

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| In re: | Maguire | Confirmation No.: 9769 |
| Appl No.: | 12/460,139 | Group Art: 3662 |
| Filed: | July 14, 2009 | |
| For: | DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR | |

Mail Stop Amendment
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

## SUBMITTAL OF CORRECTED DRAWINGS UNDER 37 CFR § 1.85(c)

In response to the requirement for corrected drawings as set forth in Notice to File Missing Parts in the above application, there is enclosed herewith two (2) sheets of corrected drawings. It is requested that these figures be substituted for the originally filed Figs. 15A and 15B.

Respectfully submitted,

Chad L. Thorson
Registration No. 55,675

**Customer No. 00826**
**ALSTON & BIRD LLP**
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000
Fax Charlotte Office (704) 444-1111

**ELECTRONICALLY FILED USING THE EFS-WEB ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE ON September 1, 2009.**

LEGAL02/31490353v1

REPLACEMENT SHEET

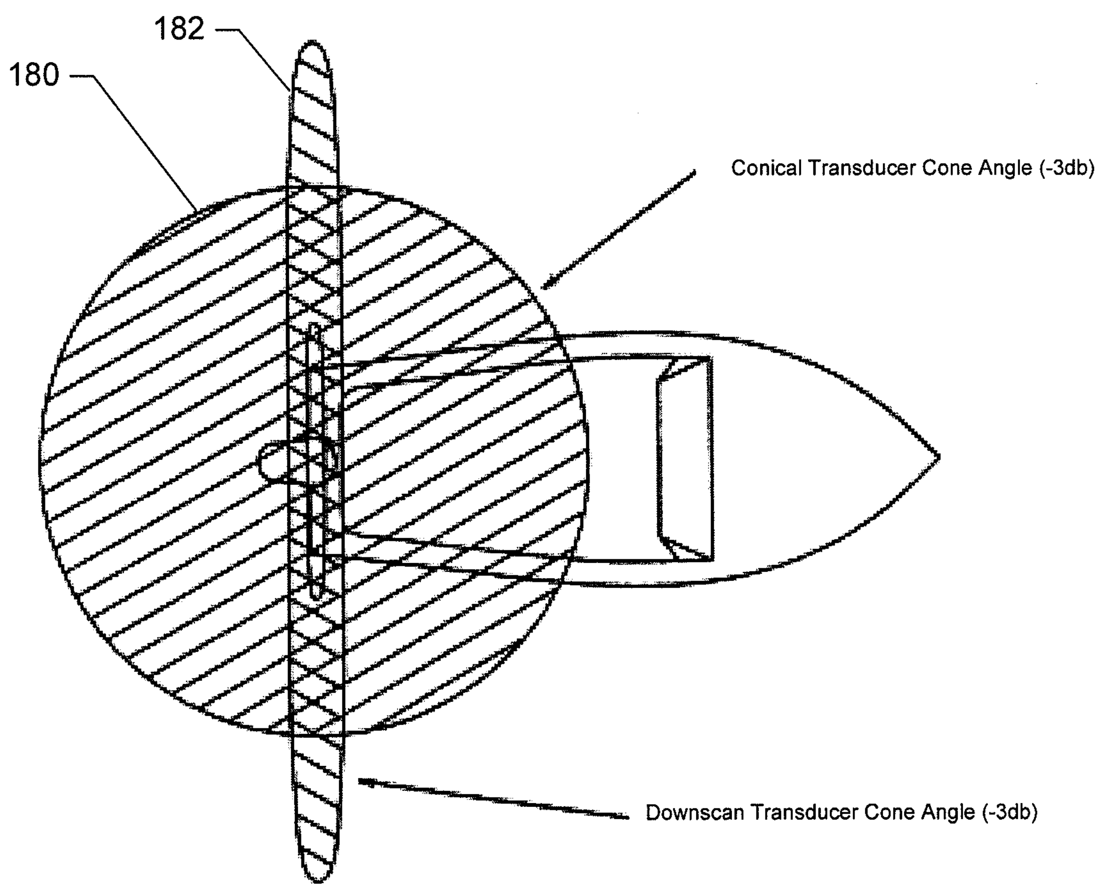



FIG. 15A.

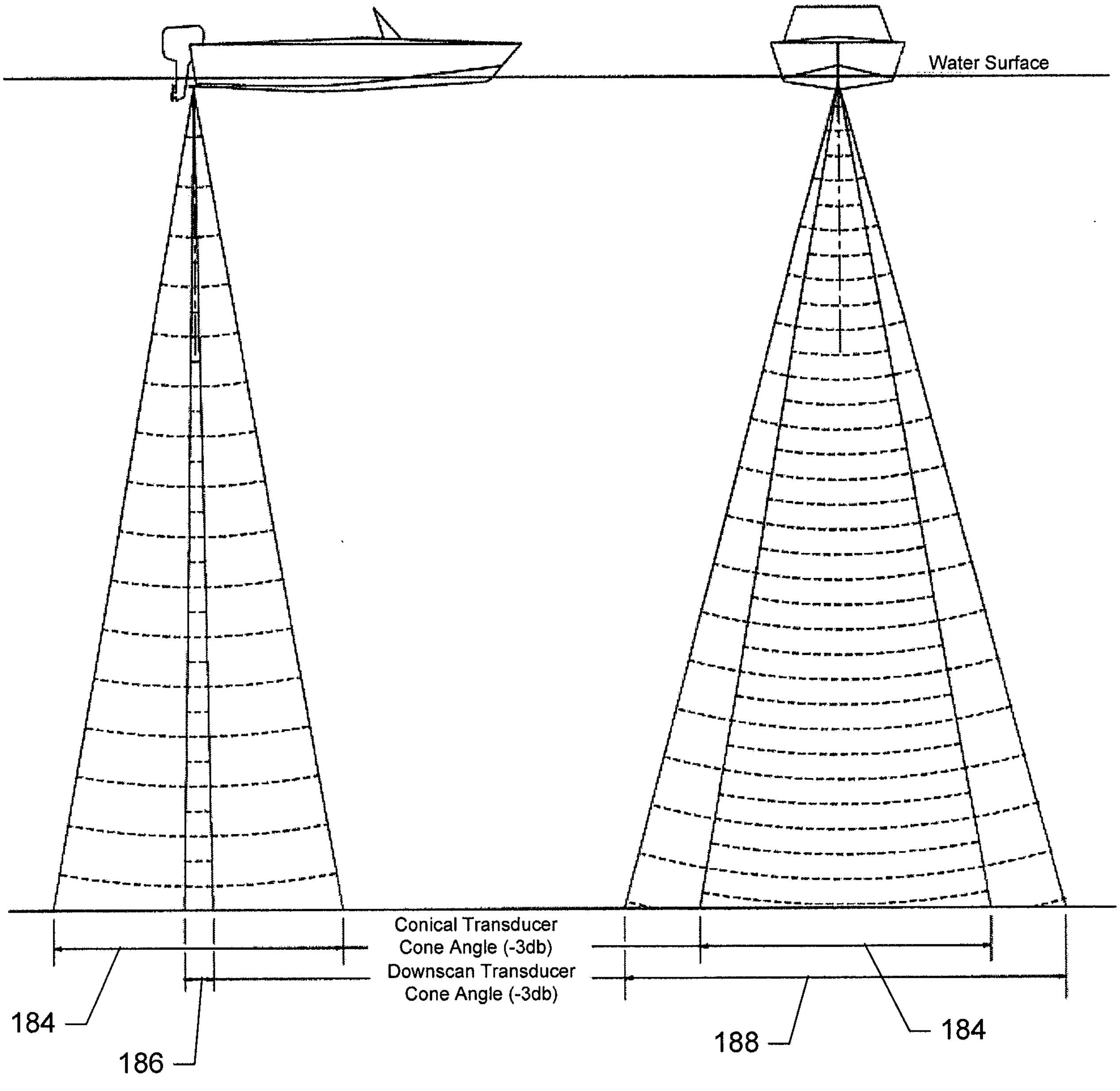

Water Surface
Conical Transducer
Cone Angle (-3db)
Downscan Transducer
Cone Angle (-3db)
184
186
188
184

FIG. 15B.

# Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal

| | |
|---|---|
| **Application Number:** | 12460139 |
| **Filing Date:** | 14-Jul-2009 |
| **Title of Invention:** | Downscan imaging sonar |
| **First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:** | Brian T. Maguire |
| **Filer:** | Christopher Jason Gegg/Joyce Smith |
| **Attorney Docket Number:** | 038495/369324 |

Filed as Large Entity

## Utility under 35 USC 111(a) Filing Fees

| Description | Fee Code | Quantity | Amount | Sub-Total in USD($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Basic Filing:** | | | | |
| **Pages:** | | | | |
| **Claims:** | | | | |
| **Miscellaneous-Filing:** | | | | |
| Late filing fee for oath or declaration | 1051 | 1 | 130 | 130 |
| **Petition:** | | | | |
| **Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:** | | | | |
| **Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:** | | | | |
| **Extension-of-Time:** | | | | |

| Description | Fee Code | Quantity | Amount | Sub-Total in USD($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Miscellaneous:** | | | | |
| | | **Total in USD ($)** | | **130** |

# Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

| | |
|---|---|
| **EFS ID:** | 5993220 |
| **Application Number:** | 12460139 |
| **International Application Number:** | |
| **Confirmation Number:** | 9769 |
| **Title of Invention:** | Downscan imaging sonar |
| **First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:** | Brian T. Maguire |
| **Customer Number:** | 00826 |
| **Filer:** | Christopher Jason Gegg/Joyce Smith |
| **Filer Authorized By:** | Christopher Jason Gegg |
| **Attorney Docket Number:** | 038495/369324 |
| **Receipt Date:** | 01-SEP-2009 |
| **Filing Date:** | 14-JUL-2009 |
| **Time Stamp:** | 14:52:58 |
| **Application Type:** | Utility under 35 USC 111(a) |

## Payment information:

| | |
|---|---|
| Submitted with Payment | yes |
| Payment Type | Deposit Account |
| Payment was successfully received in RAM | $130 |
| RAM confirmation Number | 954 |
| Deposit Account | 160605 |
| Authorized User | |

The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.16 (National application filing, search, and examination fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.20 (Post Issuance fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 C.F.R. Section 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

## File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | | RESP369324_20090901034420.pdf | 331353<br>42e75da9b2ff47e20458caf77e4c70cbeb37be74 | yes | 8 |

**Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description**

| Document Description | Start | End |
|---|---|---|
| Applicant Response to Pre-Exam Formalities Notice | 1 | 3 |
| Oath or Declaration filed | 4 | 5 |
| New or Additional Drawings | 6 | 6 |
| Drawings-only black and white line drawings | 7 | 8 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| Document Number | Document Description | File Name | File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | Fee Worksheet (PTO-875) | fee-info.pdf | 29807<br>07fb1a6a6275658a5d8df11bd94874e6272baf8b | no | 2 |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Total Files Size (in bytes):** | 361160 |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**
**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**
**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**
**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NUMBER | FILING OR 371(C) DATE | FIRST NAMED APPLICANT | ATTY. DOCKET NO./TITLE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | Brian T. Maguire | 038495/369324 |

**CONFIRMATION NO. 9769**

**FORMALITIES LETTER**

*OC000000037109973*

826
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

Date Mailed: 07/30/2009

# NOTICE TO FILE MISSING PARTS OF NONPROVISIONAL APPLICATION

## FILED UNDER 37 CFR 1.53(b)

***Filing Date Granted***

**Items Required To Avoid Abandonment:**

An application number and filing date have been accorded to this application. The item(s) indicated below, however, are missing. Applicant is given **TWO MONTHS** from the date of this Notice within which to file all required items and pay any fees required below to avoid abandonment. Extensions of time may be obtained by filing a petition accompanied by the extension fee under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a).

- The oath or declaration is missing.
  *A properly signed oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63, identifying the application by the above Application Number and Filing Date, is required.*
  *Note: If a petition under 37 CFR 1.47 is being filed, an oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63 signed by all available joint inventors, or if no inventor is available by a party with sufficient proprietary interest, is required.*

The application is informal since it does not comply with the regulations for the reason(s) indicated below.

The required item(s) identified below must be timely submitted to avoid abandonment:

- Replacement drawings in compliance with 37 CFR 1.84 and 37 CFR 1.121(d) are required. The drawings submitted are not acceptable because:
  - Numbers, letters, and reference characters on the drawings must measure at least 0.32 cm (1/8 inch) in height. See Figure(s) 15B.
  - The drawings submitted to the Office are not electronically reproducible because portions of figures 15A are missing and/or blurry.

Applicant is cautioned that correction of the above items may cause the specification and drawings page count to exceed 100 pages. If the specification and drawings exceed 100 pages, applicant will need to submit the required application size fee.

The applicant needs to satisfy supplemental fees problems indicated below.

The required item(s) identified below must be timely submitted to avoid abandonment:

- To avoid abandonment, a surcharge (for late submission of filing fee, search fee, examination fee or oath or declaration) as set forth in 37 CFR 1.16(f) of $**130** for a non-small entity, must be submitted with the missing items identified in this notice.

**SUMMARY OF FEES DUE:**

Total additional fee(s) required for this application is $**130** for a non-small entity

- $**130** Surcharge.

Replies should be mailed to:

Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Registered users of EFS-Web may alternatively submit their reply to this notice via EFS-Web.
https://sportal.uspto.gov/authenticate/AuthenticateUserLocalEPF.html

For more information about EFS-Web please call the USPTO Electronic Business Center at **1-866-217-9197** or visit our website at http://www.uspto.gov/ebc.

If you are not using EFS-Web to submit your reply, you must include a copy of this notice.

/tnguyen/

---

Office of Data Management, Application Assistance Unit (571) 272-4000, or (571) 272-4200, or 1-888-786-0101

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NUMBER | FILING or 371(c) DATE | GRP ART UNIT | FIL FEE REC'D | ATTY.DOCKET.NO | TOT CLAIMS | IND CLAIMS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12/460,139 | 07/14/2009 | 3662 | 5418 | 038495/369324 | 99 | 4 |

**CONFIRMATION NO. 9769**

**FILING RECEIPT**

*OC000000037109972*

826
ALSTON & BIRD LLP
BANK OF AMERICA PLAZA
101 SOUTH TRYON STREET, SUITE 4000
CHARLOTTE, NC 28280-4000

Date Mailed: 07/30/2009

Receipt is acknowledged of this non-provisional patent application. The application will be taken up for examination in due course. Applicant will be notified as to the results of the examination. Any correspondence concerning the application must include the following identification information: the U.S. APPLICATION NUMBER, FILING DATE, NAME OF APPLICANT, and TITLE OF INVENTION. Fees transmitted by check or draft are subject to collection. Please verify the accuracy of the data presented on this receipt. **If an error is noted on this Filing Receipt, please submit a written request for a Filing Receipt Correction. Please provide a copy of this Filing Receipt with the changes noted thereon. If you received a "Notice to File Missing Parts" for this application, please submit any corrections to this Filing Receipt with your reply to the Notice. When the USPTO processes the reply to the Notice, the USPTO will generate another Filing Receipt incorporating the requested corrections**

**Applicant(s)**

Brian T. Maguire, Residence Not Provided;

**Assignment For Published Patent Application**

Navico, Inc.

**Power of Attorney:** None

**Domestic Priority data as claimed by applicant**

**Foreign Applications**

**If Required, Foreign Filing License Granted:** 07/28/2009

The country code and number of your priority application, to be used for filing abroad under the Paris Convention, is **US 12/460,139**

**Projected Publication Date:** To Be Determined - pending completion of Missing Parts

**Non-Publication Request:** No

**Early Publication Request:** No

**Title**

Downscan imaging sonar

**Preliminary Class**

367

## PROTECTING YOUR INVENTION OUTSIDE THE UNITED STATES

Since the rights granted by a U.S. patent extend only throughout the territory of the United States and have no effect in a foreign country, an inventor who wishes patent protection in another country must apply for a patent in a specific country or in regional patent offices. Applicants may wish to consider the filing of an international application under the Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT). An international (PCT) application generally has the same effect as a regular national patent application in each PCT-member country. The PCT process **simplifies** the filing of patent applications on the same invention in member countries, but **does not result** in a grant of "an international patent" and does not eliminate the need of applicants to file additional documents and fees in countries where patent protection is desired.

Almost every country has its own patent law, and a person desiring a patent in a particular country must make an application for patent in that country in accordance with its particular laws. Since the laws of many countries differ in various respects from the patent law of the United States, applicants are advised to seek guidance from specific foreign countries to ensure that patent rights are not lost prematurely.

Applicants also are advised that in the case of inventions made in the United States, the Director of the USPTO must issue a license before applicants can apply for a patent in a foreign country. The filing of a U.S. patent application serves as a request for a foreign filing license. The application's filing receipt contains further information and guidance as to the status of applicant's license for foreign filing.

Applicants may wish to consult the USPTO booklet, "General Information Concerning Patents" (specifically, the section entitled "Treaties and Foreign Patents") for more information on timeframes and deadlines for filing foreign patent applications. The guide is available either by contacting the USPTO Contact Center at 800-786-9199, or it can be viewed on the USPTO website at http://www.uspto.gov/web/offices/pac/doc/general/index.html.

For information on preventing theft of your intellectual property (patents, trademarks and copyrights), you may wish to consult the U.S. Government website, http://www.stopfakes.gov. Part of a Department of Commerce initiative, this website includes self-help "toolkits" giving innovators guidance on how to protect intellectual property in specific countries such as China, Korea and Mexico. For questions regarding patent enforcement issues, applicants may call the U.S. Government hotline at 1-866-999-HALT (1-866-999-4158).

## LICENSE FOR FOREIGN FILING UNDER

## Title 35, United States Code, Section 184

## Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, 5.11 & 5.15

**GRANTED**

The applicant has been granted a license under 35 U.S.C. 184, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" followed by a date appears on this form. Such licenses are issued in all applications where the conditions for issuance of a license have been met, regardless of whether or not a license may be required as set forth in 37 CFR 5.15. The scope and limitations of this license are set forth in 37 CFR 5.15(a) unless an earlier license has been issued under 37 CFR 5.15(b). The license is subject to revocation upon written notification. The date indicated is the effective date of the license, unless an earlier license of similar scope has been granted under 37 CFR 5.13 or 5.14.

This license is to be retained by the licensee and may be used at any time on or after the effective date thereof unless it is revoked. This license is automatically transferred to any related applications(s) filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d). This license is not retroactive.

The grant of a license does not in any way lessen the responsibility of a licensee for the security of the subject matter as imposed by any Government contract or the provisions of existing laws relating to espionage and the national security or the export of technical data. Licensees should apprise themselves of current regulations especially with respect to certain countries, of other agencies, particularly the Office of Defense Trade Controls, Department of State (with respect to Arms, Munitions and Implements of War (22 CFR 121-128)); the Bureau of Industry and Security, Department of Commerce (15 CFR parts 730-774); the Office of Foreign AssetsControl, Department of Treasury (31 CFR Parts 500+) and the Department of Energy.

**NOT GRANTED**

No license under 35 U.S.C. 184 has been granted at this time, if the phrase "IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED" DOES NOT appear on this form. Applicant may still petition for a license under 37 CFR 5.12, if a license is desired before the expiration of 6 months from the filing date of the application. If 6 months has lapsed from the filing date of this application and the licensee has not received any indication of a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. 181, the licensee may foreign file the application pursuant to 37 CFR 5.15(b).

| UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL (Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b)) | Attorney Docket No. 038495/369324 |
|---|---|
| | First Inventor Brian T. Maguire |
| | Title DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR |
| | Express Mail Label No. EV339394134US |

ADDRESS TO: **COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS**
**P.O. BOX 1450**
**ALEXANDRIA, VA 22313-1450**

Transmitted herewith for filing in the United States Patent Office is a utility patent application.

Inventors: **Brian T. Maguire**
Assignee of this invention is **Navico, Inc.**

1. ☒ The Filing Fee has been calculated as shown below:
2. ☐ Applicant claims Small Entity Status. See 37 CFR 1.27.

| | No. Filed | No. Extra | Small Entity Rate | Small Entity Fee 0 | Large Entity Rate | Large Entity Fee 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| BASIC FEE | | | | $ 0 | | $ 330 |
| SEARCH FEE | | | | $ 0 | | $ 540 |
| EXAMINATION FEE | | | | $ 0 | | $ 220 |
| TOTAL CLAIMS: | 99 - 20 = | 79 | X 26 = | $ 0 | x 52 = | $ 4108 |
| INDEP CLAIMS: | 4 - 3 = | 1 | X 110 = | $ 0 | x 220 = | $ 220 |
| APPLICATION SIZE FEE | If the specification, drawings, and sequence listing exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $270 ($135 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. | | | | | |
| [☐]MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIMS PRESENTED | | | +195 = | $ | +390 = | $ |
| *If the difference in Column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in Column 2. | | | TOTAL | $ | TOTAL | $ 5,418 |

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to credit overpayments or charge the following fees to Deposit Acct. No. 16-0605.

a. ☒ Fees required under 37 CFR 1.16 (National filing fees).

b. ☒ Fees required under 37 CFR 1.17 (National application processing fees) including any extension of time fees under 37 CFR § 1.136(a) that are required for consideration of papers filed during prosecution.

☐ A check in the amount of $ ___ for the filing fee is enclosed.

☒ Commissioner is authorized to charge the application filing fees of $5,418.00 to Deposit Account No. 16-0605.

☐ The above filing fee will be paid along with Applicant(s) Response to the Notice to File Missing Parts.

3. ☒ Specification; Total Pages 37

4. ☒ 23 Sheets of Drawing(s) (35 USC 113)

5. ☐ Declaration and Power of Attorney; *[Total Pages ___]*

   a. ☐ Newly executed (original or copy)

b. ☐ Copy from a prior application (37 CFR 1.63(d))
*(for continuation/divisional with Box 18 completed)*
i. ☐ DELETION OF INVENTOR(S) Signed statement attached deleting inventor(s) named in the prior application, see 37 CFR 1.63(d)(2) & 1.33(b).

6. ☐ Application Data Sheet. See 37 CFR 1.76

7. ☐ CD-ROM or CD-R in duplicate, large table or Computer Program (Appendix)
☐ Landscape Table on CD

8. Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Submission (if applicable, all necessary)
a. ☐ Computer Readable Form (CRF)
b ☐ Request for Transfer of Computer Readable Form of Sequence Listing under 37 CFR § 1.821(e) and MPEP 2422.05 (must be compliant with new rules)
c. ☐ Specification Sequence Listing on:
i. ☐ CD-ROM or CD-R (2 copies); or
ii. ☐ Paper
iii. ☐ Electronic Text File Submission
d. ☐ Statements verifying identity of above copies

**ACCOMPANYING APPLICATION PARTS**

9. ☐ Assignment Papers (cover sheet & document(s) (including $40.00 fee)
Name of Assignee

10. ☐ 37 CFR 3.73(b) Statement and General Power of Attorney by Assignee. OR
☐ Application Specific Power of Attorney by Assignee

11. ☐ English Translation Document *(if applicable)*

12. ☐ Information Disclosure Statement (IDS)/PTO-1449; ___ Copies of IDS Citations

13. ☐ Preliminary Amendment

14. ☒ Return Receipt Postcard (MPEP 503) ; Patent Application Entitled "DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR," on behalf of Inventor Brian Maguire; 23 Sheets of Drawings (3 Sets Enclosed); Petition to Accept Color Drawings;

15. ☐ Certified Copy of Priority Document(s) *(if foreign priority is claimed)*
☐ Foreign Priority is claimed as Application No. , filed

16. ☐ Nonpublication Request under 35 U.S.C. 122(b)(2)(B)(i).
Applicant **must** attach form PTO/SB35 or its equivalent.

17. ☒ Other: Petition to Accept Color Drawings Under 37 C.F.R.§ 1.84(a)(2)

18. **If a CONTINUING APPLICATION,** *check appropriate box and supply the requisite information below and in a preliminary amendment, or in an Application Data Sheet under 37 CFR 1.76:*
☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation in Part (CIP)

of prior Application No: ___; Filed

Prior Application Information: Examiner Group/Art Unit:

For CONTINUATION or DIVISIONAL APPS only: The entire disclosure of the prior application, from which an oath or declaration is supplied under Box 5b, is considered a part of the disclosure of the accompanying continuation or divisional application and is hereby incorporated by reference. The incorporation can only be relied upon when a portion has been inadvertently omitted from the submitted application parts.

19. **CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS** **CUSTOMER NUMBER 00826**

Signature: [signature]

Attorney/Agent of Record: Chad L. Thorson
Attorney/Agent Registration No. 55,675
**Alston & Bird LLP**
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000

Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000
Fax Charlotte Office (704) 444-1111

"Express Mail" mailing label number EV339394134US
Date of Deposit July 14, 2009
I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

[signature]
Linda R. Shaver

ELECTRONICALLY FILED USING THE EFS-WEB ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE ON **July 14, 2009.**

071409

| UTILITY PATENT APPLICATION TRANSMITTAL (Only for new nonprovisional applications under 37 CFR 1.53(b)) | Attorney Docket No. 038495/369324 |
|---|---|
| | First Inventor Brian T. Maguire |
| | Title DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR |
| | Express Mail Label No. EV339394134US |

ADDRESS TO: **COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS**
**P.O. BOX 1450**
**ALEXANDRIA, VA 22313-1450**

Transmitted herewith for filing in the United States Patent Office is a utility patent application.

Inventors: **Brian T. Maguire**
Assignee of this invention is **Navico, Inc.**

1. ☒ The Filing Fee has been calculated as shown below:
2. ☐ Applicant claims Small Entity Status. See 37 CFR 1.27.

| | No. Filed | No. Extra | Small Entity Rate | Small Entity Fee 0 | Large Entity Rate | Large Entity Fee 1 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| BASIC FEE | | | | $ 0 | | $ 330 |
| SEARCH FEE | | | | $ 0 | | $ 540 |
| EXAMINATION FEE | | | | $ 0 | | $ 220 |
| TOTAL CLAIMS: | 99 - 20 = | 79 | X 26 = | $ 0 | x 52 = | $ 4108 |
| INDEP CLAIMS: | 4 - 3 = | 1 | X 110 = | $ 0 | x 220 = | $ 220 |
| APPLICATION SIZE FEE | If the specification, drawings, and sequence listing exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $270 ($135 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. | | | | | |
| [☐]MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIMS PRESENTED | | | +195 = | $ | +390 = | $ |
| *If the difference in Column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in Column 2. | | | TOTAL | $ | TOTAL | $ 5,418 |

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to credit overpayments or charge the following fees to Deposit Acct. No. 16-0605.

a. ☒ Fees required under 37 CFR 1.16 (National filing fees).
b. ☒ Fees required under 37 CFR 1.17 (National application processing fees) including any extension of time fees under 37 CFR § 1.136(a) that are required for consideration of papers filed during prosecution.

☐ A check in the amount of $ ___ for the filing fee is enclosed.
☒ Commissioner is authorized to charge the application filing fees of $5,418.00 to Deposit Account No. 16-0605.
☐ The above filing fee will be paid along with Applicant(s) Response to the Notice to File Missing Parts.

3. ☒ Specification; Total Pages 37
4. ☒ 23 Sheets of Drawing(s) (35 USC 113)
5. ☐ Declaration and Power of Attorney; *[Total Pages ___]*
   a. ☐ Newly executed (original or copy)

b. ☐ Copy from a prior application (37 CFR 1.63(d))
*(for continuation/divisional with Box 18 completed)*
i. ☐ DELETION OF INVENTOR(S) Signed statement attached deleting inventor(s) named in the prior application, see 37 CFR 1.63(d)(2) & 1.33(b).

6. ☐ Application Data Sheet. See 37 CFR 1.76

7. ☐ CD-ROM or CD-R in duplicate, large table or Computer Program (Appendix)
☐ Landscape Table on CD

8. Nucleotide and/or Amino Acid Sequence Submission (if applicable, all necessary)
a. ☐ Computer Readable Form (CRF)
b ☐ Request for Transfer of Computer Readable Form of Sequence Listing under 37 CFR § 1.821(e) and MPEP 2422.05 (must be compliant with new rules)
c. ☐ Specification Sequence Listing on:
i. ☐ CD-ROM or CD-R (2 copies); or
ii. ☐ Paper
iii. ☐ Electronic Text File Submission
d. ☐ Statements verifying identity of above copies

**ACCOMPANYING APPLICATION PARTS**

9. ☐ Assignment Papers (cover sheet & document(s) (including $40.00 fee)
Name of Assignee

10. ☐ 37 CFR 3.73(b) Statement and General Power of Attorney by Assignee. OR
☐ Application Specific Power of Attorney by Assignee

11. ☐ English Translation Document *(if applicable)*

12. ☐ Information Disclosure Statement (IDS)/PTO-1449; ___ Copies of IDS Citations

13. ☐ Preliminary Amendment

14. ☒ Return Receipt Postcard (MPEP 503) ; Patent Application Entitled "DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR," on behalf of Inventor Brian Maguire; 23 Sheets of Drawings (3 Sets Enclosed); Petition to Accept Color Drawings;

15. ☐ Certified Copy of Priority Document(s) *(if foreign priority is claimed)*
☐ Foreign Priority is claimed as Application No. , filed

16. ☐ Nonpublication Request under 35 U.S.C. 122(b)(2)(B)(i).
Applicant **must** attach form PTO/SB35 or its equivalent.

17. ☒ Other: Petition to Accept Color Drawings Under 37 C.F.R.§ 1.84(a)(2)

18. **If a CONTINUING APPLICATION,** *check appropriate box and supply the requisite information below and in a preliminary amendment, or in an Application Data Sheet under 37 CFR 1.76:*
☐ Continuation ☐ Divisional ☐ Continuation in Part (CIP)

of prior Application No: ___; Filed

Prior Application Information: Examiner Group/Art Unit:

For CONTINUATION or DIVISIONAL APPS only: The entire disclosure of the prior application, from which an oath or declaration is supplied under Box 5b, is considered a part of the disclosure of the accompanying continuation or divisional application and is hereby incorporated by reference. The incorporation <u>can only</u> be relied upon when a portion has been inadvertently omitted from the submitted application parts.

19. **CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS** **CUSTOMER NUMBER 00826**

Signature: ______________________

Attorney/Agent of Record: Chad L. Thorson
Attorney/Agent Registration No. 55,675
**Alston & Bird LLP**
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000
Fax Charlotte Office (704) 444-1111

"Express Mail" mailing label number EV339394134US
Date of Deposit July 14, 2009
I hereby certify that this paper or fee is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

______________________
Linda R. Shaver

ELECTRONICALLY FILED USING THE EFS-WEB ELECTRONIC FILING SYSTEM OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE ON **July 14, 2009.**

PATENT

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Appl. No.: | TBD | Confirmation No.: | TBD |
| Applicant(s): | Brian Maguire | | |
| Filed: | Concurrently Herewith | | |
| Art Unit: | TBD | | |
| Examiner: | TBD | | |
| Title: | DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR | | |

Docket No.: 038495/369324
Customer No.: 00826

Mail Stop Petition
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**PETITION TO ACCEPT COLOR DRAWINGS UNDER 37 C.F.R § 1.84(a)(2)**

1. Applicant hereby petitions, in accordance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.84(a)(2), to have color drawings accepted in connection with the above-referenced patent application.

2. Applicant respectfully submits that color drawings are the only practical medium by which to disclose the subject matter sought to be patented in the above-referenced patent application. In this regard, Applicant respectfully submits that certain aspects of the display produced by embodiments of the above-referenced patent application can only be fully understood and appreciated when color representations of the display are viewed. In particular, FIGS. 10, 12A, 12B, 12C, 13A, 13B and 13C show details of display characteristics that exemplify the subject matter sought to be patented in a way that cannot be appreciated in black-and-white drawings.

3. Applicants have included with this petition three (3) sets of color drawings including FIGS. 10, 12A, 12B, 12C, 13A, 13B and 13C as required under 37 C.F.R. 1.84(a)(2)(ii).

07/15/2009 HVUONG1 00000042 160605 12460139

06 FC:1464 130.00 DA

4. Applicants have included in the specification, as the first paragraph of the brief description of the drawings, the following language as required under 37 C.F.R. 1.84(a)(2)(iii):

   "The patent or application file contains at least one drawing executed in color. Copies of this patent or patent application publication with color drawing(s) will be provided by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office upon request and payment of the necessary fee."

4. The surcharge fee set forth in § 1.17(h) required by 37 C.F.R. 1.84(a)(2)(i), is paid as follows:

   ☐ check in the amount of $130.00

   ☒ Charge Deposit Account 16-0605 the $130.00

   ☒ Charge any additional fees required by this paper or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account 16-0605.

Respectfully submitted,

Chad L. Thorson
Registration No. 55,675

**Customer No. 000067141**
**ALSTON & BIRD LLP**
Bank of America Plaza
101 South Tryon Street, Suite 4000
Charlotte, NC 28280-4000
Tel Charlotte Office (704) 444-1000
Fax Charlotte Office (704) 444-1111

LEGAL02/31404417v1

# DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR

## FIELD OF THE INVENTION

**[0001]** Embodiments of the present invention relate generally to sonar systems, and more particularly, to providing a downscan imaging sonar using a linear transducer.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

**[0002]** Sonar has long been used to detect waterborne or underwater objects. For example, sonar devices may be used to determine depth and bottom topography, detect fish or other waterborne contacts, locate wreckage, etc. In this regard, due to the extreme limits to visibility underwater, sonar is typically the most accurate way for individuals to locate objects underwater. Devices such as transducer elements, or simply transducers, have been developed to produce sound or vibrations at a particular frequency that is transmitted into and through the water and also to detect echo returns from the transmitted sound that return to the transducer after reflecting off an object. The transducers can convert electrical energy into sound energy and also convert sound energy (e.g., via detected pressure changes) into an electrical signal, although some transducers may act only as a hydrophone for converting sound energy into an electrical signal without having a transmitting capability. The transducers are often made using piezoelectric materials.

**[0003]** A typical transducer produces a beam pattern that emanates as a sound pressure signal from a small source such that the sound energy generates a pressure wave that expands as it moves away from the source. For instance, a circular transducer (e.g., a cylindrical shaped crystal with a circular face) typically creates a conical shaped beam with the apex of the cone being located at the source. Any reflected sound then returns to the transducer to form a return signal that may be interpreted as a surface of an object. Such transducers have often been directed in various directions from surfaced or submerged vessels in order to attempt to locate other vessels and/or the seabed for the purposes of navigation and/or target location.

**[0004]** Since the development of sonar, display technology has also been improved in order to enable better interpretation of sonar data. Strip chart recorders and other mechanical output devices have been replaced by, for example, digital displays such as LCDs (liquid crystal displays). Current display technologies continue to be improved in order to provide, for example, high quality sonar data on multi-color, high resolution displays having a more intuitive output than early sonar systems were capable of producing.

[0005] With display capabilities advancing to the point at which richly detailed information is able to be displayed, attention has turned back to the transducer in order to provide higher quality data for display. Furthermore, additional uses have been developed for sonar systems as transducer and display capabilities have evolved. For example, sonar systems have been developed to assist fishermen in identifying fish and/or the features that tend to attract fish. Historically, these types of sonar systems primarily analyzed the column of water beneath a watercraft with a cylindrical piezo element that produces a conical beam, known as a conical beam transducer or simply as a circular transducer referring to the shape of the face of the cylindrical element. However, with the advent of sidescan sonar technology, fishermen were given the capability to view not only the column of water beneath their vessel, but also view water to either side of their vessel.

[0006] Sidescan sonar can be provided in different ways and with different levels of resolution. As its name implies, sidescan sonar is directed to look to the side of a vessel and not below the vessel. In fact, many sidescan sonar systems (e.g., swath and bathymetry sonar systems) have drawn public attention for their performance in the location of famous shipwrecks and for providing very detailed images of the ocean floor, but such systems are costly and complex. Sidescan sonar typically generates a somewhat planar fan-shaped beam pattern that is relatively narrow in beamwidth in a direction parallel to the keel of a vessel deploying the sidescan sonar and is relatively wide in beamwidth in a direction perpendicular to the keel of the vessel. It may be provided in some cases using multibeam sonar systems. Such multibeam sonar systems are typically comprised of a plurality of relatively narrowly focused conventional circular transducer elements that are arrayed next to each other to produce an array of narrowly focused adjacent conical beams that together provide a continuous fan shaped beam pattern. FIG. 1 shows an example of a series of conventional (generally circular) transducer elements 10 arrayed in an arc to produce a multibeam sonar system. FIG. 2 shows a typical fan shaped beam pattern 12 produced by the multibeam sonar system of FIG. 1 as the beam pattern is projected onto the seabed.

[0007] However, multibeam sonar systems typically require very complex systems to support the plurality of transducers that are employed in order to form the multibeam sonar system. For example, a typical system diagram is shown in FIG. 3, which includes a display 20 driven by a sonar signal processor 22. The sonar signal processor 22 processes signals received from each of a plurality of transducers 26 that are fed to the sonar signal processor 22 by respective different transceivers 24 that are paired with each of the transducers 26. Thus, conventional multibeam sonar systems tend to include a large number of transceivers and correspondingly introduce complexity in relation to processing the data such systems produce.

[0008] More recently, ceramic sidescan transducer elements have been developed that enable the production of a fan shaped sonar beam directed to one side of a vessel. Accordingly, the sea floor on both sides of the vessel can be covered with two elements facing on opposite sides of the vessel. These types of sidescan transducer elements are linear, rather than cylindrical, and provide a somewhat planar fan-shaped beam pattern using a single transducer to provide sidescan sonar images without utilizing the multibeam array described above. However, employment of these types of sidescan elements typically leaves the column of water beneath the vessel either un-monitored, or monitored using conical beam or circular transducers. In this regard, FIG. 4 illustrates an example of a conventional sidescan sonar with linear sidescan transducer elements oriented to produce fan-shaped beams 27 directed from opposite sides of the vessel and a conical beam 28 projecting directly below the vessel. These conical beams have conventionally been provided using conventional cylindrical transducers to produce depth information since sidescan transducers are typically not as useful for providing depth or water column feature information, such as fish targets. However, cylindrical transducers provide poor quality images for sonar data relating to the structure on the bottom or in the water column directly below the vessel.

[0009] Accordingly, it may be desirable to develop a sonar system that is capable of providing an improved downscan imaging sonar.

## BRIEF SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[0010] Accordingly, embodiments of the present invention employ a linear transducer, directed downward to receive high quality images relative to the water column and bottom features directly beneath the linear transducer and the vessel on which the linear transducer is employed. Some other embodiments, in addition to the use of a linear transducer directed downward, also employ at least one sidescan transducer element (e.g., a linear transducer oriented away from the side of the vessel) to ensonify (e.g., emit sonar pulses and detect echo returns) the sea floor on the sides of a vessel. Accordingly, better quality sonar images may be provided for the water column and bottom features beneath the vessel, of a quality that was unavailable earlier. Moreover, embodiments of the present invention may simplify the processing involved in producing high quality sonar images.

[0011] In one exemplary embodiment, a transducer array is provided. The transducer array may include a housing and a linear transducer element. The housing may be mountable to a watercraft capable of traversing a surface of a body of water. The linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing and may have a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer element. The linear transducer element may also be positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface.

**[0012]** In another exemplary embodiment, a transducer array is provided. The transducer array may include a plurality of transducer elements and each one of the plurality of transducer elements may include a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the transducer elements that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements. The plurality of transducer elements may be positioned such that longitudinal lengths of at least two of the plurality of transducer elements are parallel to each other. The plurality of transducer elements may also include at least a first linear transducer element, a second linear transducer element and a third linear transducer element. The first linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses from a first side of the housing in a direction generally perpendicular to a centerline of the housing. The second linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to lie in a plane with the first linear transducer element and project sonar pulses from a second side of the housing that is generally opposite of the first side. The third linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction generally perpendicular to the plane.

**[0013]** In another exemplary embodiment, a sonar system is provided. The sonar system may include a transducer array and a sonar module. The transducer array may include a plurality of transducer elements and each one of the plurality of transducer elements may include a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the transducer elements that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements. The plurality of transducer elements may be positioned such that longitudinal lengths of at least two of the plurality of transducer elements are parallel to each other. The plurality of transducer elements may also include at least a first linear transducer element, a second linear transducer element and a third linear transducer element. The first linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses from a first side of the housing in a direction generally perpendicular to a centerline of the housing. The second linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to lie in a plane with the first linear transducer element and project sonar pulses from a second side of the housing that is generally opposite of the first side. The third linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction generally perpendicular to the plane. The sonar module may be configured to enable operable communication with the transducer array. The sonar module may include a sonar signal processor configured to process sonar return signals received via the transducer array, and a transceiver configured to provide communication between the transducer array and the sonar signal processor.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE SEVERAL VIEWS OF THE DRAWING(S)

**[0014]** The patent or application file contains at least one drawing executed in color. Copies of this patent or patent application publication with color drawing(s) will be provided by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office upon request and payment of the necessary fee.

**[0015]** Having thus described the invention in general terms, reference will now be made to the accompanying drawings, which are not necessarily drawn to scale, and wherein:

**[0016]** FIG. 1 is a diagram illustrating an example of a series of conventional transducer elements 10 arrayed to produce a multibeam sonar system;

**[0017]** FIG. 2 illustrates a fan shaped beam pattern produced by the conventional multibeam sonar system of FIG. 1 as the beam pattern is projected onto the seabed;

**[0018]** FIG. 3 is a block diagram of a conventional multibeam sonar system for the system shown in FIG. 1;

**[0019]** FIG. 4 is a diagram illustrating a conventional sidescan sonar system;

**[0020]** FIG. 5 is a basic block diagram illustrating a sonar system according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

**[0021]** FIG. 6 is a diagram illustrating a more detailed view of a transducer array according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

**[0022]** FIG. 7A illustrates a side view showing a beam pattern produced by the transducer array according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

**[0023]** FIG. 7B illustrates a top view showing a beam pattern produced by the transducer array according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

**[0024]** FIG. 8A is a diagram illustrating a cross section of components in a containment volume of a housing according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0025] FIG. 8B is a diagram illustrating a cross section of components in a containment volume of a housing according to another exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0026] FIG. 9A shows an example of beam coverage for an 800 kHz operating frequency in one exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0027] FIG. 9B shows an example of beam coverage for a 455 kHz operating frequency in one exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0028] FIG. 10A illustrates a projection, onto a substantially flat sea bed, of the beam pattern of an exemplary transducer array providing gaps between fan shaped beams produced by a transducer array in which transducer elements are positioned to provide coplanar beams with gaps therebetween according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0029] FIG. 10B illustrates a projection, onto a substantially flat sea bed, of the beam pattern of an exemplary transducer array providing gaps between the fan shaped beams produced by a transducer array in which the transducer elements are positioned to provide gaps with planar separation therebetween according to another exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0030] FIG. 11A shows an example of a view of the beam coverage associated with the exemplary embodiment of FIG. 9A in which the beam coverage is extended to the bottom of a flat bottomed body of water according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0031] FIG. 11B illustrates example sidescan images that may be produced based on data from sidescan beams shown in FIG. 11A according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0032] FIG. 11C illustrates example linear downscan images that may be produced based on data from linear downscan beams shown in FIG. 11A according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0033] FIG. 12A illustrates example sidescan images that may be produced based on data from sidescan beams;

[0034] FIG. 12B illustrates a side-by-side comparison of images produced by a downscan linear transducer element according to an exemplary embodiment and a corresponding conical downscan image;

[0035] FIG. 12C illustrates another side-by-side comparison of images produced by a downscan linear transducer element according to an exemplary embodiment and a corresponding conical downscan image;

[0036] FIG. 12D illustrates still another side-by-side comparison of images produced by a downscan linear transducer element according to an exemplary embodiment and a corresponding conical downscan image;

[0037] FIG. 12E illustrates yet another side-by-side comparison of images produced by a downscan linear transducer element according to an exemplary embodiment and a corresponding conical downscan image;

[0038] FIG. 12F illustrates yet still another side-by-side comparison of images produced by a downscan linear transducer element according to an exemplary embodiment and a corresponding conical downscan image;

[0039] FIG. 13A is a diagram illustrating an example of a sea bottom structure viewed through a linear downscan transducer element according to an exemplary embodiment;

[0040] FIG. 13B is a diagram illustrating an example of a fan shaped beam from a linear downscan transducer compared to a conical beam from a cylindrical transducer for the sea bottom structure illustrated in FIG. 13A according to an exemplary embodiment;

[0041] FIG. 14 is a basic block diagram illustrating a sonar system according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0042] FIG. 15A illustrates an example of a top view of the beam overlap that may occur in situations where a linear downscan transducer and a circular downscan transducer are employed according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0043] FIG. 15B shows side views of the same beam overlap shown in FIG. 15A from the starboard side of a vessel and from ahead of the bow of the vessel according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0044] FIG. 16A is a diagram showing a perspective view of a linear downscan transducer and a circular downscan transducer within a single housing from a point above the housing according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0045] FIG. 16B is a perspective view from one side of the housing of FIG. 16A at a point substantially perpendicular to a longitudinal axis of the housing according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0046] FIG 16C is a perspective view from the front side of the housing of FIG. 16A at a point looking straight down the longitudinal axis of the housing according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0047] FIG. 17A is a diagram showing a perspective view of a linear downscan transducer within a single housing from a point above the housing according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention;

[0048] FIG. 17B is a perspective view from one side of the housing of FIG. 17A at a point substantially perpendicular to a longitudinal axis of the housing according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention; and

[0049] FIG 17C is a perspective view from the front side of the housing of FIG. 17A at a point looking straight down the longitudinal axis of the housing according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention.

## DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0050] Exemplary embodiments of the present invention now will be described more fully hereinafter with reference to the accompanying drawings, in which some, but not all embodiments of the invention are shown. Indeed, the invention may be embodied in many different forms and should not be construed as limited to the exemplary embodiments set forth herein; rather, these embodiments are provided so that this disclosure will satisfy applicable legal requirements. Like reference numerals refer to like elements throughout.

[0051] FIG. 5 is a basic block diagram illustrating a sonar system 30 for use with multiple exemplary embodiments of the present invention. As shown, the sonar system 30 may include a number of different modules or components, each of which may comprise any device or means embodied in either hardware, software, or a combination of hardware and software configured to perform one or more corresponding functions. For example, the sonar system 30 may include a sonar signal processor 32, a transceiver 34 and a transducer array 36 and/or numerous other peripheral devices such as one or more displays 38. One or more of the modules may be configured to communicate with one or more of the other modules to process and/or display data, information or the like from one or more of the modules. The modules may also be configured to communicate with one another in any of a number of different manners including, for example, via a network 40. In this regard, the network 40 may be any of a number of different communication backbones or frameworks including, for example, Ethernet, the NMEA 2000 framework or other suitable networks.

[0052] The display 38 may be configured to display images and may include or otherwise be in communication with a user interface 39 configured to receive an input from a user. The display 38 may be, for example, a conventional LCD (liquid crystal display), a touch screen display, or any other suitable display known in the art upon which images may be rendered. Although each display 38 of FIG. 5 is shown as being connected to the sonar signal processor 32 via the network and/or via an Ethernet hub, the display 38 could alternatively be in direct communication with the sonar signal processor 32 in some embodiments, or the display 38, sonar signal processor 32 and user interface 39 could be in a single housing. The user interface 39 may include, for example, a keyboard, keypad, function keys, mouse, scrolling device, input/output ports, touch screen, or any other mechanism by which a user may interface with the system. Moreover, in some cases, the user interface 39 may be a portion of one or more of the displays 38.

[0053] The transducer array 36 according to an exemplary embodiment may be provided in one or more housings that provide for flexible mounting with respect to a hull of the vessel on which the sonar system 30 is employed. In this regard, for example, the housing may be mounted onto the hull of the vessel or onto a device or component that may be attached to the hull (e.g., a trolling motor or other steerable device, or another component that is mountable relative to the hull of the vessel), including a bracket that is adjustable on multiple axes, permitting omnidirectional movement of the housing. The transducer array 36 may include one or more transducer elements positioned within the housing, as described in greater detail below, and each of the transducer elements may be configured to be directed to cover a different area such that one transducer element covers one side of the vessel with a fan shaped beam, another transducer element covers the opposite side of the vessel with a fan shaped beam, and the third fan shaped beam covers a region between the other transducer elements directed below the vessel. In an exemplary embodiment, each of the transducer elements of the transducer array 36 may be substantially identical in terms of construction and therefore may be different only by virtue of the orientation of the respective transducer elements. The transducer array 36 may be configured to both transmit and receive sound pressure waves. However, in some cases, the transducer array 36 could include separate elements for transmission and reception. The transducer array 36 is described in greater detail below in reference to FIG. 6.

[0054] In an exemplary embodiment, the sonar signal processor 32, the transceiver 34 and an Ethernet hub 42 or other network hub may form a sonar module 44. As such, for example, in some cases, the transducer array 36 may simply be placed into communication with the sonar module 44, which may itself be a mobile device that may be placed (but not necessarily mounted in a fixed arrangement) in the vessel to permit easy installation of one or more displays 38, each of which may be remotely located from each other and operable independent of each other. In this regard, for example, the Ethernet hub 42 may include one or more corresponding interface ports for placing the network 40 in communication with each display 38 in a plug-n-play manner. As such, for example, the Ethernet hub 42 may not only include the hardware needed to enable the displays 38 to be plugged into communication with the network 40 via the Ethernet hub 42, but the Ethernet hub 42 may also include or otherwise be in communication with software modules for providing information to enable the sonar module 44 to communicate with one or more different instances of the display 38 that may or may not be the same model or type of display and that may display the same or different information. In other words, the sonar module 44 may store configuration settings defining a predefined set of display types with which the sonar module is compatible so that if any of the predefined set of display types are placed into communication with the sonar module 44, the sonar module 44 may operate in a plug-n-play manner with the corresponding display types. Accordingly, the sonar module 44 may include a memory storing device drivers accessible to the Ethernet hub 42 to enable the Ethernet hub 42 to properly work with displays for which the sonar module 44 is compatible. The sonar module 44 may also be enabled to be upgraded with additional device drivers to enable expansion of the numbers and types of devices with which the sonar module 44 may be compatible. In some cases, the user may select a display type to check whether a the display type is supported and, if the display type is not supported, contact a network entity to request software and/or drivers for enabling support of the corresponding display type.

**[0055]** The sonar signal processor 32 may be any means such as a device or circuitry operating in accordance with software or otherwise embodied in hardware or a combination of hardware and software (e.g., a processor operating under software control or the processor embodied as an application specific integrated circuit (ASIC) or field programmable gate array (FPGA) specifically configured to perform the operations described herein, or a combination thereof) thereby configuring the device or circuitry to perform the corresponding functions of the sonar signal processor 32 as described herein. In this regard, the sonar signal processor 32 may be configured to analyze electrical signals communicated thereto by the transceiver 34 to provide sonar data indicative of the size, location, shape, etc. of objects detected by the sonar system 30. In some cases, the sonar signal processor 32 may include a processor, a processing element, a coprocessor, a controller or various other processing means or devices including integrated circuits such as, for example, an ASIC, FPGA or hardware accelerator, that is configured to execute various programmed operations or instructions stored in a memory device. The sonar signal processor may further or alternatively embody multiple compatible additional hardware or hardware and software items to implement signal processing or enhancement features to improve the display characteristics or data or images, collect or process additional data, such as time, temperature, GPS information, waypoint designations, or others, or may filter extraneous data to better analyze the collected data. It may further implement notices and alarms, such as those determined or adjusted by a user, to reflect depth, presence of fish, proximity of other watercraft, etc. Still further, the processor, in combination with suitable memory, may store incoming transducer data or screen images for future playback or transfer, or alter images with additional processing to implement zoom or lateral movement, or to correlate data, such as fish or bottom features to a GPS position or temperature. In an exemplary embodiment, the sonar signal processor 32 may execute commercially available software for controlling the transceiver 34 and/or transducer array 36 and for processing data received therefrom. Further capabilities of the sonar signal processor 32 and other aspects related to the sonar module are described in U.S. Patent Application Serial No. ___________, entitled "Linear and Circular Downscan Imaging Sonar" filed on even date herewith, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

**[0056]** The transceiver 34 may be any means such as a device or circuitry operating in accordance with software or otherwise embodied in hardware or a combination of hardware and software (e.g., a processor operating under software control or the processor embodied as an ASIC or FPGA specifically configured to perform the operations described herein, or a combination thereof) thereby configuring the device or circuitry to perform the corresponding functions of the transceiver 34 as described herein. In this regard, for example, the transceiver 34 may include circuitry for providing transmission electrical signals to the transducer array 36 for conversion to sound pressure signals based on the provided electrical signals to be transmitted as a sonar pulse. The transceiver 34 may also include circuitry for receiving electrical signals produced by the transducer array 36 responsive to sound pressure signals received at the transducer array 36 based on echo or other return signals received in response to the transmission of a sonar pulse. The transceiver 34 may be in communication with the sonar signal processor 32 to both receive instructions regarding the transmission of sonar signals and to provide information on sonar returns to the sonar signal processor 32 for analysis and ultimately for driving one or more of the displays 38 based on the sonar returns.

**[0057]** FIG. 6 is a diagram illustrating a more detailed view of the transducer array 36 according to an exemplary embodiment. As shown in FIG. 6, the transducer array 36 may include a housing 50 that may include mounting holes 52 through which screws, rivets, bolts or other mounting devices may be passed in order to fix the housing 50 to a mounting bracket, a device attached to a vessel or to the hull of the vessel itself. However, in some cases, the housing 50 may be affixed by welding, adhesive, snap fit or other coupling means.

The housing 50 may be mounted to a portion of the vessel, or to a device attached to the vessel, that provides a relatively unobstructed view of both sides of the vessel. Thus, for example, the housing 50 may be mounted on or near the keel (or centerline) of the vessel, on a fixed or adjustable mounting bracket that extends below a depth of the keel (or centerline) of the vessel, or on a mounting device that is offset from the bow or stern of the vessel. The housing 50 may include a recessed portion defining containment volume 54 for holding transducer elements 60. The recessed portion defining the containment volume may extend away from the hull of the vessel on which the housing 50 is mounted and therefore protrude into the water on which the vessel operates (or in which the vessel operates in a case where the transducer array 36 is mounted to a tow fish). To prevent cavitation or the production of bubbles due to uneven flow over the housing 50, the housing 50 (and in particular the containment volume portion of the housing) may have a gradual, rounded or otherwise streamlined profile to permit laminar flow of water over the housing 50. In some examples, an insulated cable 58 may provide a conduit for wiring to communicatively couple the transducer elements 60 to the sonar module 44.

**[0058]** Each of the transducer elements 60 may be a linear transducer element. Thus, for example, each of the transducer elements 60 may be substantially rectangular in shape and made from a piezoelectric material such as a piezoelectric ceramic material, as is well known in the art and may include appropriate shielding (not shown) as is well known in the art. The piezoelectric material being disposed in a rectangular arrangement provides for an approximation of a linear array having beamwidth characteristics that are a function of the length and width of the rectangular face of the transducer elements and the frequency of operation. In an exemplary embodiment, the transducer elements 60 may be configured to operate in accordance with at least two operating frequencies. In this regard, for example, a frequency selection capability may be provided by the sonar module 44 to enable the user to select one of at least two frequencies of operation. In one example, one operating frequency may be set to about 800 kHz and another operating frequency may be set to about 455 kHz. Furthermore, the length of the transducer elements may be set to about 120 mm while the width is set to about 3 mm to thereby produce beam characteristics corresponding to a bearing fan of about 0.8 degrees by about 32 degrees at 800 kHz or about 1.4 degrees by about 56 degrees at 455 kHz. However, in general, the length and width of the transducer elements 60 may be set such that the beamwidth of sonar beam produced by the transducer elements 60 in a direction parallel to a longitudinal length (L) of the transducer elements 60 is less than about five percent as large as the beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction (w) perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements 60. (See generally FIGS. 7A, 7B, 9A, 9B.) It should be noted that although the widths of various beams are shown and described herein, the widths being referred to do not necessarily correspond to actual edges defining limits to where energy is placed in the water. As such, although beam patterns and projections of beam patterns are generally shown herein as having fixed and typically geometrically shaped boundaries, those boundaries merely correspond to the -3dB (or half power) points for the transmitted beams. In other words, energy measured outside of the boundaries shown is less than half of the energy transmitted. Thus, the boundaries shown are merely theoretical half power point boundaries.

**[0059]** Although dual frequency operations providing a specific beam fan for each respective element for given lengths are described above, it should be understood that other operating ranges could alternatively be provided with corresponding different transducer element sizes and corresponding different beamwidth characteristics. Moreover, in some cases, the sonar module 44 may include a variable frequency selector, to enable an operator to select a particular frequency of choice for the current operating conditions. However, in all cases where the longitudinal length of the transducer elements 60 is generally aligned with the centerline of the vessel, the rectangular shape of the transducer elements 60 provides for a narrow beamwidth in a direction substantially parallel to the centerline of the vessel and wide beamwidth in a direction substantially perpendicular to the centerline of the vessel. However, if the transducer array 36 is mounted in a different fashion or to a rotatable accessory on the vessel (e.g., a trolling motor mount), the fan-shaped beams produced will have the wide beamwidth in a direction substantially perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements 60 and a narrow beamwidth in a direction substantially parallel to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements 60. Thus, the sonar could also be oriented to provide fore and aft oriented fan-shaped beams or any other orientation relative to the vessel in instances where motion of the vessel is not necessarily in a direction aligned with the centerline of the vessel.

**[0060]** FIGS. 7A and 7B show side and top views, respectively, illustrating the beam characteristics produced by an exemplary embodiment of the present invention. In this regard, FIG. 7A illustrates a side view showing the transducer array 36 mounted to a bracket that extends from the aft end of the centerline of the vessel (e.g., boat). As shown in FIG. 7A, the beam produced by the transducer array 36 is relatively narrow in the direction substantially parallel to the centerline of the vessel if the transducer elements are aligned for a generally coplanar beam. FIG. 7A also includes a cutaway view of the transducer array 36 to show the orientation of the transducer elements 60 in context relative to the vessel according to this example. Meanwhile, FIG. 7B shows a top view of the beam produced by the transducer assembly 36 if the transducer elements are aligned for a generally coplanar beam. As shown in FIG. 7B, the beam produced by the transducer array is relatively wide in the direction substantially perpendicular to the centerline of the vessel thereby producing a fan-shaped beam pattern extending out to both sides and also covering the water column beneath the vessel, as described below. FIG. 7B also includes a cutaway view of the transducer array 36 to show the orientation of the transducer elements 60 in context relative to the vessel according to this example.

**[0061]** FIG. 8A is a diagram illustrating a cross section of components in the containment volume 54 according to an exemplary embodiment. In particular, FIG. 8A illustrates the arrangement of the linear transducer elements 60 within the containment volume 54. The transducer elements 60, which may include a port side element 62 positioned to scan substantially to the port side of the vessel, a starboard side element 64 positioned to scan substantially to the starboard side of the vessel, and a downscan element 66 positioned to scan substantially below the vessel. As shown in FIG. 8A, in an exemplary embodiment, both the port side element 62 and the starboard side element 64 may be oriented to face slightly below a surface of the water on which the vessel travels. In one example, both the port side element 62 and the starboard side element 64 may be oriented such that the widest dimension of the beamwidth of each respective element is centered at 30 degrees below a plane substantially parallel to the surface of the water. Meanwhile, the downscan linear element 66 may be positioned such that the widest dimension of the beamwidth of the downscan element 66 is centered at 90 degrees below the plane substantially parallel to the surface of the water. In other words, the downscan element 66 has the central portion of its fan shape aimed straight down. The containment volume 54 may include electrical connections (not shown) to communicate with the transceiver 34 and supports, struts, rods or other supporting structures to secure each of the linear transducer elements 60 in their respective orientations. The transducer elements 60 may be held in place or otherwise affixed to the supporting structures via adhesive or any other suitable joining material and the angles at which the transducer elements 60 are affixed relative to each other and to the housing 50 may vary as necessary or as desired.

**[0062]** FIG. 8B is a diagram illustrating a cross section of components in the containment volume 54 according to an alternative exemplary embodiment. In this regard, FIG. 8B illustrates the arrangement of one linear transducer element 60 within the containment volume 54. The transducer element 60 according to this exemplary embodiment is a single linear transducer (e.g., downscan element 66) positioned to scan substantially below the vessel. As shown in FIG. 8B, the downscan element 66 may be positioned such that the widest dimension of the beamwidth of the downscan element 66 is centered at 90 degrees below the plane substantially parallel to the surface of the water. In other words, the downscan element 66 has the central portion of its fan shape aimed substantially straight down. As discussed above, the containment volume 54 may include electrical connections (not shown) to communicate with the transceiver 34 and supports, struts, rods or other supporting structures to secure the downscan element 66 in its respective orientation. The linear downscan element 66 may be held in place or otherwise affixed to the supporting structures via adhesive or any other suitable joining material such that transmissions produced by the downscan element 66 exit the housing 50 substantially at a 90 degree angle with respect to the plane of the face of the downscan element 66 from which the transmissions emanate.

**[0063]** FIG. 9A shows an example of beam coverage for an 800 kHz operating frequency in one exemplary embodiment. As such, the beamwidth (e.g., width between the half power points) of each of the three linear transducer elements 60 is about 32 degrees. FIG. 9B shows an example of beam coverage for a 455 kHz operating frequency in one exemplary embodiment, thereby providing about 56 degrees of beamwidth for each of the three linear transducer elements 60. Accordingly, in each of the exemplary embodiments of FIGS. 9A and 9B, the three fan-shaped segments together produce a discontinuous fan shaped beam. The discontinuity may be minimized in some instances by selection of transducer element dimensions and operating frequencies selected to minimize the size of the gaps (e.g., zones with sonar beam coverage outside of beam coverage area as defined by the half power points of the beams) between the beams of the transducer elements. Alternatively, the physical orientation of the transducer elements 60 with respect to each other could be changed in order to minimize the size of the gaps. However, it should be noted that in most cases some gap should be maintained in order to prevent interference between the beam patterns emanating from the linear transducer elements 60. Although the fan-shaped segments of an exemplary embodiment may all lie in the same plane, it may be desirable to alter the orientation of one or more of the transducer elements 60 such that a corresponding one or more of the fan-shaped segments is outside of the plane of the other fan-shaped segments. The gap could therefore be provided via planar separation of the fan-shaped segments rather than by providing separation between the segments within the same plane.

**[0064]** In this regard, FIG. 10A illustrates a projection, onto a substantially flat sea bed, of the beam pattern of an exemplary transducer array providing gaps between the boundaries of the projections as defined by the half power points defining fan shaped beams produced by a transducer array in which the transducer elements 60 are positioned to provide coplanar beams with gaps therebetween according to an exemplary embodiment. As such, a first transducer element beam projection 100, a second transducer element beam projection 102 and a third transducer element beam projection 104 are all shown lying in the same plane in FIG. 10A. Meanwhile, FIG. 10B illustrates a projection, onto a substantially flat sea bed, of the beam pattern of an exemplary transducer array providing gaps between the fan shaped beams produced by a transducer array in which the transducer elements 60 are positioned to provide gaps with planar separation therebetween according to another exemplary embodiment. Thus, the first transducer element beam projection 100', the second transducer element beam projection 102' and the third transducer element beam projection 104' are shown lying in different planes in FIG. 10B. Notably, in each of FIGS. 10A and 10B, the view is shown from the top looking down onto the sea bed and the beam projections are not necessarily to scale.

**[0065]** FIG. 11A shows an example of a view of the beam coverage associated with the embodiment of the example shown in FIG. 9A in which the beam coverage is extended to the bottom of a flat bottomed body of water. The illustration of FIG. 11A shows a view looking at the stern of a vessel 70 as the vessel 70 is driving away from the viewer (e.g., into the page). According to this example, a port sidescan beam 72 (e.g., that may be produced by port sidescan element 62) extends out to the port side of the vessel 70 providing coverage of the bottom from point A to point B. Meanwhile, a starboard sidescan beam 74 (e.g., that may be produced by starboard sidescan element 64) extends out to the starboard side of the vessel 70 from point C to point D. Additionally, a downscan beam 76 (e.g., that may be produced by downscan element 66) extends directly below the vessel 70 from point E to point F. As shown in FIG. 11A, the coverage areas defined between points A and B and points C and D are substantially larger than the coverage area defined between points E and F. Based on the increased bottom coverage, the display provided responsive to data received in the sidescan beams 72 and 74 will be different than the display provided responsive to data received in the downscan beam 76. FIGS. 11B and 11C show examples of images that may correspond to the beam coverage areas shown in FIG. 11A. In this regard, for example, FIG. 11B illustrates possible images that could correspond to the region defined between points A and B and points C and D (e.g., sidescan images), while FIG. 11C illustrates a possible image that may correlate to the coverage area between points E and F (e.g., a linear downscan image).

**[0066]** FIGS. 12A through 12F show examples of images that may be produced by embodiments of the present invention to illustrate differences between the display produced by a linear downscan element of an embodiment of the present invention and either a sidescan or a conventional circular downscan transducer element. In this regard, FIG. 12A illustrates an example image that may be produced based on data from the sidescan beams 72 and 74. For this example, assume the top of the display (identified by arrow 80) shows the most recent data (e.g., corresponding to the vessel's current position) and the bottom of the display (identified by arrow 82) shows the oldest data. Additionally, the right side of the display 84 may correspond to the starboard sidescan beam 74 while the left side of the display 86 corresponds to the port sidescan beam 72. Brighter pixels illustrated in FIG. 12A correspond to return data received in the corresponding sidescan beams. In this regard, data closest to dashed line 88 corresponds to the data gathered near point B (for the left side of the display 86) and near point D (for the right side of the display 84) and data at the left edge of the display corresponds to data gathered near point A while data at the right edge of the display corresponds to data gathered near point C over the time period from the position of arrow 82 to the position of arrow 80. Thus, well over 50% of the display of FIG. 12A (and in many cases 100%) is utilized to show data corresponding to bottom features, e.g. the topography of and structures attached to the bottom, that have provided return data from the sidescan beams 72 and 74. By comparison only a small portion (e.g., less than 20%) of the display shows any water column features, e.g., data from the water column between the vessel 70 and the portions of the bottom covered by each respective sidescan beam. The sidescan beams 72 and 74 also fail to provide depth data. Still further, the sidescan beams fail to provide depth data or bottom feature data or water column data for that portion of the bottom beneath the vessel, e.g., that portion between reference points B and D and the vessel 70 in FIG 11.

**[0067]** FIGS. 12B through 12F show on the right side (e.g., right display 90) of each figure, exemplary screen shots of a conventional circular downscan transducer image that corresponds to the display (e.g., the left side of each figure (left display 92)) produced by the linear downscan element of an embodiment of the present invention (e.g., downscan element 66). In this regard, the left display of FIG. 12B shows a boulder on the left, two tree trunks rising up from the bottom near the center of the display, and, possibly, several fish (white spots) near the lower right. The corresponding same features can be vaguely determined from the right display 90 (i.e., the circular downscan display), but the images are much less clear. Similarly, FIGS. 12C, 12D and 12E clearly show very detailed images of trees rising vertically from the bottom in the left display 92, while such features are very difficult to distinguish on the right display 90. FIG. 12F clearly shows a downed tree and at least two vertical trees nearby in the left display 92, whereas the same features are difficult to discern in the right display 90.

**[0068]** The exemplary linear downscan image on the left side of FIG. 12B includes a numerical depth scale 0-40 on the right side, with sonar reflection data being represented on the display screen at the time-dependent depth using known sonar imaging practices. Boat position is represented by the numeral 0, or some other desirable icon, for the most recent sonar pings, and the oldest sonar pings are presented by the left side of the screen, presenting a scrolling image as the boat (and transducer) move across the water surface over time. The far right column reflects the intensity of the return echo received at the circular downscan transducer, plotted adjacent the 0-40 depth scale.

**[0069]** Accordingly, by placing a linear transducer in a downward oriented position, a much improved image quality is achieved for bottom data and structures attached to it or rising above it relative to the conventional circular downscan sonar. In this regard, while sidescan images are valued for their ability to provide detailed images of laterally distant bottom features, they are unable to provide depth data or bottom data or water column data below the vessel. A linear downscan element provides the unexpected advantage of providing detailed images of the water column below the vessel (e.g., upwardly extending submerged trees, fish, etc.), as well as details of the features of the bottom or structures resting on or rising above the bottom (e.g., rocks, crevices, submerged trees, sunken objects, etc.), and a depth indication that can be registered (e.g., feet or meters). For example, again referring to the left image of FIG. 12B, the mass of bright pixels at about 30 feet (as indicated by the numbers in increments of five feet that extend down the right edge of the left display 92) represent bottom feature data and are indicative of the depth at which the bottom is encountered. The bottom feature data may also, in some cases, indicate the type of bottom (e.g., rocky, muddy, hard, soft, flat, sloped, smooth, rough, etc.). Thus, sonar returns associated with the bottom in a linear downscan display are not only indicative of bottom features, but are also indicative of depth and water column data. However, the bottom feature data represents a relatively small percentage of the overall display area. Due to the relatively small percentage of display area that is devoted to bottom feature data, a relatively large percentage of the display area may be devoted to other data, e.g., data representing the water column above the bottom). Thus, for example, as shown in FIG. 12B, water column features are represented by data including a boulder and trees extending from the bottom along with any suspended objects (e.g., schools of bait fish, individual large fish, etc.), thermoclines, and other features may be displayed in greater detail along with the indication of bottom depth. Meanwhile, even in situations where the zoom level of the display is not set such that the lake or sea bottom is near the lowest portion of the display (such as in FIG. 12C), the bottom features only account for a small percentage of the display area, while the water column features account for more than 50% and the area below the lake or sea bottom is essentially featureless.

[0070] FIGS. 12B through 12F each show far less than 50% (and typically less than 20%) of the display being utilized to show data corresponding to bottom features, and do so for the water column beneath the vessel. As shown, a linear transducer positioned as a downscan element (e.g., downscan element 66) according to an exemplary embodiment, is capable of providing far more information regarding the water column itself rather than merely the bottom features or depth. Thus, water column data can be received and displayed representing schools of fish, individual fish and certain structural features in the water column directly below the vessel 70. Additionally, as shown in FIGS. 12B through 12F, a linear transducer positioned as a downscan element is also capable of producing depth data. In this regard, whereas a sidescan image produces relatively high quality images of bottom features (see for example, FIG. 12A), it is unable to produce useful depth data or water column data. A downscan image produced by a linear transducer according to an exemplary embodiment of the present invention produces depth data along with bottom feature data and water column data.

[0071] FIG. 13A provides an example of a display of the bottom structure as viewed through use of a linear downscan sonar element (e.g., downscan element 66) of an exemplary embodiment of the present invention. FIG. 13B shows the vessel 70 and various bottom features viewed from above. The bottom features include a boulder 120, a vertical tree 122, a rock pile 124, a school of fish 126 and a fallen, horizontal tree 128. FIG. 13B also shows a linear transducer downscan fan-shaped sonar beam 130 projected onto the bottom as compared to a circular transducer downscan conical beam 132 projected onto the bottom. As can be appreciated from the corresponding example display provided in FIG. 13A, since the linear downscan beam 130 has a narrow aspect in one direction and a broad aspect in the other, the amount of data received and therefore processed for display is less with respect to each feature for which a return is received than for the conical beam 132. There is typically no overlap in coverage from each outgoing sound wave to the next (ping to ping) in the linear downscan beam 130 whereas there will be such overlap in the conical beam 132. Thus, while data corresponding to the conical beam 132 is processed, it produces blurred images due to the additional return data received. The linear downscan beam 130 is able to produce "cleaner" images that more accurately illustrate feature data that reflects what objects are in the water column and on the bottom beneath the vessel. Note, however, that there can be at least partial overlap in the bottom topography that is sonified by the linear and circular transducer, as shown in FIG. 13B.

**[0072]** By providing the downscan element 66 as a linear transducer element of the same type and construction as one or both of the port side linear element 62 and the starboard side linear element 64, embodiments of the present invention provide vivid images of the column of water over which the vessel passes in addition to providing vivid images of the water column on both sides of the vessel, which is provided by conventional sidescan sonar systems that either neglect the column of water beneath the vessel or only scan such region with a conical beam from a transducer element having a cylindrical shape that is not capable of providing the level of detail provided by embodiments of the present invention. Moreover, embodiments of the present invention provide high quality images of the column of water over which the vessel passes without the high degree of complexity and cost associated with a multibeam system.

**[0073]** FIG. 14 illustrates an exemplary sonar system incorporating linear and circular downscan transducers 140, 142. The two transducers may be in the same or separate housings. They typically uitlize different operational frequencies. Such may also assist in minimizing interference. Similar to the system illustrated in FIG. 5, the transducers are operationally connected to the transceivers 144, 146, which configure the transducer outputs for receipt by the sonar signal processor 148. The sonar signal processor executes various programs stored or as may be selected by the user interface 150. The Ethernet hub 152, network 154, displays 156 and user interface 150 operate as described for the corresponding components of FIG 5. The image processor 158 may perform a variety of functions to optimize or customize the display images, including such features as split screen to show multiple different sonar images or data. Examples include individual and separate images of GPS, waypoints, mapping, nautical charts, GPS tracking, radar, etc., which are typically shown side-by-side or stacked. Additional examples include individual data boxes, such as speed, depth, water, temperature, range or distance scales, location or waypoint, latitude, longitude, time, etc. Still further examples include composite images that combine information from one or more of these sources, such as the images from the linear downstream and circular downstream transducers to overlay the images. For example, the traditional "fish arch" image representing a possible fish using a circular downscan sonar may be imposed over a small white circle or oval representing a possible fish using a linear downscan sonar. Still further, one image may be colorized to distinguish it visibly from data representing another image. As such, for example, the images may be combined using image blending or overlay techniques. Alternatively, individual images may be presented, or different images, simultaneously on different displays without overlay. Image data packets or streams may also have additional data associated therewith, such as time of day, location, temperature, speed, GPS, etc.

**[0074]** Notably, the example of FIG. 14 may be simplified in some embodiments. In this regard, the radar, map and GPS modules of FIG. 14 along with the Ethernet hub 152 may not be included in some embodiments. Moreover, in one example, an embodiment of the present invention may include essentially only processing circuitry to handle inputs from a linear and circular transducer array along with a display in a single device. As such, for example, all of the electronics for handling linear and circular transducer inputs may be included along with a display within a single box, without any Ethernet connection or other peripherals.

**[0075]** FIG. 15A illustrates an example of a top view of the beam overlap that may occur in situations where a linear downscan transducer and a circular downscan transducer are employed simultaneously. FIG. 15B shows side views of the same beam overlap shown in FIG. 15A from the starboard side of a vessel (on the left side of the page) and from ahead of the bow of the vessel (on the right side of the page). As shown in FIG. 15A, there is overlap between a conical beam projection 180 showing an example coverage area of a beam produced by the circular downscan transducer and a downscan beam projection 182 showing an example coverage area of a beam produced by the linear downscan transducer. The differences between the beam patterns of the linear and circular downscan transducers are further illustrated in FIG. 15B in which it can be seen that the beamwidth 184 of the beam produced by the circular downscan transducer is substantially the same regardless of the side from which the beam is viewed. However, the beamwidth 186 of the beam produced by the linear downscan transducer as viewed from the starboard side of the vessel is substantially smaller than the beamwidth 188 of the beam produced by the linear downscan transducer as viewed from ahead of the bow of the vessel. Moreover, the beamwidth 188 is wider than the beamwidth 184, while the beamwidth 186 is narrower than the beamwidth 184.

[0076] FIGS. 16A through 16C illustrate diagrams of a linear downscan transducer 190 and a circular downscan transducer 192 within a single streamlined housing 194 from various different perspectives. In this regard, FIG. 16A is a perspective view from above the housing 194. Meanwhile, FIG. 16B is a perspective view from one side of the housing 194 at a point substantially perpendicular to a longitudinal axis of the housing 194 and FIG 16C is a perspective view from the front side of the housing 194 at a point looking straight down the longitudinal axis of the housing 194. As shown in FIGS. 16A-16C, the linear downscan transducer 190 and the circular downscan transducer 192 may each be disposed to be in planes that are substantially parallel with each other and with a plane in which the longitudinal axis of the housing 194 lies. Generally speaking, the linear downscan transducer 190 and the circular downscan transducer 192 may also be displosed in line with the longitudinal axis of the housing 194. Although shown in a particular order in FIGS. 16A-16C, the ordering of the placement of the linear downscan transducer 190 and the circular downscan transducer 192 within the housing 194 may be reversed in some examples. Furthermore, in some cases, the linear downscan transducer 190 and the circular downscan transducer 192 may each be located in their own respective separate housings rather than both being within a single housing. FIGS. 16A-16C also illustrate an example of a mounting device 196 for mounting the housing 194 to a vessel.

[0077] By way of comparison, FIGS. 17A through 17C illustrate diagrams of a single linear downscan transducer 190 a housing 198 from various different perspectives. In this regard, FIG. 17A is a perspective view from above the housing 198. Meanwhile, FIG. 17B is a perspective view from one side of the housing 198 at a point substantially perpendicular to a longitudinal axis of the housing 198 and FIG 17C is a perspective view from the front side of the housing 198 at a point looking straight down the longitudinal axis of the housing 198. As shown in FIGS. 17A-17C, by employing only the linear downscan transducer 190 the size of the housing 198 may be reduced. In this regard, for example, particularly FIG. 17C shows a reduction in the cross sectional size of the housing 198 as compared to the cross sectional size of the housing 194 of FIG. 16C. Thus, for example, the housing 198 may introduce less drag than the housing 194.

[0078] Many modifications and other embodiments of the inventions set forth herein will come to mind to one skilled in the art to which these embodiments pertain having the benefit of the teachings presented in the foregoing descriptions and the associated drawings. Therefore, it is to be understood that the inventions are not to be limited to the specific embodiments disclosed and that modifications and other embodiments are intended to be included within the scope of the appended claims. Although specific terms are employed herein, they are used in a generic and descriptive sense only and not for purposes of limitation.

THAT WHICH IS CLAIMED:

1. A transducer array comprising:

a plurality of transducer elements, each one of the plurality of transducer elements having a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the transducer elements that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements,

wherein the plurality of transducer elements are positioned such that longitudinal lengths of at least two of the plurality of transducer elements are substantially parallel to each other, and

wherein the plurality of transducer elements include at least:

a first linear transducer element positioned within a housing to project sonar pulses from a first side of the housing in a direction substantially perpendicular to a centerline of the housing,

a second linear transducer element positioned within the housing to lie substantially in a plane with the first linear transducer element and project sonar pulses from a second side of the housing that is generally opposite of the first side, and

a third linear transducer element positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to the plane.

2. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the first linear transducer element is positioned to project sonar pulses defining a beamwidth having a center forming about a 30 degree angle with respect to the plane, and wherein the second is also positioned to project sonar pulses defining a beamwidth having a center forming about a 30 degree angle with respect to the plane.

3. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein at least one transducer within the transducer array is configured to operate at a selected one of at least two selectable operating frequencies.

4. The transducer array of claim 3, wherein the selectable operating frequencies include about 455 kHz and 800 kHz.

5. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the beamwidth of each of the transducer elements is about 0.8 degrees by about 32 degrees or about 1.4 degrees by about 56 degrees.

6. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein beams produced by each of the first, second and third transducers do not overlap with each other.

7. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the transducer array includes a housing mountable to a watercraft and wherein the plurality of transducer elements are each positioned within the housing.

8. The transducer array of claim 7, wherein the watercraft operates on a surface of a body of water.

9. The transducer array of claim 7, wherein the watercraft is a submersible vehicle.

10. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the transducer array is configured to communicate with a single transceiver.

11. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein a length of a rectangular face of each of the transducer elements is about 120 mm and a width of the rectangular face of each of the transducer elements is about 3 mm.

12. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the beamwidth in the direction parallel to longitudinal length of the transducer elements is less than about five percent as large as the beamwidth of the sonar beam in the direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements.

13. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein respective sonar beams produced by each of the first, second and third linear transducer elements provide substantially continuous sonar coverage from one side of a vessel on which the housing is mounted to an opposite side of the vessel by providing planar separation between at least one fan-shaped beam segment

produced by one of the transducer elements and at least one other fan-shaped beam segment produced by another of the transducer elements.

14. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the plurality of transducer elements are positioned such that longitudinal lengths of each of the plurality of transducer elements are substantially parallel to each other.

15. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the housing is mountable to a vessel to generate sonar pulses defining a fan-shaped beam extending from one side of the vessel to an opposite side of the vessel.

16. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the housing is mountable to a vessel to generate sonar pulses defining a fan-shaped beam extending from a forward end of the vessel to an after end of the vessel.

17. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the first, second or third linear transducer elements are positioned side by side with respect to each other.

18. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the first, second or third linear transducer elements are positioned collinear with respect to each other.

19. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the third linear transducer element is positioned substantially between the first and second transducer elements.

20. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the housing has a streamlined shape.

21. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the third linear transducer element generates signals representing depth data.

22. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the third linear transducer element generates signals representing water column data.

23. The transducer array of claim 1 wherein the third linear transducer element generates signals representing bottom data.

24. The transducer array of claim 1 wherein the third linear transducer element generates signals representing two or more of depth data, water column data and bottom data.

25. The transducer array of claim 1 wherein the third linear transducer element generates signals representing data vertically below the third transducer element.

26. The transducer array of claim 1, wherein the plurality of transducer elements further comprises a circular transducer element producing a conical downscan beam.

27. The transducer array of Claim 26 wherein the sonar pulses from the third linear transducer element and the sonar pulses from the circular transducer element sonify areas of the bottom that at least partially overlap.

28. The sonar system of Claim 26 wherein the sonar signal returns from the circular transducer element and third linear downscan element provide generally simultaneous data.

29. The transducer array of Claim 1 further comprising shielding proximate predetermined surfaces of at least one of the transducer elements to minimize signal interference.

30. The transducer array of Claim 1 further comprising an omnidirectional bracket for adapting said array for adjustable directional mounting.

31. The transducer array of Claim 26 wherein the circular transducer element produces a conical beam from within the housing.

32. A sonar system comprising:

a transducer array including a plurality of transducer elements having a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the transducer elements that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements, wherein the plurality of transducer elements are positioned such that longitudinal lengths of at least two of the plurality of transducer elements are substantially parallel to each other, and

wherein the plurality of transducer elements include at least:

a first linear transducer element positioned within a housing to project sonar pulses from a first side of the housing in a direction substantially perpendicular to a centerline of the housing,

a second linear transducer element positioned within the housing to lie substantially in a plane with the first linear transducer element and project sonar pulses from a second side of the housing that is substantially opposite of the first side, and

a third linear transducer element positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to the plane; and

a sonar module configured to enable operable communication with the transducer array, the sonar module including:

a sonar signal processor to process sonar return signals received via the transducer array, and

a transceiver configured to provide communication between the transducer array and the sonar signal processor.

33. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the sonar module further comprises an Ethernet hub in communication with the signal processor.

34. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the sonar module is provided within a single housing.

35. The sonar system of claim 34, wherein the housing has a streamlined shape.

36. The sonar system of claim 32 further comprising at least one visual display presenting an image representing the processed sonar return signals.

37. The sonar system of claim 36, wherein the display and the sonar module are in the same housing.

38. The sonar system of claim 36, wherein at least one display of the plurality of displays is enabled to simultaneously provide different images representing different information from the processed sonar return signals.

39. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the sonar module further comprises configuration settings defining a predefined set of display images that may be presented.

40. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the first linear transducer element is positioned to project sonar pulses defining a beamwidth having a center forming about a 30 degree angle with respect to the plane, and wherein the second linear transducer element is also positioned to project sonar pulses defining a beamwidth having a center forming about a 30 degree angle with respect to the plane.

41. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the transducer array is configured to operate at a selected one of at least two selectable operating frequencies.

42. The sonar system of claim 41, wherein the selectable operating frequencies include about 455 kHz and 800 kHz.

43. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein beams produced by each of the first, second and third linear transducers do not overlap with each other.

44. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the transducer array includes the housing being mountable to a watercraft and wherein the plurality of transducer elements are each positioned within the housing.

45. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the housing is mountable to a vessel to generate sonar pulses defining a fan-shaped beam extending from one side of the vessel to an opposite side of the vessel.

46. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the transceiver comprises a single transceiver configured to provide communication between the plurality of transducer elements of the transducer array and the sonar signal processor.

47. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data in which images corresponding to data received via the first and second linear transducers provide data regarding bottom features over greater than about fifty percent of a display screen when displayed and images corresponding to data received via the third linear transducer provide data regarding bottom features over less than fifty percent of a display screen when displayed.

48. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the third linear transducer representing bottom data.

49. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the third linear transducer representing water column data.

50. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the third linear transducer representing depth data.

51. The sonar system of claim 32, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the third linear transducer representing two or more of depth data, water column data and bottom data.

52. The sonar system of Claim 32 wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the third transducer element representing data vertically below the third transducer.

53. The sonar system of Claim 32 further comprising a circular transducer element producing a conical downscan beam.

54. The sonar system of Claim 32 further comprising a circular transducer element producing a conical downscan beam from within the housing.

55. The sonar system of Claim 53 wherein the sonar pulses from the third linear transducer element and the sonar pulses from the circular transducer element sonify areas of the bottom that at least partially overlap.

56. The sonar system of Claim 53 wherein the sonar signal returns from the circular transducer element and third linear downscan element provide generally simultaneous data.

57. A transducer array comprising:

a housing mountable to a watercraft capable of traversing a surface of a body of water; and

a linear transducer element positioned within the housing, the linear transducer element having a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer element,

wherein the linear transducer element is positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface.

58. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to operate at a selected one of at least two selectable operating frequencies.

59. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the selectable operating frequencies include about 455 kHz and 800 kHz.

60. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the beamwidth of the linear transducer element is about 0.8 degrees by about 32 degrees or about 1.4 degrees by about 56 degrees.

61. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the transducer array is configured to communicate with a single transceiver.

62. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein a length of a rectangular face of the linear transducer element is about 120 mm and a width of the rectangular face of the linear transducer element is about 3 mm.

63. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the housing is mountable to a vessel to generate sonar pulses defining a fan-shaped beam extending from one side of the vessel to an opposite side of the vessel.

64. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the housing has a streamlined shape.

65. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the beamwidth in the direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element is less than about five percent as large as the beamwidth of the sonar beam in the direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the linear transducer element.

66. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer provide data regarding bottom features over less than fifty percent of a display screen when displayed.

67. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer provide data regarding bottom features over less than twenty percent of a display screen when displayed.

68. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer provide data indicative of bottom depth.

69. The transducer array of claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer provide data indicative of water column features.

70. The transducer array of Claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images indicative of bottom data.

71. The transducer array of Claim 57, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to provide data displayable as sonar data images indicative of two or more of depth data water column data and bottom data.

72. The transducer array of Claim 57, further comprising a circular transducer element positioned to project conical sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to the plane corresponding to the surface.

73. The transducer array of Claim 72, wherein the linear and circular transducer elements are in the same housing.

74. The transducer array of Claim 72, wherein the linear transducer and circular transducer elements are positioned to project fan-shaped and conical sonar beams that at least partially overlap.

75. The transducer array of claim 72, wherein the sonar signal returns from the circular transducer element and linear transducer element provide generally simultaneous data.

76. A sonar system comprising:

a linear transducer element positioned within a housing, the linear transducer element having a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the linear transducer element that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer element,

wherein the linear transducer element is positioned to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to a plane corresponding to the surface of a body of water;

a sonar module configured to enable operable communication with the transducer array, the sonar module including:

a sonar signal processor to process sonar return signals received via the linear transducer element, and

at least one transceiver configured to provide communication between the linear transducer element and the sonar signal processor.

77. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar module further comprises an Ethernet hub in communication with the signal processor.

78. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar module is provided within a separate housing.

79. The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising at least one visual display presenting an image representing the processed sonar return signals.

80. The sonar system of claim 79, wherein the display and the sonar module are in the same housing.

81. The sonar system of claim 79, wherein at least one display of the plurality of displays is enabled to simultaneously provide different images representing different information from the processed sonar return signals.

82. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar module further comprises configuration settings defining a predefined set of display images that may be presented.

83. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the linear transducer element is configured to operate at a selected one of at least two selectable operating frequencies.

84. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the selectable operating frequencies include about 455 kHz and 800 kHz.

85. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the linear transducer element is positioned within a housing being mountable to a watercraft.

86. The sonar system of claim 85, wherein the housing is mountable to a vessel to generate sonar pulses defining a fan-shaped beam extending from one side of the vessel to an opposite side of the vessel.

87. The sonar system of claim 85, wherein the housing is mountable to a watercraft capable of traversing a surface of a body of water.

88. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data in which images corresponding to data received via the linear transducer provide data regarding bottom features over less than fifty percent of a display screen when displayed.

89. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing bottom data.

90. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing water column data.

91. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing depth data.

92. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing two or more of depth data, water column data and bottom data.

93. The sonar system of claim 76, wherein the sonar signal processor is configured to display images of sonar data corresponding to data received via the linear transducer element representing data vertically below the linear transducer element.

94. The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a circular transducer element producing a conical downscan beam.

95. The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising a circular transducer element producing a conical downscan beam from within the housing.

96. The sonar system of claim 94, wherein the sonar pulses from the linear transducer element and the sonar pulses from the circular transducer element sonify areas of the bottom that at least partially overlap.

97. The sonar system of claim 94, wherein the sonar signal returns from the circular transducer element and linear downscan element provide generally simultaneous data.

98. The sonar system of claim 76, further comprising sources of data from at least one of the group of radar, GPS, digital mapping, time and temperature.

99. The sonar system of claim 98, wherein a display format for display of the data is in a user selectable format.

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

A downscan imaging sonar utilizes a linear transducer element to provide improved images of the sea floor and other objects in the water column beneath a vessel. A transducer array may include a plurality of transducer elements and each one of the plurality of transducer elements may include a substantially rectangular shape configured to produce a sonar beam having a beamwidth in a direction parallel to longitudinal length of the transducer elements that is significantly less than a beamwidth of the sonar beam in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal length of the transducer elements. The plurality of transducer elements may be positioned such that longitudinal lengths of at least two of the plurality of transducer elements are parallel to each other. The plurality of transducer elements may also include at least a first linear transducer element, a second linear transducer element and a third linear transducer element. The first linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses from a first side of the housing in a direction substantially perpendicular to a centerline of the housing. The second linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to lie in a plane with the first linear transducer element and project sonar pulses from a second side of the housing that is substantially opposite of the first side. The third linear transducer element may be positioned within the housing to project sonar pulses in a direction substantially perpendicular to the plane.

## ARTIFACT SHEET

Enter artifact number below. Artifact number is application number + artifact type code (see list below) + sequential letter (A, B, C …). The first artifact folder for an artifact type receives the letter A, the second B, etc.. Examples: 59123456PA, 59123456PB, 59123456ZA, 59123456ZB

**12460139CA**

Indicate quantity of a single type of artifact received but not scanned. Create individual artifact folder/box and artifact number for each Artifact Type.

☐ CD(s) containing:
- computer program listing ☐
  Doc Code: Computer — Artifact Type Code: P
- pages of specification and/or sequence listing and/or table ☐
  Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code: S
- content unspecified or combined ☐
  Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code: U

[3] Stapled Set(s) Color Documents or B/W Photographs
Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code: C

☐ Microfilm(s)
Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code: F

☐ Video tape(s)
Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code: V

☐ Model(s)
Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code: M

☐ Bound Document(s)
Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code: B

☐ Confidential Information Disclosure Statement or Other Documents marked Proprietary, Trade Secrets, Subject to Protective Order, Material Submitted under MPEP 724.02, etc.
Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code X

☐ Other, description: ______________________
Doc Code: Artifact — Artifact Type Code: Z

U.S. PTO

12460139

071409

Title: DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR
Inventor: Brian Maguire
AttyDktNo: 038495/369324

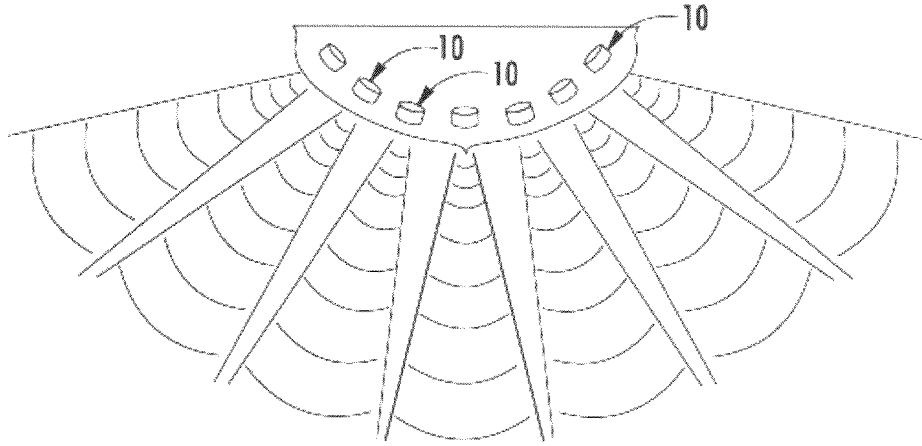



FIG. 1
(PRIOR ART)

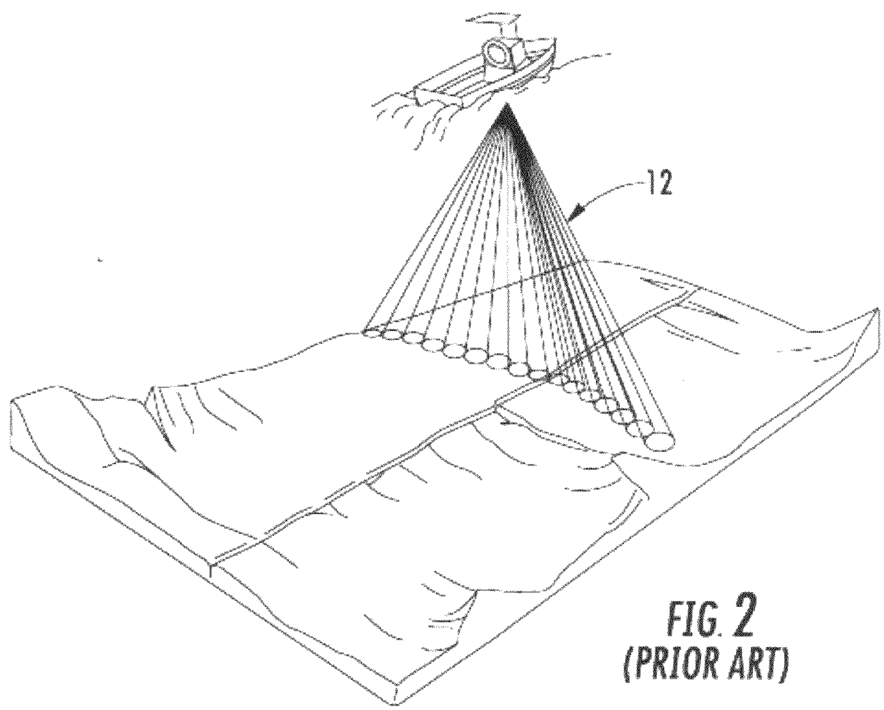



FIG. 2
(PRIOR ART)

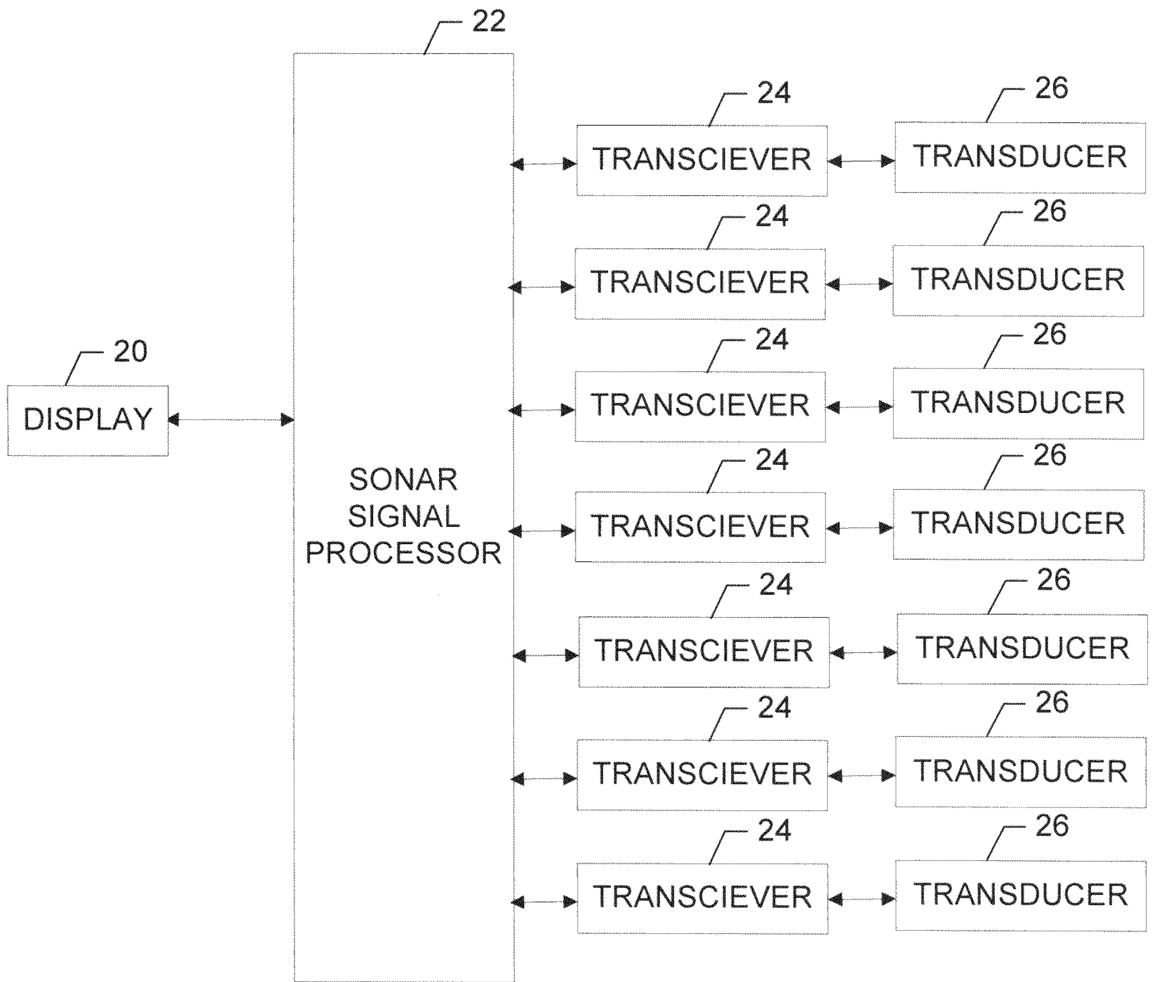



FIG. 3.
(Prior Art)

Title: DOWNSCAN IMAGING SONAR
Inventor: Brian Maguire
AttyDktNo: 038495/369324

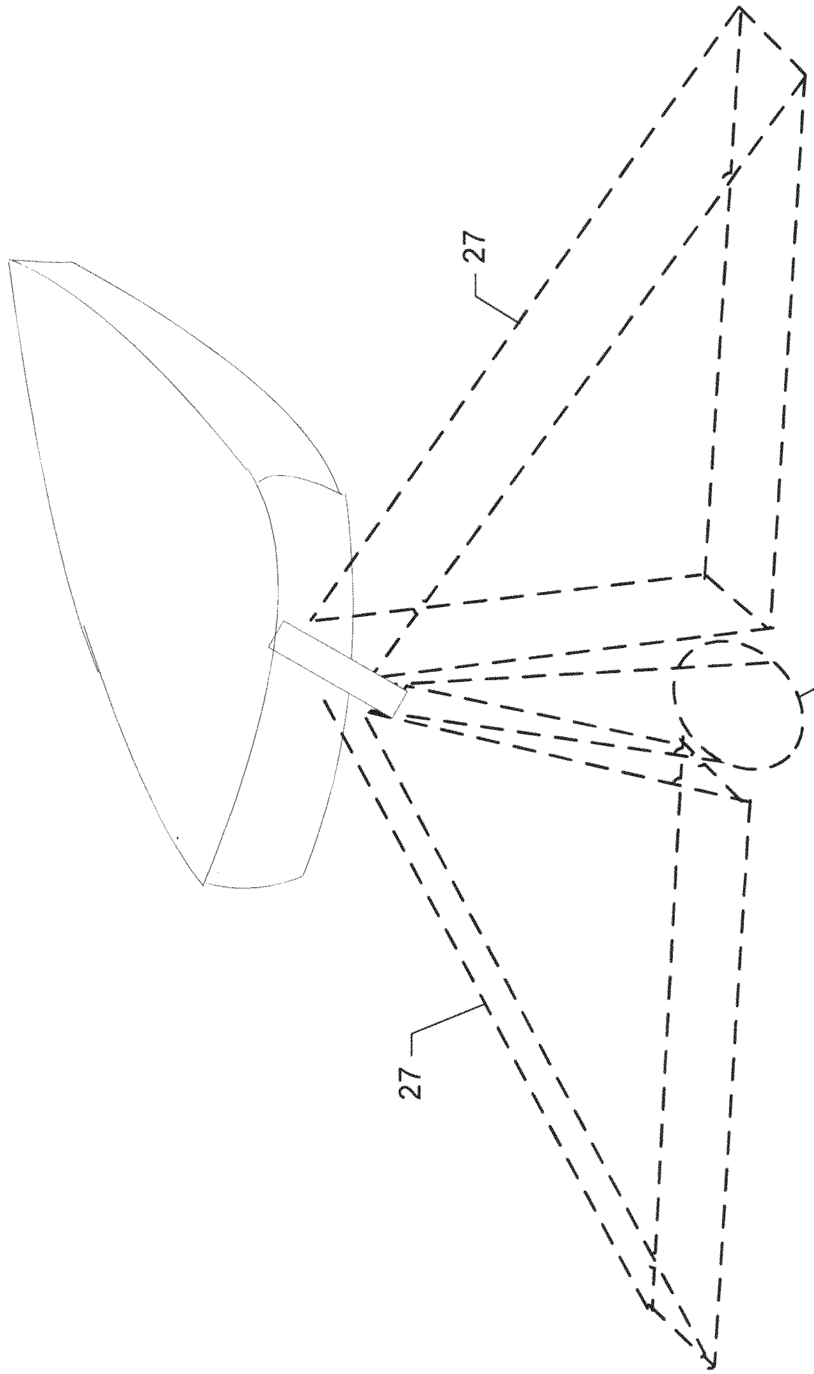



FIG. 4.
(Prior Art)

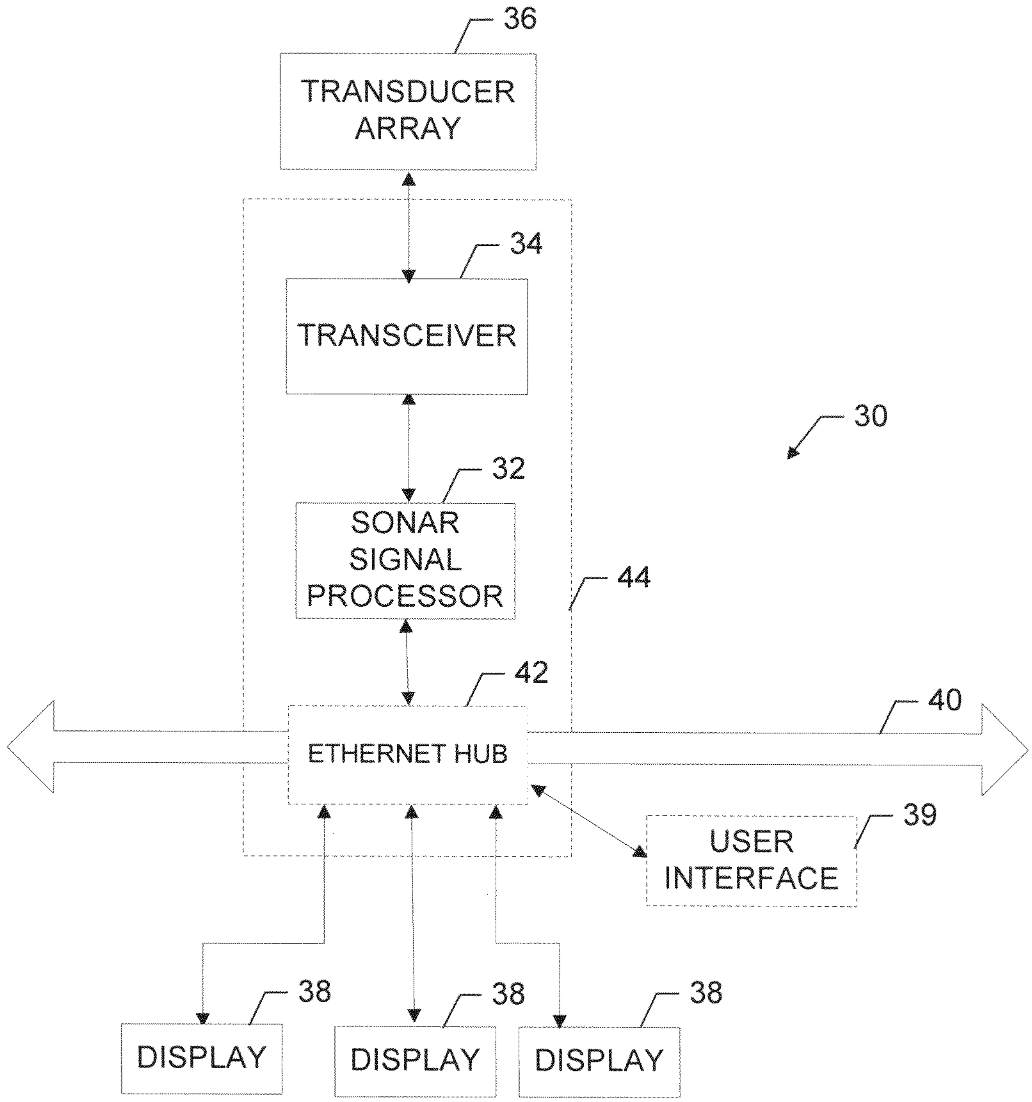

36
TRANSDUCER ARRAY
34
TRANSCEIVER
30
32
SONAR SIGNAL PROCESSOR
44
42
40
ETHERNET HUB
39
USER INTERFACE
38
38
38
DISPLAY
DISPLAY
DISPLAY

FIG. 5.

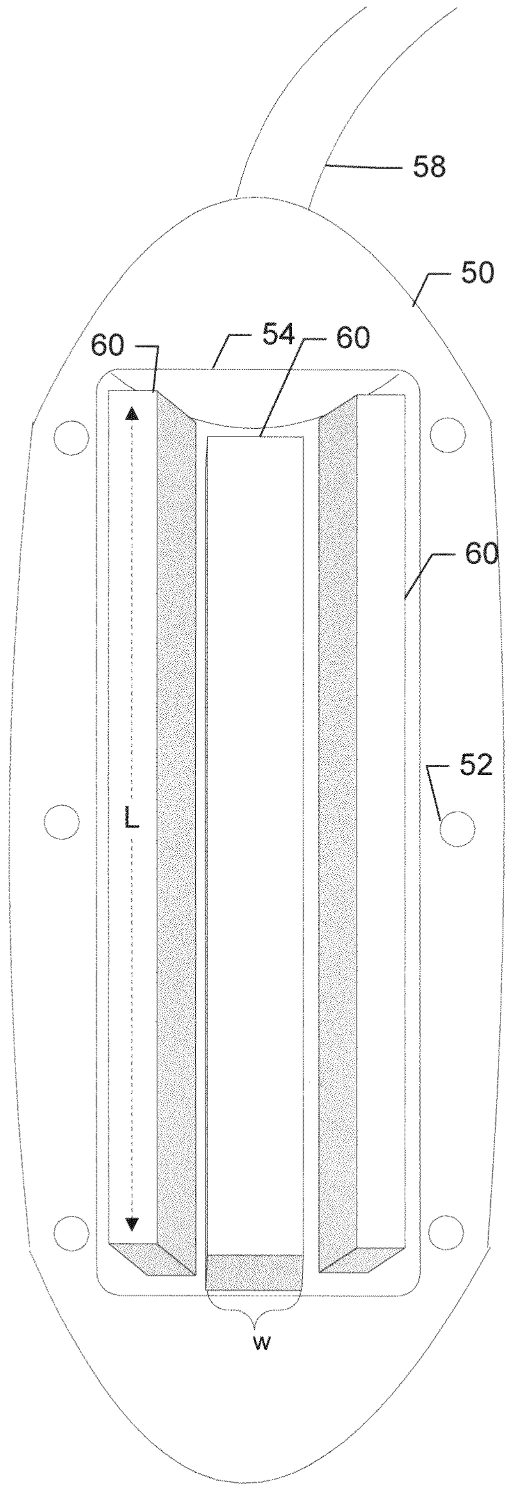



FIG. 6.

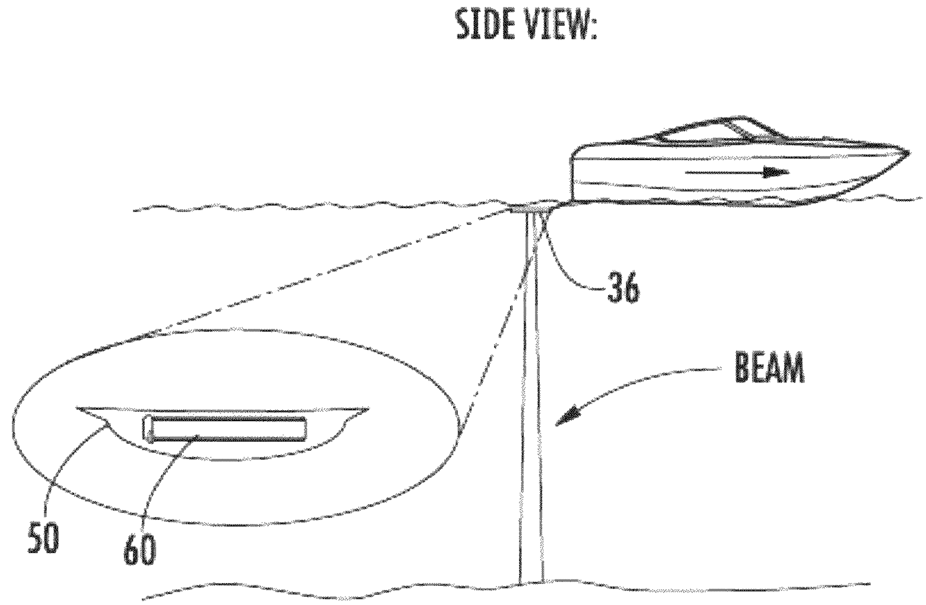

SIDE VIEW:
36
BEAM
50
60

FIG. 7A

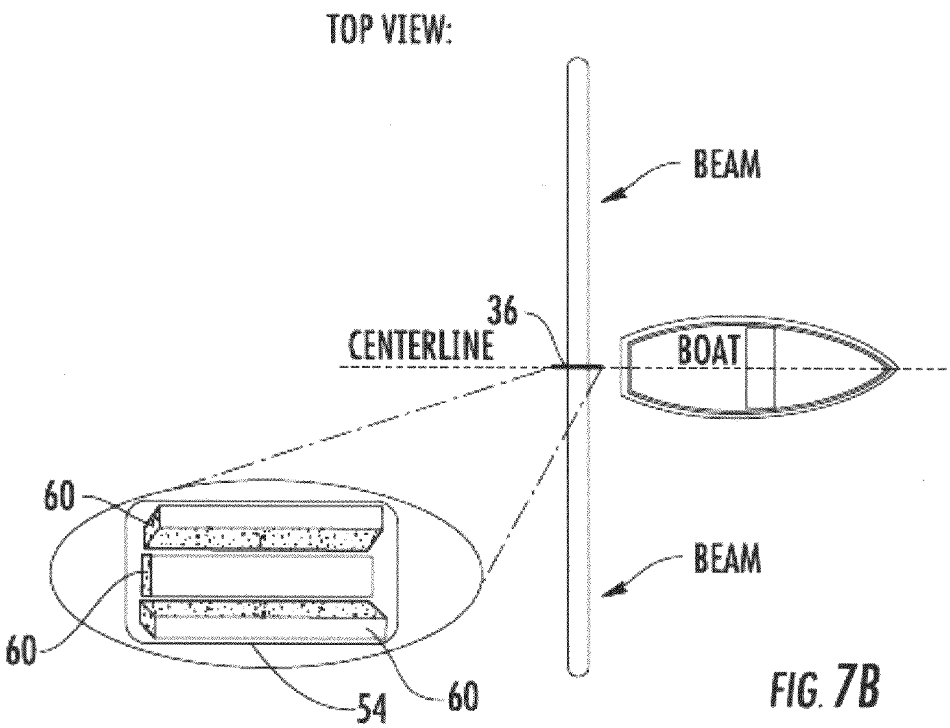

TOP VIEW:
BEAM
36
CENTERLINE
BOAT
60
BEAM
60
54
60

FIG. 7B

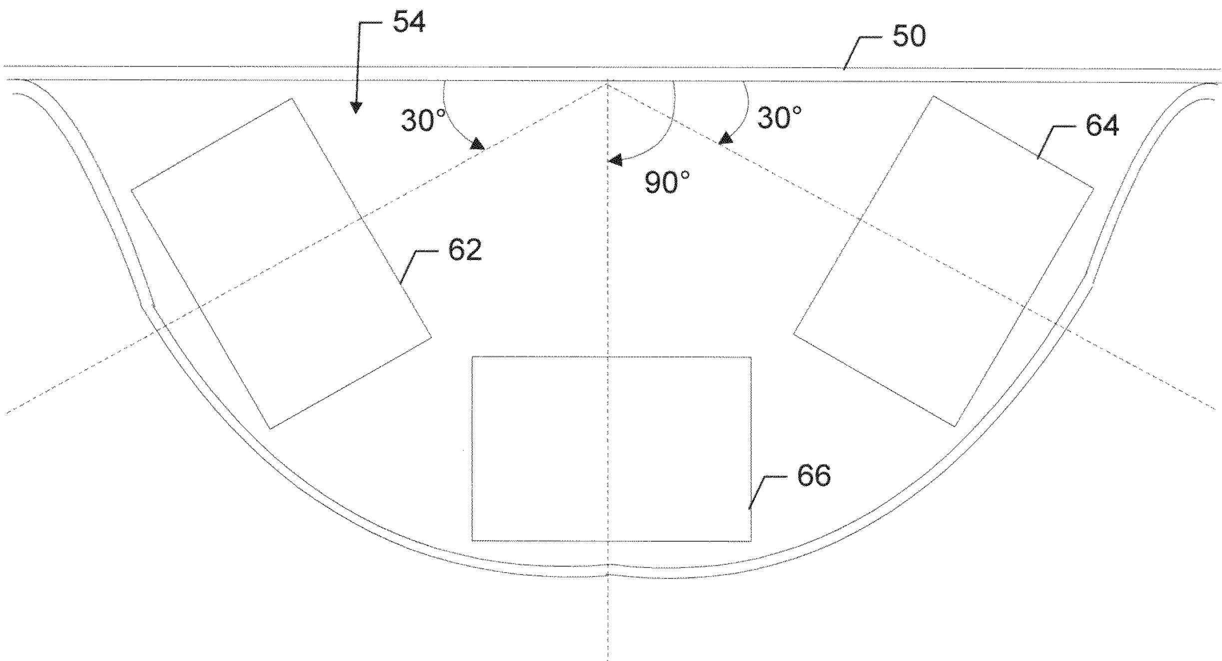



FIG. 8A.

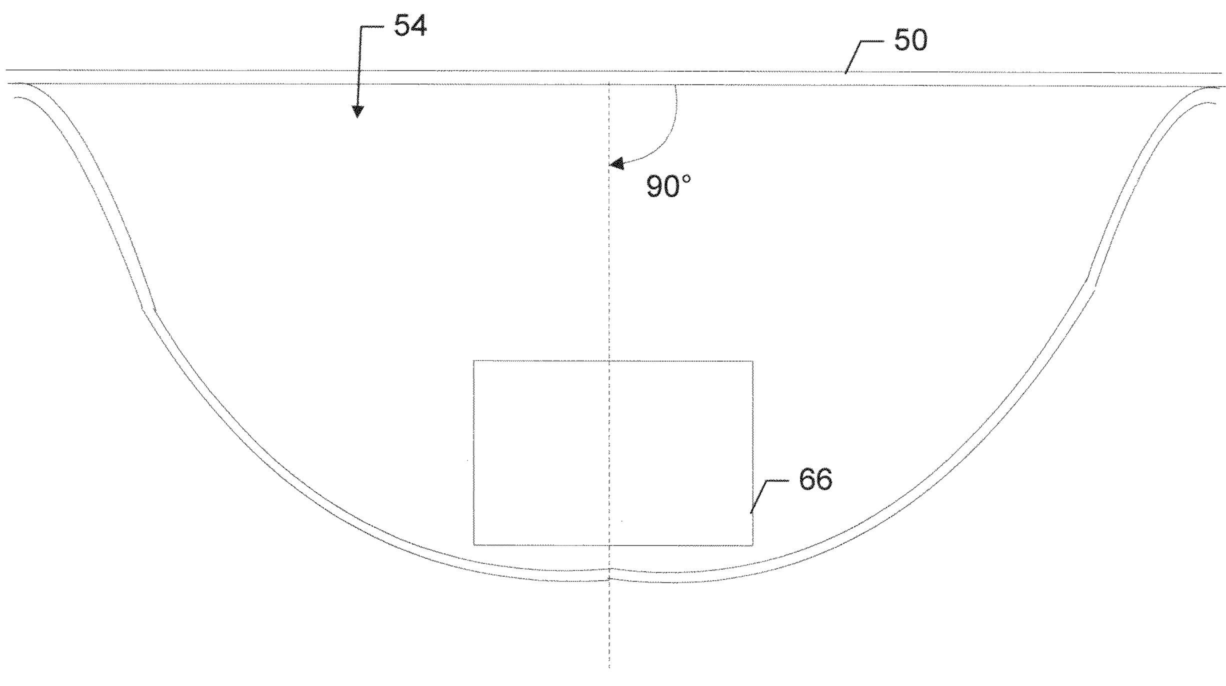



FIG. 8B.

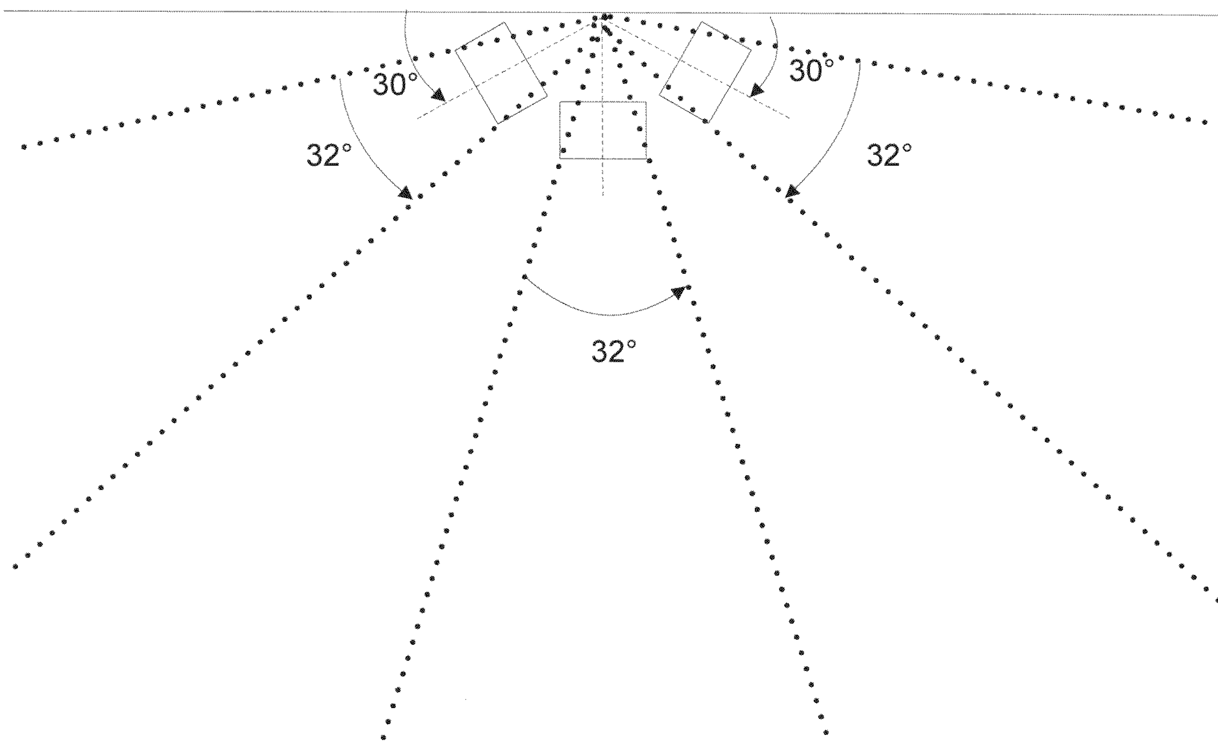



FIG. 9A.

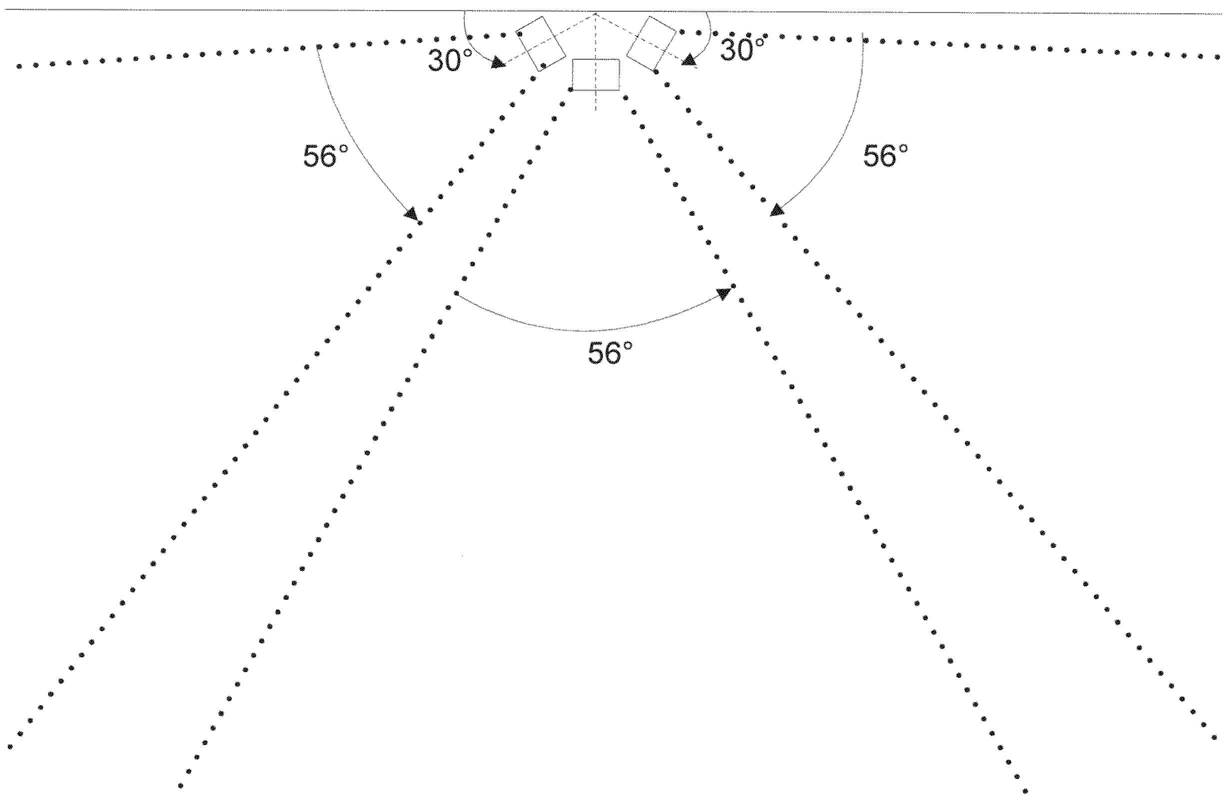



FIG. 9B.

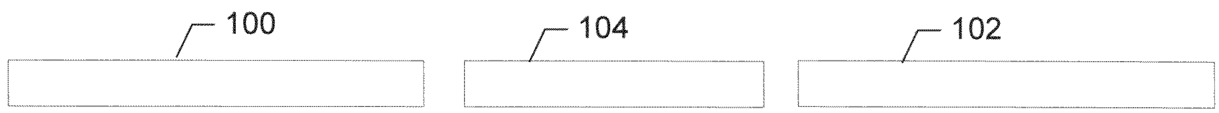



FIG. 10A.

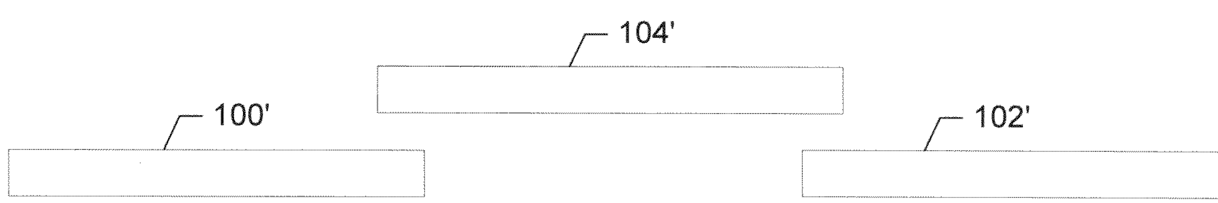



FIG. 10B.

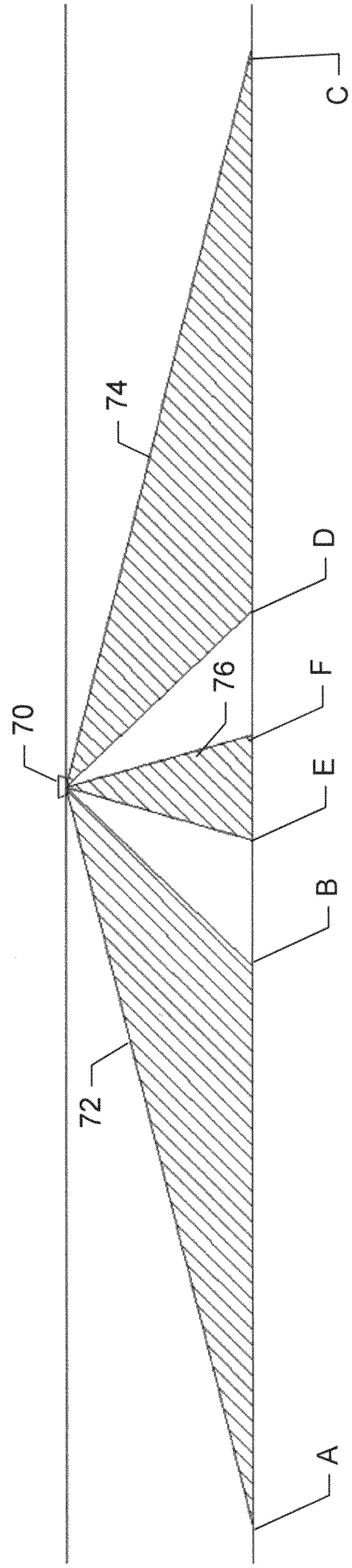



FIG. 11A.

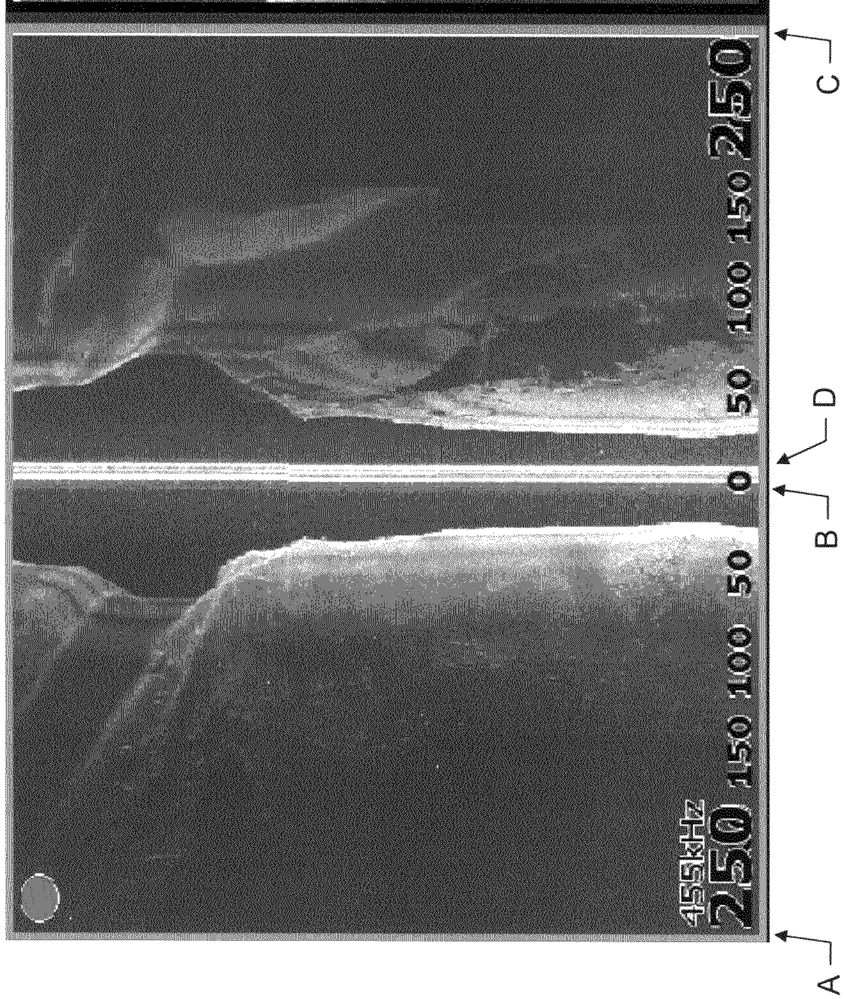



FIG. 11B.

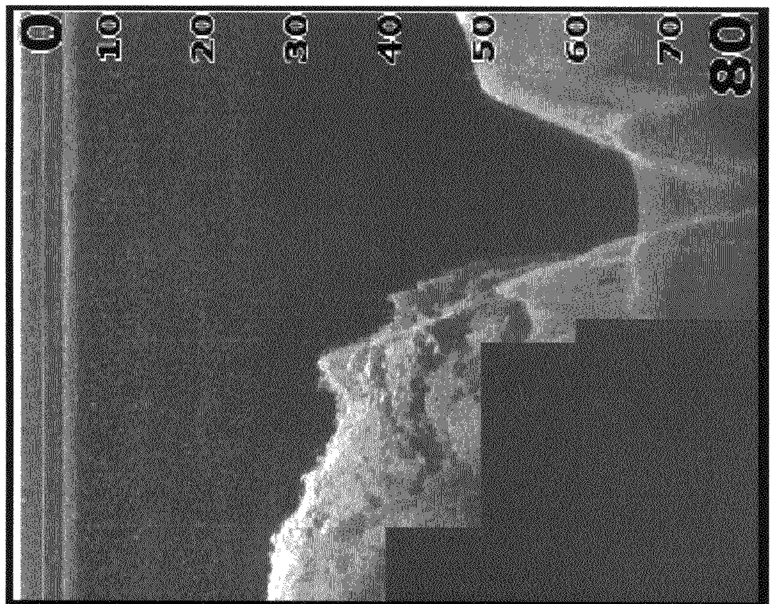



FIG. 11C.

FIG. 12A.

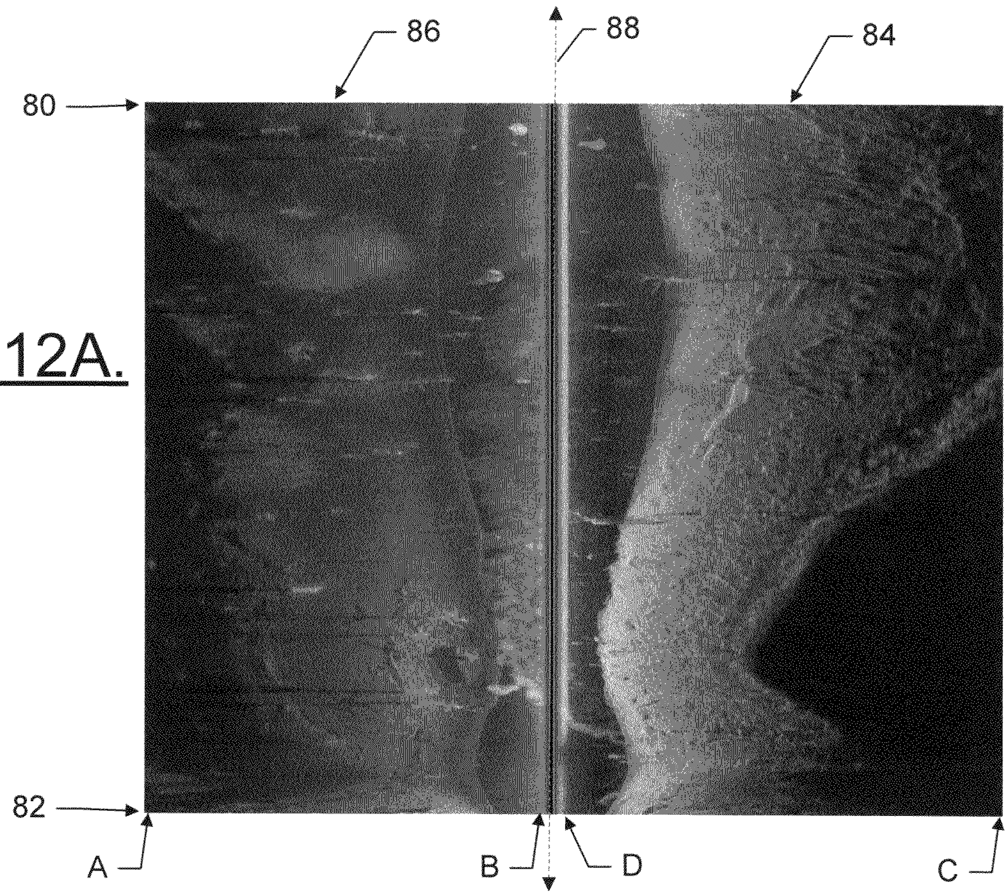
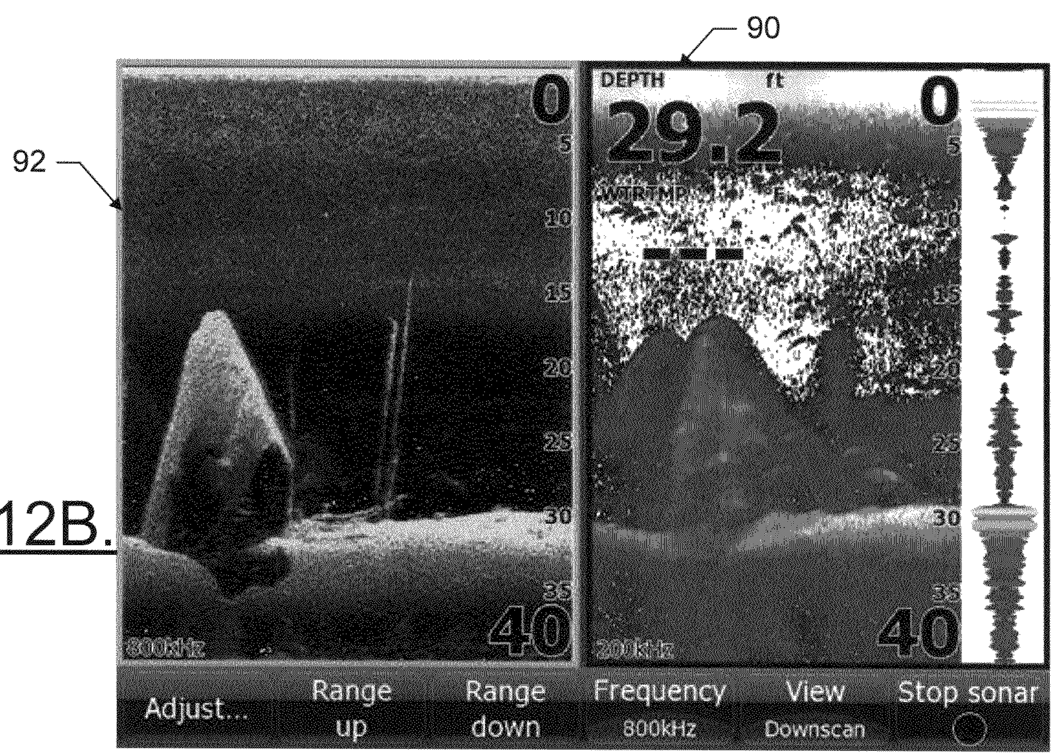



FIG. 12B.



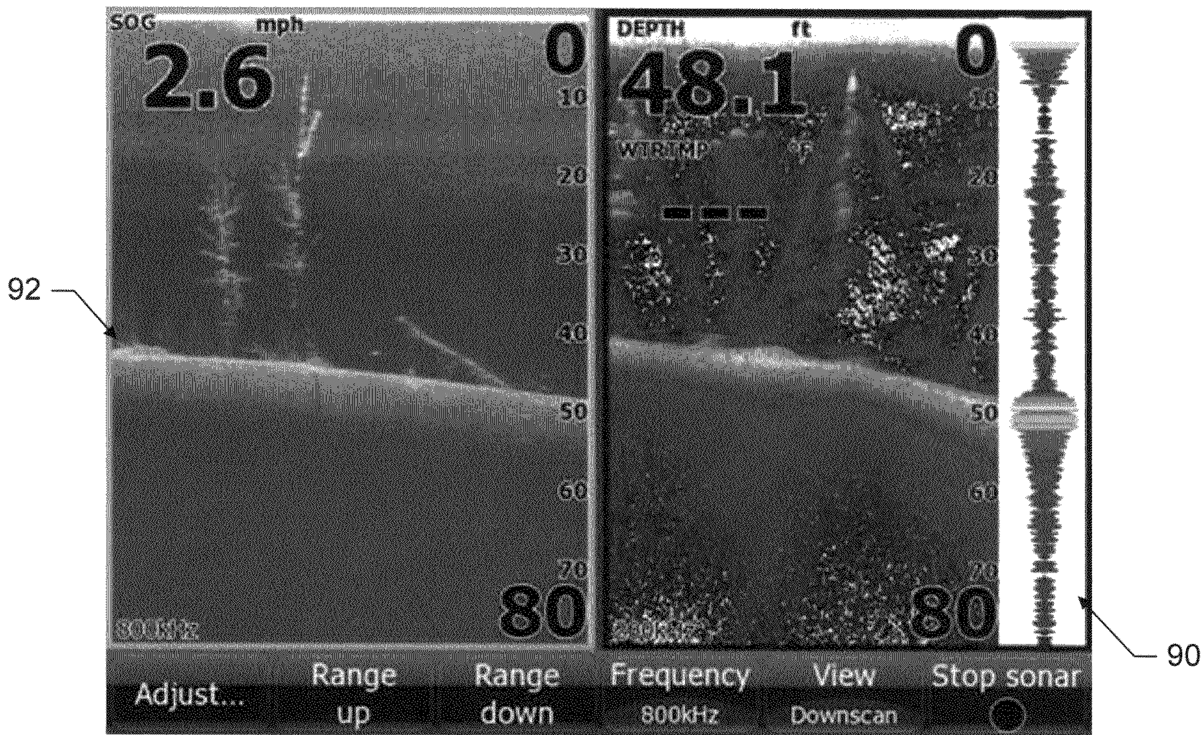



FIG. 12C.

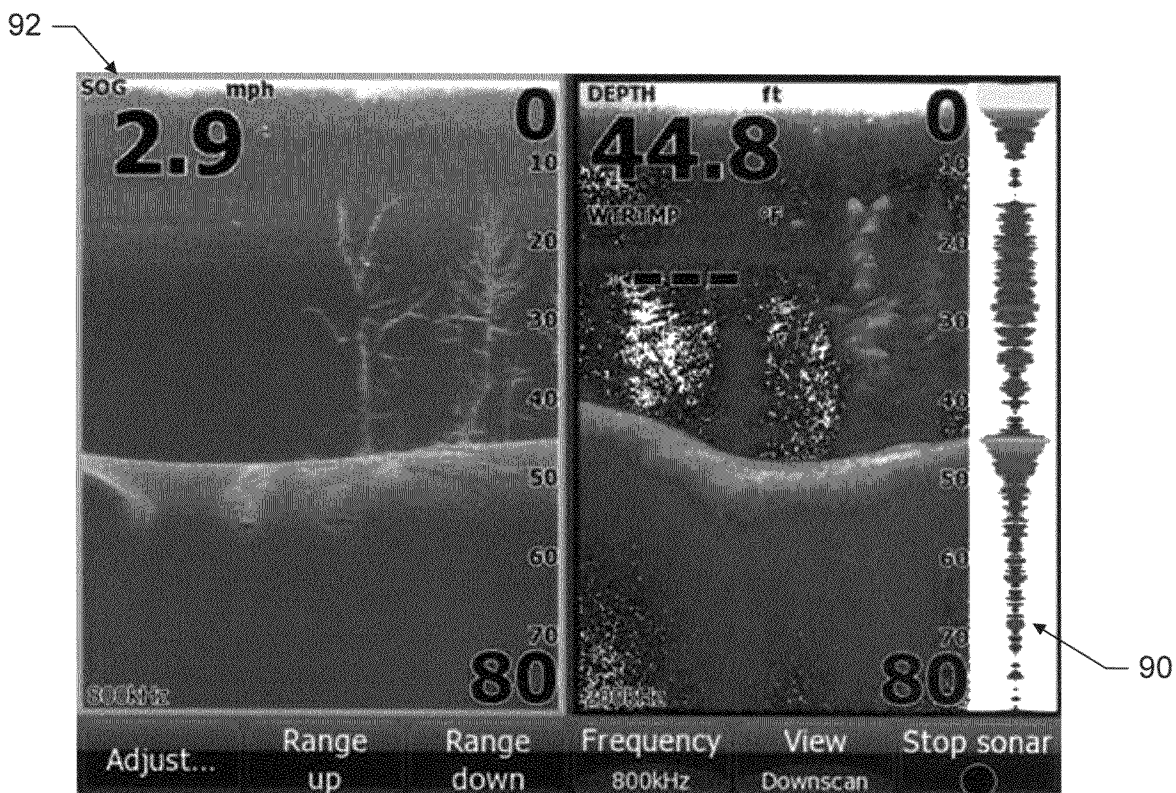



FIG. 12D.

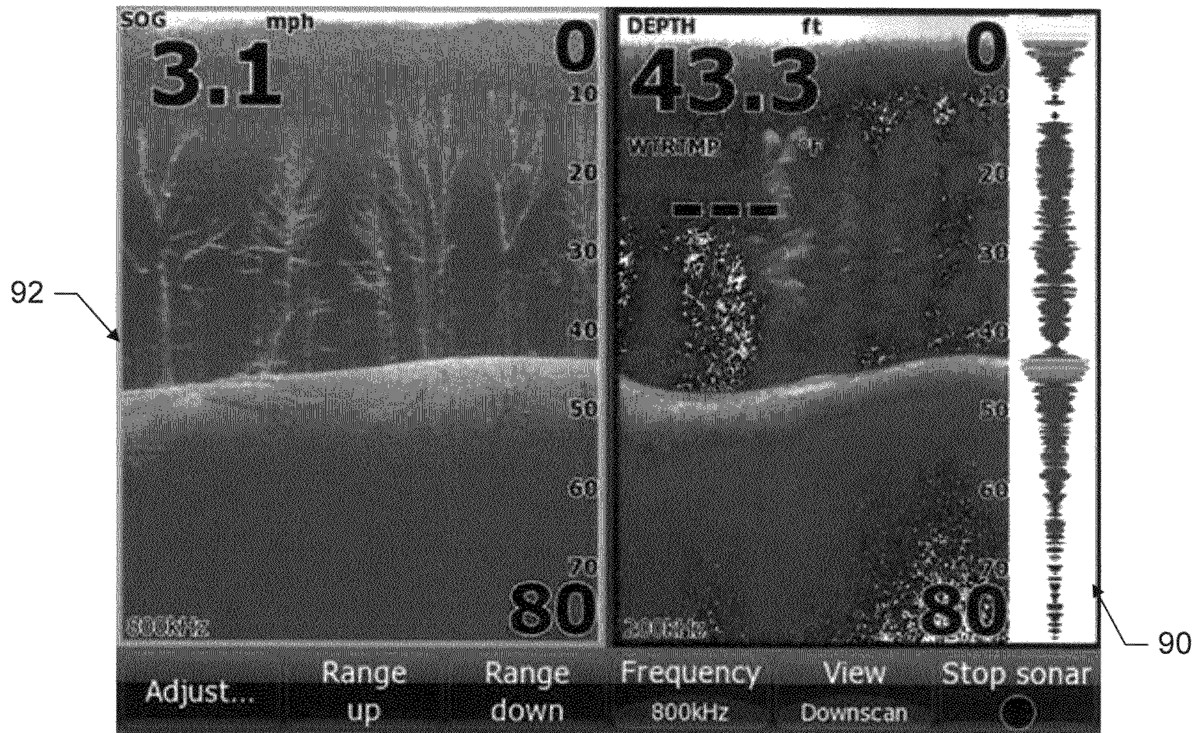



FIG. 12E.

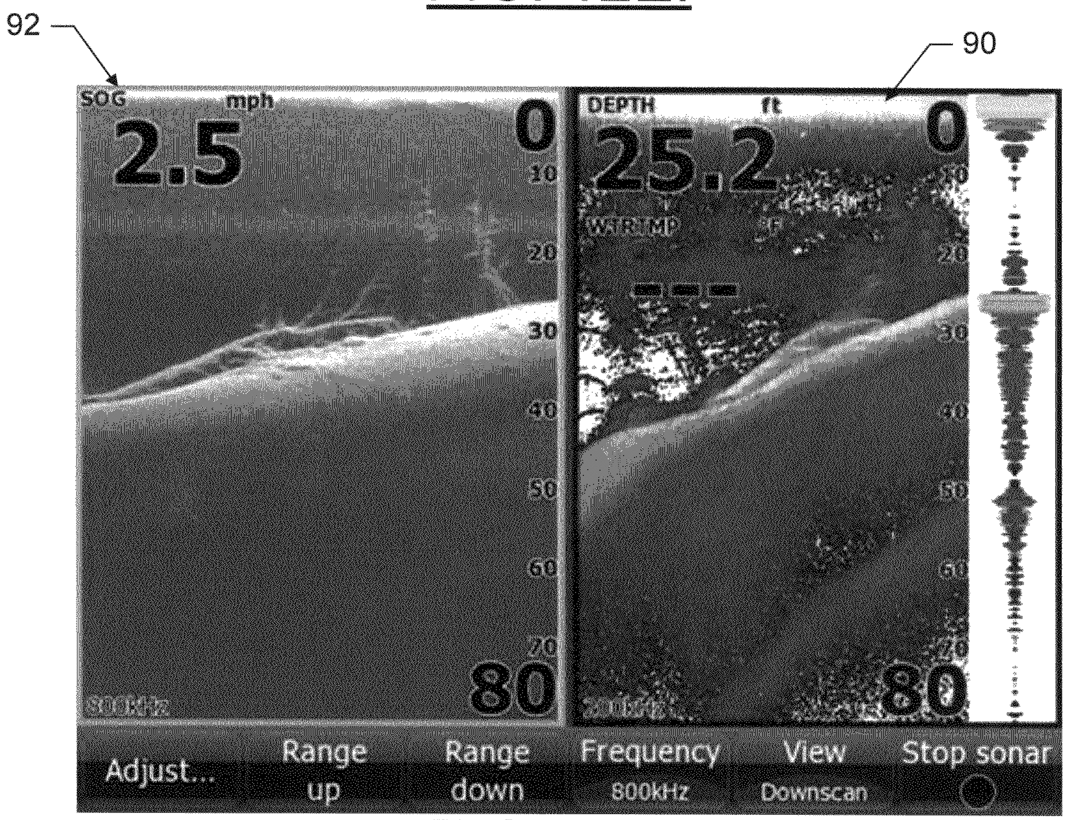



FIG. 12F.

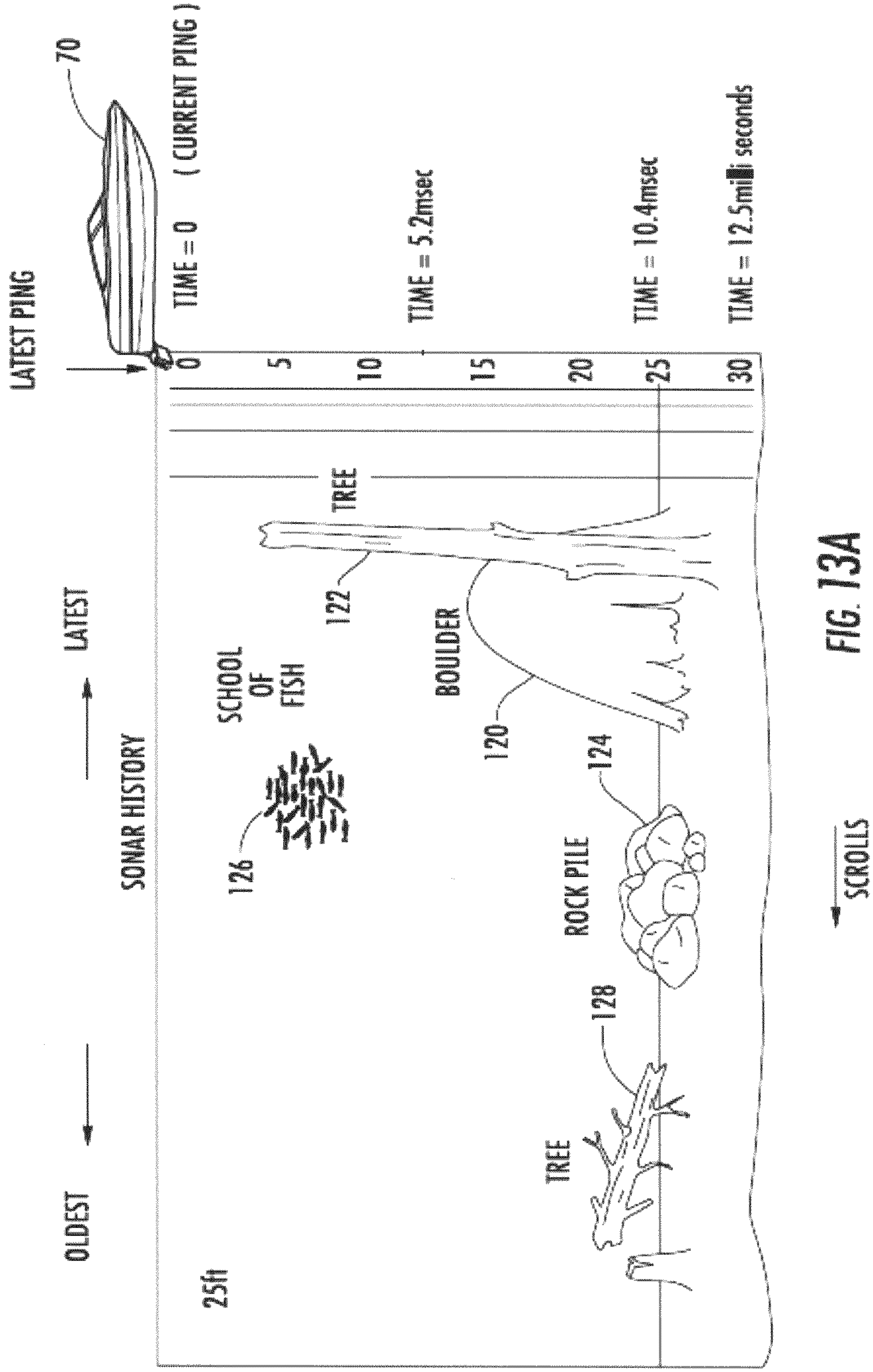

70
LATEST PING
TIME = 0 (CURRENT PING)
TIME = 5.2msec
TIME = 10.4msec
TIME = 12.5mi[redacted]i seconds
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
OLDEST
SONAR HISTORY
LATEST
TREE
122
SCHOOL OF FISH
126
BOULDER
120
124
ROCK PILE
128
TREE
25ft
SCROLLS

FIG. 13A

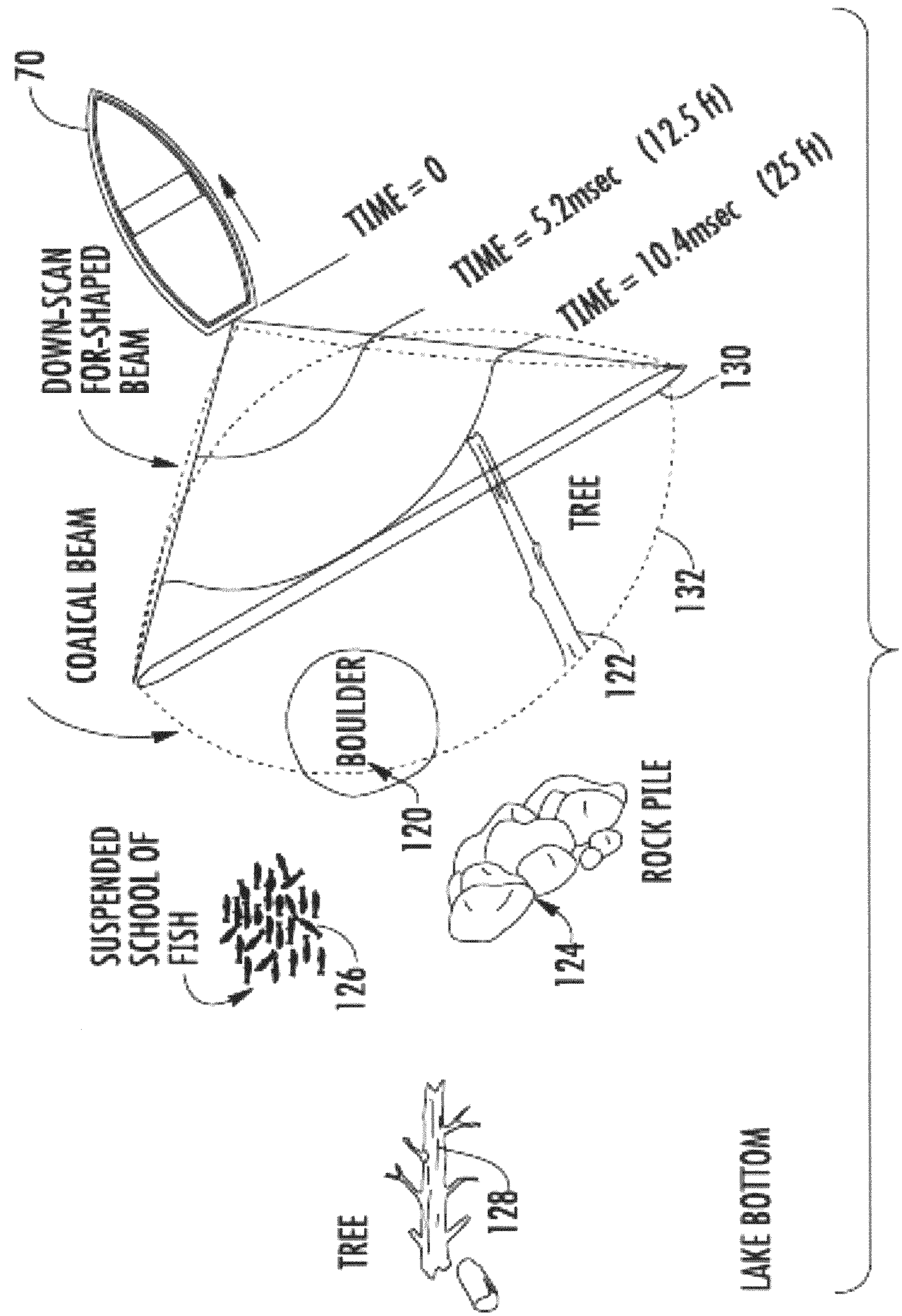

70
TIME = 0
TIME = 5.2msec (12.5 ft)
TIME = 10.4msec (25 ft)
DOWN-SCAN FOR-SHAPED BEAM
130
COAICAL BEAM
TREE
132
122
BOULDER
120
SUSPENDED SCHOOL OF FISH
126
ROCK PILE
124
TREE
128
LAKE BOTTOM

FIG. 13B

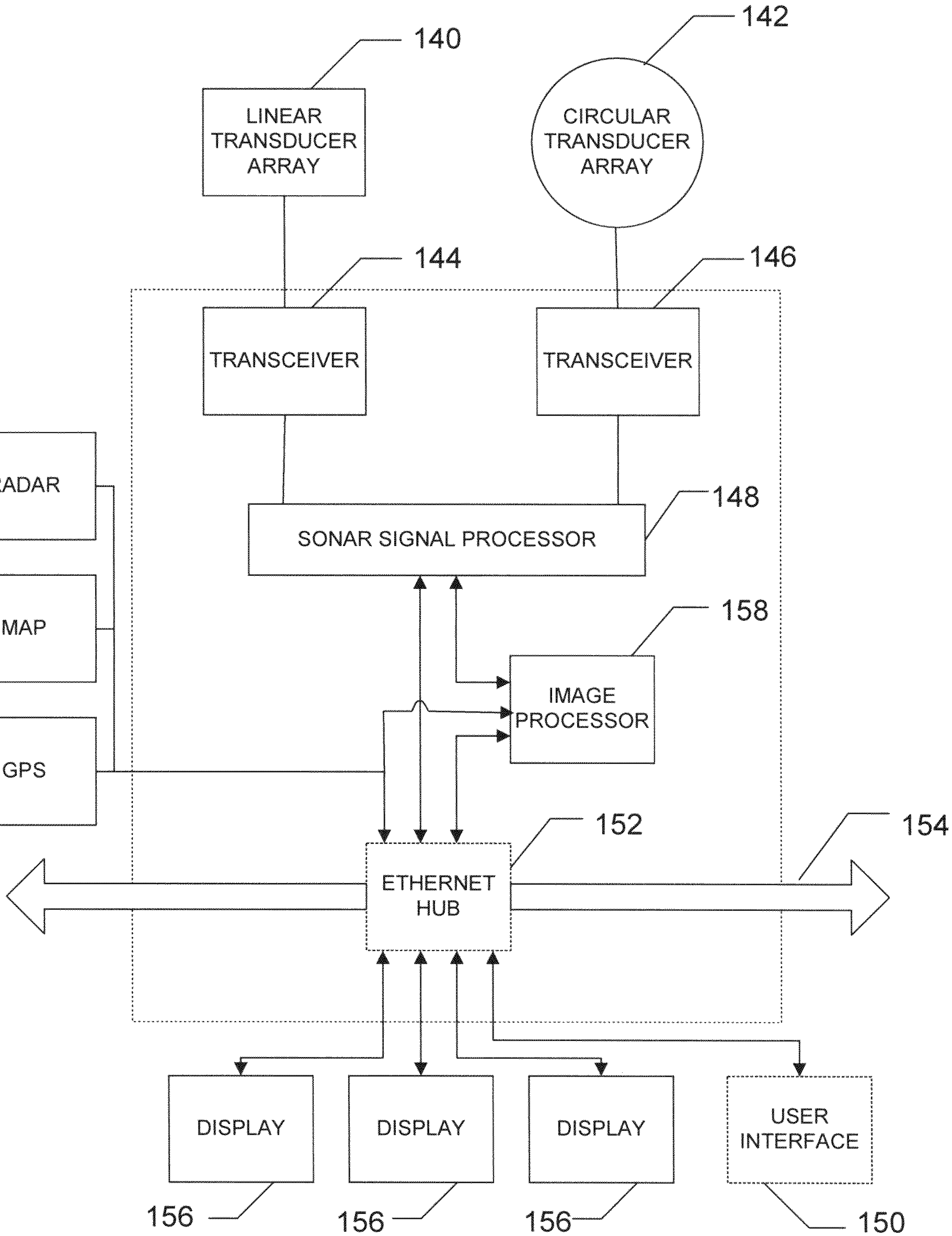

140
142
LINEAR TRANSDUCER ARRAY
CIRCULAR TRANSDUCER ARRAY
144
146
TRANSCEIVER
TRANSCEIVER
RADAR
MAP
GPS
148
SONAR SIGNAL PROCESSOR
158
IMAGE PROCESSOR
152
154
ETHERNET HUB
DISPLAY
DISPLAY
DISPLAY
USER INTERFACE
156
156
156
150

FIG. 14.

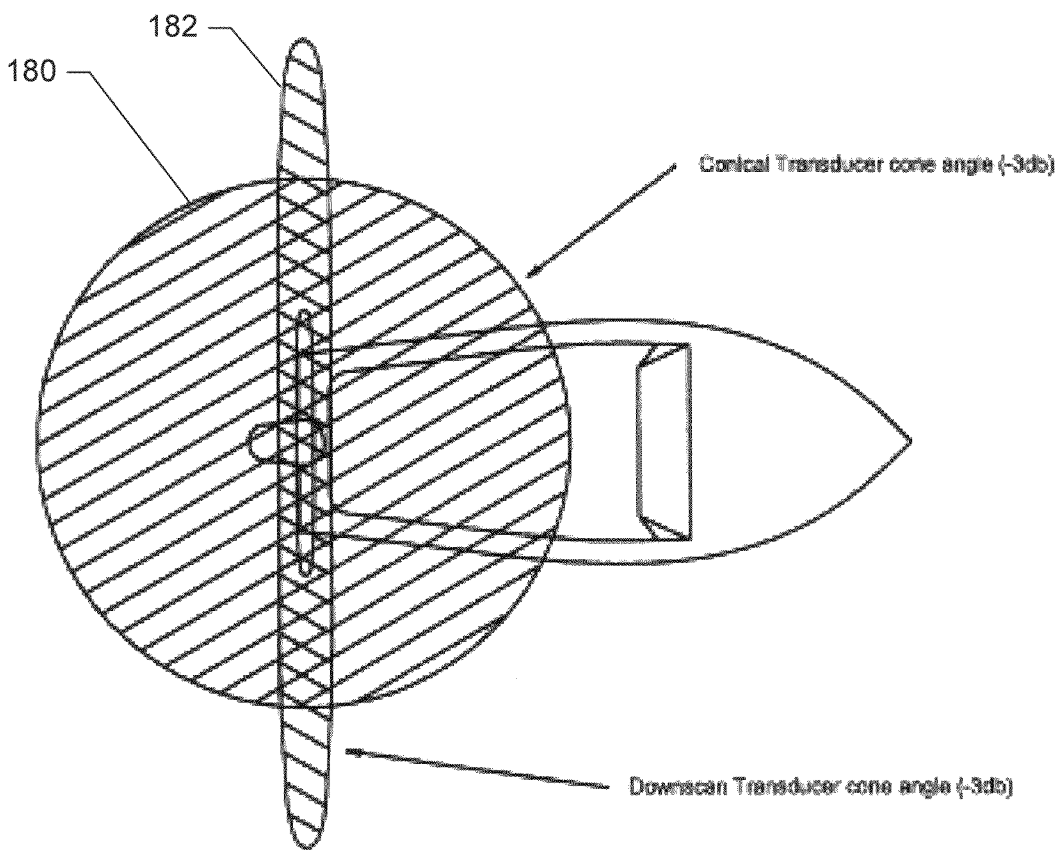

182
180
Conical Transducer cone angle (-3db)
Downscan Transducer cone angle (-3db)

FIG. 15A.

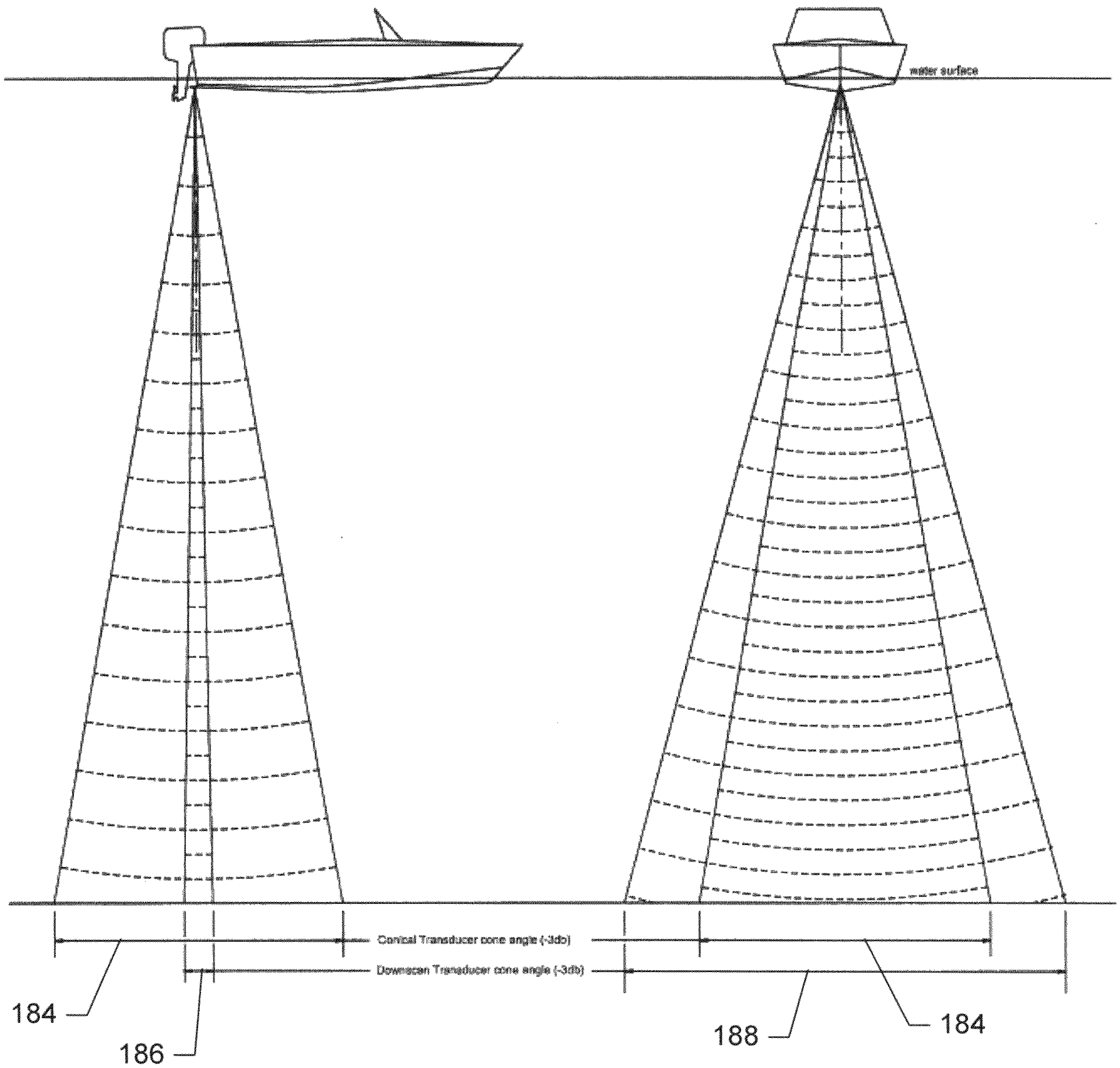
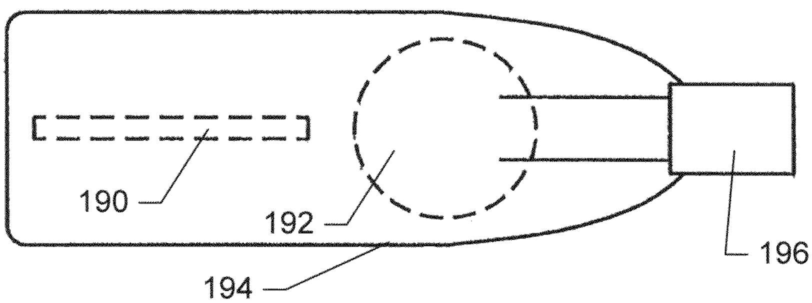

water surface
Conical Transducer cone angle (-3db)
Downscan Transducer cone angle (-3db)
184
186
188
184

FIG. 15B.

FIG. 16A.



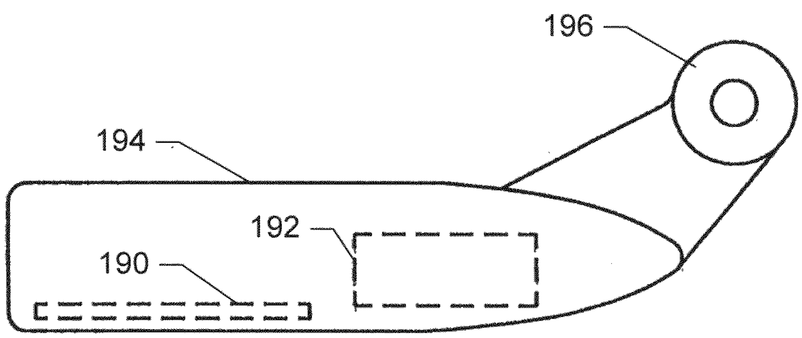




FIG. 16B.

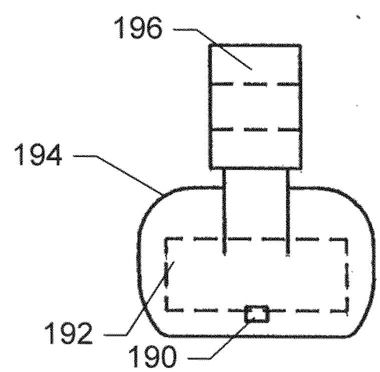
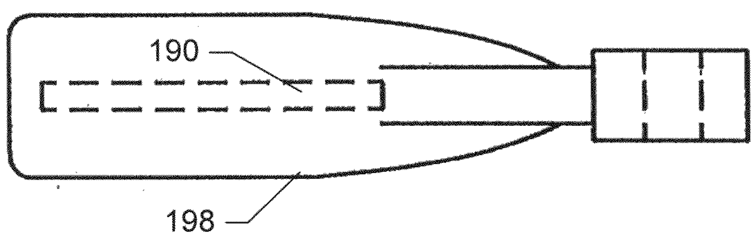



FIG. 16C.

FIG. 17A.



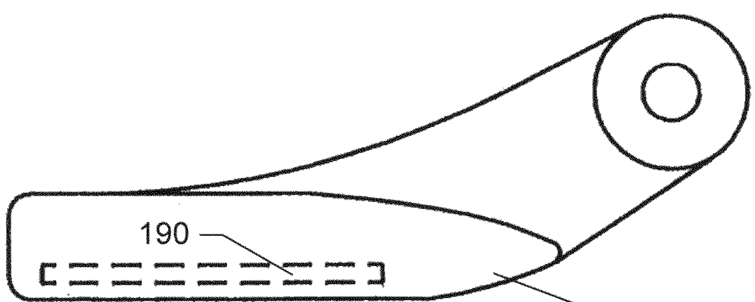




FIG. 17B.

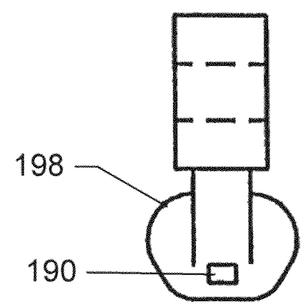



FIG. 17C.

PATENT APPLICATION SERIAL NO.______________________

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
FEE RECORD SHEET

07/15/2009 HVUONG1 00000042 160605 12460139

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 01 FC:1011 | 330.00 | DA |
| 02 FC:1111 | 540.00 | DA |
| 03 FC:1311 | 220.00 | DA |
| 04 FC:1202 | 4108.00 | DA |
| 05 FC:1201 | 220.00 | DA |

PTO-1556
(5/87)

*U.S. Government Printing Office: 2002- 489-267/69033

**Filing Date:** 07/14/09



# PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD

Substitute for Form PTO-875

Application or Docket Number: **12/460,139**

## APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I

| FOR | NUMBER FILED (Column 1) | NUMBER EXTRA (Column 2) | SMALL ENTITY RATE ($) | SMALL ENTITY FEE ($) | OR | OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($) | OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY FEE ($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c)) | N/A | N/A | N/A | | | N/A | 330 |
| SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m)) | | N/A | N/A | | | N/A | 540 |
| EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q)) | N/A | N/A | N/A | | | N/A | 220 |
| TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i)) | 99 minus 20 = | 79 | x$26 | | OR | x$52 | 4108 |
| INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h)) | 4 minus 3 = | * 1 | x$110 | | | x$220 | 220 |
| APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s)) | If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $270 ($135 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR | | | | | | |
| MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j)) | | | 195 | | | 390 | |
| | | | TOTAL | | | TOTAL | 5418 |

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.

## APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II

**AMENDMENT A**

| | CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1) | | HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2) | PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3) | SMALL ENTITY RATE ($) | SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE ($) | OR | OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($) | OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE ($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total (37 CFR 1.16(i)) | * | Minus | ** | = | x = | | OR | x = | |
| Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h)) | * | Minus | *** | = | x = | | OR | x = | |
| Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s)) | | | | | | | | | |
| FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j)) | | | | | N/A | | OR | N/A | |
| | | | | | TOTAL ADD'T FEE | | OR | TOTAL ADD'T FEE | |

OR

**AMENDMENT B**

| | CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1) | | HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2) | PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3) | RATE ($) | ADDITIONAL FEE ($) | OR | RATE ($) | ADDITIONAL FEE ($) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Total (37 CFR 1.16(i)) | * | Minus | ** | = | x = | | OR | x = | |
| Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h)) | * | Minus | *** | = | x = | | OR | x = | |
| Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s)) | | | | | | | | | |
| FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j)) | | | | | N/A | | OR | N/A | |
| | | | | | TOTAL ADD'T FEE | | OR | TOTAL ADD'T FEE | |

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.